Modern Legal Drafting

A Guide to Using Clearer Language

Second Edition

Peter Butt & Richard Castle

CAMBRIDGE www.cambridge.org/9780521674522

This page intentionally left blank

MODERN LEGAL DRAFTING

A Guide to Using Clearer Language
Second Edition

In the second edition of this highly regarded text, the authors show how and why traditional legal language has developed the peculiar characteristics that make legal documents inaccessible to the end users. Incorporating recent research and international examples, the book provides a critical examination of case law and the rules of interpretation. Detailed case studies illustrate how obscure or outdated words, phrases and concepts can be rewritten, reworked or removed altogether – without compromising legal exactitude. In emphasising the benefits of plain language drafting, the focus is on clarity and accessibility. Particularly useful is the step-by-step guide to drafting in the modern style, using practical examples from four types of common legal documents: leases, company constitutions, wills and conveyances.

Readers will gain an appreciation of the historical influences on drafting practice and the use of legal terminology. They will learn about the current moves to reform legal language; and they will receive clear instruction on how to make their writing clearer and their legal documents more useful to clients and colleagues.

Modern Legal Drafting: A Guide to Using Clearer Language will benefit lawyers, law students, legislative drafters, and all who work in law-related fields.

Peter Butt is Professor of Law and founding director of the Centre for Plain Language at the University of Sydney.

Richard Castle is a former solicitor, currently working in New Zealand.

MODERN LEGAL DRAFTING

A Guide to Using Clearer Language
Second Edition

Peter Butt
and
Richard Castle

Cambridge
University Press

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore, São Paulo

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK
Published in the United States of America by Cambridge University Press, New York
www.cambridge.org
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521674522

First published in print format 2006

ISBN-13 978-0-511-34908-9 eBook (EBL)
ISBN-10 0-511-34908-4 eBook (EBL)

ISBN-13 978-0-521-67452-2 paperback
ISBN-10 0-521-67452-2 paperback

CONTENTS

Acknowledgements *page* ix
Acknowledgements, second edition xi
List of Panels and Tables xii
Table of Statutes and Subsidiary Legislation xiii
Table of Cases xvii

Introduction 1
Traditional legal language 1
Pressures for reform 2
What this book tries to do 4

1 What Influences the Legal Drafter 6
Introduction 6
Familiarity and habit 7
Conservatism 9
Fear of negligence claims 15
Means of production 17
Professional pressures 21
Straining to avoid ambiguity 22
The mixture of languages 23
Payment by length 31
Payment by time 36
The litigious environment 37

2 How Legal Documents are Interpreted 39
Overview 39
What judges have said about traditional legal drafting 40

The principles of legal interpretation 47
The two 'golden rules' of interpretation and drafting 61
Commercial or purposive interpretation 62
Importance of context 64
Modern restatement 66
Dangers in using precedent as an aid to interpretation 73
Interpreting plain language documents 73

3 The Move towards Modern English in Legal Drafting 76
Introduction 76
The United Kingdom 78
Australia 93
The United States 99
Canada 106
What judges have said about 'plain English' 109

4 Some Benefits of Drafting in Plain English 112
The meaning of 'plain English' 112
Increased efficiency and understanding 114
Fewer errors 118
Image of the legal profession 119
Marketing 121
Compliance with statutory requirements 121
Conclusion 126

5 What to Avoid when Drafting Modern Documents 127
Introduction 127
Wordiness and redundancy 128
Overuse of 'shall' 131
Obscure language 137
Unusual word order 138
Frequently litigated words and phrases 140
Foreign words and phrases 141
Long sense-bites 142
Legalese and jargon 144
Peculiar linguistic conventions 151
Nouns instead of verbs 153

Overuse of the passive 153
Deeming 154
Definitions 155
Overuse of capitals 160
Provisos 163
Conclusion 166

6 How to Draft Modern Documents 167
Modern, standard English 167
Document structure 170
Layout and design 172
Lists 178
Short sense-bites 181
Punctuation 183
Definitions 187
Tables, plans and formulas 191
Notes and examples 198
Simplified outlines 199
'Shall' and the modern document 200
Handling generality and vagueness 203
Syntactic ambiguity 207
Pronouns 208
Inclusive language 209
Problems with 'and', 'or' 211
Drafting in the present tense 215
Deeds 216
Amending documents formally 218
Standard forms 219
Conclusion 221

7 Using the Modern Style 222
Lease: how to bring it to an end if the property is damaged 222
Company memorandum of association: subsidiary objects clause 224
Will: attestation clause 225
Will: distribution in unequal shares 227

New land obligations: buyer's restrictive covenant 229
Conclusion 231

Further Reading 233
Index 235

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
Extract from First Edition

This book is the product of many years' practice and research in the techniques of drafting legal documents in modern, standard English. We are grateful to many people for their contributions towards the ideas and experiences that have helped shape our views.

Richard Castle would particularly like to thank:

- the law librarian of the University of Exeter, and the librarians of the University of Plymouth and the College of St Mark and St John Plymouth for the use of their facilities
- the staff of Devon public libraries for their unfailing helpfulness
- colleagues on the drafting courses formerly run by the Centre for Commercial Law Studies, for their inspiration
- Professor John Adams of Queen Mary & Westfield College London for his advice and guidance on early work which led to this book
- his clients and colleagues in Plymouth who directly and indirectly provided a good deal of the material which appears here
- Wendy Castle for her support and untiring efforts in typing, retyping and retyping again many early drafts
- Sarah, Emma and Ally for their indulgence and motivation during the years of research and writing.

Peter Butt would particularly like to thank:

- the librarian and staff of the law schools in the Universities of Sydney and Bristol
- his students at the University of Sydney, who for a decade have provided inspiration and feedback in lecture courses on plain language drafting techniques
- Marion Butt, for her efforts in typing the later drafts of the book.

Both of us would also like to thank a number of colleagues who reviewed drafts of the manuscript, and whose enthusiastic support for the project was a great encouragement. They include Robert Eagleson (Australia), Mark Adler (England) and David Elliott (Canada).

We gratefully acknowledge those who have given permission to reproduce copyright material used in the book: Her Majesty's Stationery Office; Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Limited; Wellington District Law Society's Collection, Special Printed Collections, Alexander Turnbull Library, New Zealand; and VicRoads. Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright and we would be pleased to hear from those we have been unable to contact.

Finally, we emphasise that this book is very much a joint undertaking. Although we worked separately for a long time on opposite sides of the world, the final product is the result of our labours together for some six years. We take joint and several responsibility for it – or rather, we take responsibility for it separately and together.

Peter Butt
Richard Castle

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
Second Edition

This second edition incorporates a number of developments in legal drafting that have arisen since the publication of the first edition. As with the first edition, we are grateful to many people for their contributions to the ideas and experiences that have helped shape our views.

We would especially like to thank those who took the time to provide constructive comments on the first edition. These include the late Professor John Adams (United Kingdom), Hector Macdonald (Australia), and Christine Mowat (Canada), all of whom wrote long and detailed comments for our consideration.

Peter Butt would like to thank the Faculty of Law, University of Cambridge, where he wrote some of this edition. For part of that time, he was a Herbert Smith Fellow; for another part, he was a Visiting Fellow at Trinity College. Without this assistance it would not have been possible to complete the book, and to both entities we owe sincere thanks. Peter also owes special thanks to Professor Kevin Gray of Trinity College for his guidance and help in arranging the stay at Cambridge, and to both Kevin and his wife Susan for making the stay so enjoyable.

Finally, Peter's wife Lin helped type the manuscript and polish the prose. To her, we both owe sincere thanks.

We gratefully acknowledge those who have given permission to reproduce copyright material for use in this and the first edition. In this edition, they include Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd and VicRoads. Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright and we would be pleased to hear from any copyright holders we have been unable to trace.

Peter Butt
Richard Castle

PANELS AND TABLES

Panels

1	Charges register extract	*page* 3
2	Handwritten conveyance	19
3	*Making It Plain*	89
4	Example of plain statutory drafting from New South Wales *Conveyancing Act*	100
5	New York plain English law	102
6	Extract from bank mortgage	143
7	Use of capitals to break up text	145
8	Historic use of capitals	161
9	Document layout	174
10	Regulatory signs	195
11	Example of flow chart from Australian *Native Title Act*	196

Tables

1	'Before' and 'after' examples of US Federal Court Rules	106
2	Traditional and plain language legal clauses	114
3	Numbering systems	176
4	Use of a table in a contract	191

TABLE OF STATUTES AND SUBSIDIARY LEGISLATION

Imperial

Statute of Additions 1413, 147
Statute of Pleading 1362, 25
Statute of Provisions 1350–51, 65

England and Wales

Administration of Justice Act 1982
s 17, 226
s 21, 70
Arbitration Act 1996, 92
s 5(2), 190–1
Capital Allowances Act 2001, 91
Conveyancing Act 1845, 34
Conveyancing Act 1881, 36
Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004, ss 19, 20, 32, 33, 156
Human Rights Act 1998, 201
Inquiries Act 2005, 189
Land Registration Act 2002, 220
Landlord and Tenant Act 1954, Part II, 222, 223, 224
Landlord and Tenant Act 1985, ss 8, 11, 49
Law of Property (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1994, 13
Law of Property Act 1925, 219
s 1(2), 9
s 44, 218
s 45, 218
s 52, 216
s 60, 9

s 61, 157, 209, 227
s 78, 230
s 79, 230
s 81, 157
s 205, 9
Leases Act 1845, 34
Oil in Navigable Waters Act 1963, 213
Settled Land Act 1925, 219
Solicitors' Remuneration Act 1881, 36
Statute Law (Repeals) Act 1989, 34
Timeshare Act 1992, 82
Wills Act 1837, s 9, 226

Regulations and Statutory Orders

Civil Procedure Rules 1998 (SI 1998 No 3132 L 17), 92
Consumer Credit (Advertisements) Regulations 2004 (SI 2004 No. 1484), reg. 3(a), 122
Employment Tribunals (Constitution and Rules of Procedure) Regulations 2004 (SI 2004 No. 1861), 92
Solicitors' (Non-Contentious Business) Remuneration Order 1994, 36
Solicitors' Remuneration Order 1883, 36
Solicitors' Remuneration Order 1953 (SI 1953, No. 117), 36
Solicitors' Remuneration Order 1972, 37
Unfair Terms in Consumer Contracts Regulations 1999 (SI 1999, No. 2083), reg. 7, 121

Australia

Commonwealth

Corporations Law 2001, 210
Industrial Relations Act 1988, s 150A, 124
Industrial Relations Reform Act 1993, s 17, 124
Insurance Contracts Act 1984, s 22(1), 124
Members of Parliament (Life Gold Pass) Act 2002, s 3, 199–200
Native Title Act 1993, 189
s 203AA(5), 194, 196
Social Security Act, 115

Trade Marks Act 1995, 214
Trade Practices Act 1974
s 51AB, 124
s 51AC, 124

New South Wales

Consumer Credit (NSW) Code, s 162, 123
Contracts Review Act 1980
s 7 125
s 9, 125
Conveyancing Act 1919, 99, 100, 182, 183
s 23B, 216
s 53, 218
s 78, 13
s 181, 209, 227
Fisheries Management Act 1994, s 5, 155
Legal Profession Act 2004, s 315(1), 123
Local Government Act 1993, 97, 109
Real Property Act 1900, 220
s 133D, 203
Residential Tenancies Act 1987, ss 25, 26, 49
Retirement Villages Act 1999, 175, 185
s 83, 203

Queensland

Industrial Relations Act 1999, s 333, 124
Land Title Act 1994, 97

Victoria

Crimes Act 1958, s 464, 155
Road Traffic Regulations 1991, 194
Wills Act 1997, s 36, 70

Canada

Federal

Uniform Interpretation Act 1967–68, c 7, ss 10, 28, 201

Alberta

Financial Consumers Act 1990, 108
Financial Consumers Act, R.S.A. 2000, 108
Municipal Government Act (Draft), 98, 108–9

British Columbia

Interpretation Act (RSBC, 1996, Chapter 238), s 29, 201

Ontario

Tobacco Tax Act 1990, 211

Hong Kong

Basic Law, article 160, 132, 133

India

Indian Evidence Act 1872, 198
Indian Penal Code, 77

New Zealand

Income Tax Act 2004, 98

United States of America

New York

Plain English Law (Sullivan Act), 101, 102

TABLE OF CASES

Acorn Consolidated Pty Ltd v Hawkslade Investments Pty Ltd (1999) 21 WAR 425, 69
Adamastos Shipping Co. Ltd v Anglo-Saxon Petroleum Co. Ltd [1959] AC 133, 63
AG Securities v Vaughan [1990] 1 AC 417, 51
Akeroyd's Settlement, Re [1893] 3 Ch 363, 135
Alan Wibberley Building Ltd v Insley [1999] 1 WLR 894, 193
Alexion Hope, The [1988] 1 Lloyd's Rep 311, 41
Alghussein Establishment v Eton College [1988] 1 WLR 587, 40
Al-Kandari v J.R. Brown & Co. [1988] QB 665, 16
Alleyn, Re [1965] SASR 22, 70
Amax International Ltd v Custodian Holdings Ltd [1986] 2 EGLR 111, 60
American General Insurance Co. v Webster 118 SW 2d 1084, 214
Anderson v Anderson [1895] 1 QB 749 at 753, 55
Andrews v Strugnell [1977] Qd R 284, 58
Annefield, The [1971] P 168, 72
Antaios, The [1985] AC 191, 63
Appleton v Aspin [1988] 1 WLR 410, 50
Ashcroft v Mersey Health Authority [1983] 2 All ER 245, 16
Aspden v Seddon (1874) 10 Ch App 394, 39, 73
Associated Artists Ltd v Inland Revenue Commissioners [1956] 1 WLR 752, 212
Atari Corporation (UK) Ltd v Electronic Boutique Stores (UK) Ltd [1998] QB 539, 64
Attorney General for New Zealand v Brown [1917] AC 393, 212
Attorney General v Prince Ernest Augustus of Hanover [1957] AC 436 at 463, 51

Attorney-General (New South Wales) v Dickson [1904] AC 273, 29
Attorney-General for New South Wales v Metcalfe (1904) 1 CLR 421, 55
Attorney-General of the Bahamas v Royal Trust Co [1986] 1 WLR 1001, 212
Attorney-General of the Commonwealth v Oates (1999) 198 CLR 162, 168
Attorney-General v Brown [1920] 1 KB 773, 53
Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v Henry Kaye [2004] FCA 1363, 175
Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v Maritime Union of Australia [2002] ATPR 41–849, 208
Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v McCaskey (2000) 104 FCR 8, 207
Award Simplification Decision, Re (1997) 75 IR 272, 124
Ayling v Wade [1961] 2 QB 228, 27

Bahr v Nicolay (No. 2) (1988) 164 CLR 604, 50
Bain v Brand (1876) 1 App Cas 762, 165, 166
Balabel v Mehmet [1990] 1 EGLR 220, 202
Ballard v North British Railway Co. (1923) SC (HL) 43, 60
Balyl, Re (1994) 75 A Crim R 575, 202
Bank of Credit and Commerce International SA v Ali [2002] 1 AC 251, 69
Bankstown Airport Ltd v Noor Al Houda Islamic College Pty Ltd (2003) NSW ConvR 56–038, 152
Barbour, Re [1967] Qd R 10, 193
Barclays Bank Ltd v Inland Revenue Commissioner [1961] AC 509, 155
Barclays Bank Plc v Weeks Legg & Dean [1999] QB 309, 66
Barclays Bank Trust Co. Ltd v McDougall (2000) *Law Society's Gazette*, 3 August 39; [2001] WTLR 23, 164
Barraclough v Cooper [1908] 2 Ch 121n, 134
Bartlett & Partners Ltd v Meller [1961] 1 Lloyds Rep 487, 60
Barton v Fincham [1921] 2 KB 291, 50
Barton v Reed [1932] 1 Ch 362, 169
Basingstoke and Deane Borough Council v Host Group Ltd [1988] 1 All ER 824, 63
Bass Holdings Ltd v Morton Music Ltd [1988] Ch 493, 27
Bateman's Will Trusts [1970] 3 All ER 817, 134
Baumgartner v Baumgartner (1987) 164 CLR 137, 50

Bava Holdings Pty Ltd v Pando Holdings Pty Ltd (1998) NSW ConvR 55–862, 64
Bensley v Burdon (1830) 8 LJ (OS) Ch 85, 217
Best, Re [1904] 2 Ch 354, 211
Big River Timbers Pty Ltd v Stewart (1999) 9 BPR 1, 605, 215
Birchall, Re [1940] 1 All ER 545, 134
Bishop v Bonham [1988] 1 WLR 742, 50
Blue Metal Industries Ltd v Dilley [1970] AC 827, 159
Blunn v Cleaver (1993) 119 ALR 65, 115
Boat Park Ltd v Hutchinson [1999] 2 NZLR 74, 66
Bolam v Friern Hospital Management Committee [1957] 1 WLR 582, 16
Bonitto v Fuerst Bros & Co. Ltd [1944] AC 75, 214
Bontex Knitting Works Ltd v St John's Garage (1943) 60 TLR 44, (1943) 60 TLR 44 253, 141
Booth's Will Trusts, Re (1940) 163 LT 77, 134
Bower v Bantam Investments Ltd [1972] 3 All ER 349, 140
Boyes v Cook (1880) 14 Ch D 53, 69
BP Australia Pty Ltd v Nyran Pty Ltd (2003) 189 ALR 442, 69
BP Refinery (Westernport) Pty Ltd v Shire of Hastings (1977) 180 CLR 266, 50
Bridge Wholesale Acceptance (Australia) Ltd v GVS Associates Pty Ltd [1991] ASC 57, 116, 125
Bridgewater's Settlement, Re [1910] 2 Ch 342, 217
British Gas Corporation v Universities Superannuation Scheme Ltd [1986] 1 WLR 398, 63
Bromarin AB v IMD Investments Ltd [1999] STC 301, 66
Brough v Whitmore (1791) 4 Term Rep 206; 100 ER 976, 41
Brown v Davies [1958] 1 QB 117, 164
Brown, Re [1917] 2 Ch 232, 134
Bruce v Cole (1998) 45 NSWLR 163, 57
Bruton v London & Quadrant Housing Trust [2000] 1 AC 406, 51
Brygel v Stewart-Thornton [1992] 2 VR 387, 202
Budget Stationery Supplies Pty Ltd v National Australia Bank Ltd (1996) 7 BPR 14, 891, 59
Burrell & Kinnaird v Attorney General [1937] AC 286, 154
Burton v English (1883) 12 QBD 218, 60

Burwood Project Management Pty Ltd v Polar Technologies International Pty Ltd (1999) 9 BPR 17, 355, 214
Butt v McDonald (1896) 7 QLJ 68, 50

C (a solicitor), Re [1982] 1 NZLR 137, 205
Cadogan Estates Ltd v McMahon [2000] 3 WLR 1555, 209
Campbell v Metway Leasing Ltd [1998] ATPR 41–630, 207
Campbells Cash and Carry Pty Ltd v National Union of Workers, New South Wales Branch (No 2) (2001) 53 NSWLR 393, 199
Carl Zeiss Stiftung v Herbert Smith & Co. (No. 2) [1969] 2 Ch 276, 50
Central Pacific (Campus) Pty Ltd v Staged Developments Australia Pty Ltd (1998) V ConvR 54–575, 64
Chacmol Holdings Pty Ltd v Handberg [2005] FCAFC 40, 218
Chandris v Isbrandtsen-Moller Co. Inc [1951] 1 KB 240, 54
Charter Reinsurance Ltd v Fagan [1997] AC 313, 65
Charter v Charter (1874) LR 7 HL 364, 70
Chew v The Queen (1992) 173 CLR 626, 186
Chichester Diocesan Fund and Board of Finance v Simpson [1944] AC 341, 211
Christopherson v Naylor (1816) 1 Mer 320; 35 ER 693, 134
Ciampa v NRMA Insurance Ltd (unreported, Supreme Court of NSW, Bryson J, 23 October 1989), 119
Clark v Maclennan [1983] 1 All ER 416, 16
Clarke v Bruce Lance & Co. [1988] 1 WLR 881, 16
Clay v Karlson (No. 2) (1998) 19 WAR 287, 14
Coca Cola Bottling Co. v Reeves 486 So 2d 374, 128
Cochrane v Florida East Coast Ry Co. 145 So 217 at 218, 214
Cockerill v William Cory & Son Ltd [1959] 2 QB 194, 207
Codelfa Construction Pty Ltd v State Rail Authority of New South Wales (1982) 149 CLR 33 750, 69
Cohn, Re [1974] 3 All ER 928, 164
Colquhoun v Brooks (1888) 21 QBD 52, 57
Commercial Bank of Australia Ltd v Amadio (1983) 151 CLR 447, 125
Commercial Union Midwest Insurance Co v Vorbec 674 NW 2d 665, 115
Commissioner of Stamp Duties v Atwill [1973] AC 558, 165
Commissioner of State Revenue v Pioneer Concrete (Vic.) Pty Ltd (2002) 209 CLR 651, 29

Committee of Direction of Fruit Marketing v Collins (1925) 36 CLR 410, 186
Cooke v Anderson [1945] 1 WWR 657, 63
Cooke v New River Co. (1888) 38 Ch D 56, (1889) 14 App Cas 698, 136
Cooper v Stuart (1889) 14 App Cas 286, 29
Coote v Borland (1904) 35 SCR (Can) 282, 152
Cope, Re [1908] 2 Ch 1, 134
Corbett v Hill (1870) 9 LR Eq 671, 193
Cozens v Brutus [1973] AC 854, 61
Creswell v Potter [1978] 1 WLR 255, 125
Croft v Lumley (1858) 4 HLC 672 27;
Crowley v Templeton (1914) 17 CLR 457, 220

Darlington Futures Ltd v Delco Australia Pty Ltd (1986) 161 CLR 500, 59
Datastream International Ltd v Oakeep Ltd [1986] 1 WLR 404, 63
Datt v Law Society of New South Wales (1981) 35 ALR 523, 165
David v Heckler 591 F Supp 1033 (1984), 42
Davies v Stephens (1836) 7 C & P 570; 173 RR 251, 131
Dawes, ex parte (1886) 17 QBD 275, 218
Dayrell, Re [1904] 2 Ch 496, 47
De Kupyer v Crafter [1942] SASR 238, 169
Dean v Wiesengrund [1955] 2 QB 120, 57
Delamere's Settlement Trusts, Re [1984] 1 All ER 584, 27
Delnorth Pty Ltd v State Bank of New South Wales (1995) 17 ACSR 379, 142
Deputy Commissioner of Taxation v Clark (2003) 45 ASCR 332, 54
Dickerson v St Aubyn [1944] 1 All ER 370, 62
Diplock, Re – see Chichester Diocesan Fund and Board of Finance v Simpson
Director of Housing v Pavletic (2003) V ConvR 54–668, [2002] VSC 438, 216
Director of Investigation and Research v Newfoundland Telephone Company [1987] 2 SCR 466, 57
Discount & Finance Ltd v Gehrig's Wines Ltd (1940) 57 WN (NSW) 226, 217
Dockside Holdings Pty Ltd v Rakio Pty Ltd (2001) 79 SASR 374, 64
Doe d Willis v Martin (1790) 4 TR 39; 100 ER 882, 184
Donald, Re [1947] 1 All ER 764 39, 135
Donoghue v Stevenson [1932] AC 562, 15
Dorset Yacht Co. Ltd v Home Office [1970] AC 1004, 15

Douglas (Clayton) v The Police (1992) 43 WIR 175, 185
Druce v Druce [2004] 1 P & CR 26, 193
Dunlop & Sons v Balfour Williams & Co. [1892] 1 QB 507, 72
Dunn v Blackdown Properties Ltd [1961] Ch 433, 14

Eastern Counties Building Society v Russell [1947] 1 All ER 500, [1947] 2 All ER 734, 59
Eastwood v Ashton [1915] AC 900, 193
Eddy Lau Constructions Pty Ltd v Transdevelopment Enterprise Pty Ltd [2004] NSWSC 754, 168
Edward Wong Finance Co. Ltd v Johnson Stokes & Master [1984] AC 1296, 16
Elitestone Ltd v Morris [1997] 1 WLR 687, 28
Employers' Mutual Liability Insurance Co. v Tollefsen 263 NW 376 at 377, 214
European Bank Ltd v Citibank Ltd (2004) 60 NSWLR 153, 69

Fadden v Deputy Commissioner of Taxation (1943) 68 CLR 76, 214
FAI General Insurance Co. Ltd v McSweeney (1997) 73 FCR 379, 135
FAI General Insurance Co. Ltd v Parras (2002) 55 NSWLR 498, 224
Federal Steam Navigation Co. v Department of Trade [1974] 2 All ER 97, 213
Federated Homes Ltd v Mill Lodge Properties Ltd [1980] 1 WLR 594, 230
Ferrier v Wilson (1906) 4 CLR 785, 169
Field v Barkworth [1986] 1 WLR 137, 230
Film Investment Corporation of New Zealand v Golden Editions Pty Ltd (1994) 28 IPR 1, 56
First National Bank Plc v Thompson [1996] Ch 231, 217
Fleming v United Services Automobile Association 988 P 2d 378, 996 P 2d 501, 101
Floor v Davis [1980] AC 695, 159
Forbes v Git [1922] 1 AC 256, 63
Ford and Hill, Re (1879) 10 Ch D 365, 17
Foster v Day (1968) 208 EG 495, 130
Fourie v Hansen [2000] JOL 5993 (W), 175

G. & K. Ladenbau (UK) Ltd v Crawley & de Reya [1978] 1 WLR 266, 16
Galcif Pty Ltd v Dudley's Corner Pty Ltd (1995) 6 BPR 14,134, 73

Gardner v Coutts & Co [1967] 3 All ER 1064, 50
George T. Collings (Aust) Pty Ltd v H. F. Stevenson (1991) ASC 56–051, 175
Gibb v Registrar of Titles (1940) 63 CLR 503, 220
Gibbons v Gibbons (1881) 6 App Cas 471, 134
Gillett v Burke [1997] 1 VR 81, 111
Goldsbrough v Ford Credit Australia Ltd [1989] ASC 58, 583, 46, 125, 175
Goodtitle v Funcan (1781) Dougl 565 p 13
Gorringe v Mahlstedt [1907] AC 225, 134
GPT RE Ltd v Lend Lease Real Estate Investments Ltd [2005] NSWSC 964, 225
Graham v Public Employees Mutual Insurance Co. 656 P 2d 1077, 75
Gran Gelato Ltd v Richcliff (Group) Ltd [1992] Ch 560, 16
Grant v John Grant & Sons Pty Ltd (1954) 91 CLR 112, 217
Grey v Friar (1854) 4 HLC 565, 27
Grigsby v Melville [1974] 1 WLR 80, 193
Gruhn v Balgray Investments Ltd (1963) 107 *Solicitors Journal* 112, 59
Gulbenkian's Settlement, Re [1970] AC 508, 40, 175
Gurney v Grimmer (1932) 44 Lloyds L Rep 189, 214
Gyarfas v Bray (1990) NSW ConvR 55–519, 230

Halford v Price (1960) 105 CLR 23, 59
Hall v Simons [2002] 1 AC 615, 16
Halley v Watt [1956] SLT 111, 136
Halliday, Re [1925] SASR 104, 134
Halwood Corporation Ltd v Roads Corporation [1998] 2 VR 439, 94, 111, 201
Hammer Waste Pty Ltd v QBE Mercantile Mutual Ltd (2002) 12 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–553, 59
Hammond, Re [1938] 3 All ER 308, 152
Hardcastle v Bielby [1892] 1 QB 709, 169
Haskell v Marlow [1928] 2 KB 45, 164
Hatton v Beaumont (1978) 20 ALR, 314
Heath v Crealock (1874) LR 10 Ch App 22, 217
Hector Steamship Co. Ltd v VO Sovfracht Moscow [1945] KB 343, 136
Hedley Byrne v Heller [1964] AC 465, 15
Hely v Sterling [1982] VR 246, 164
Henriksen v Tallon Ltd [1965] RPC 434, 71
Herald & Weekly Times Ltd v Vlassakis (2003) SASR 70, 213

HEST Australia Ltd v McInerney (1998) 71 SASR 526, 59
Hill v Van Erp (1997) 188 CLR 159, 16
Hills v Potter [1983] 3 All ER 716, 16
HKSAR v Ma Wai-kwan [1997] 2 HKC, 315
Hobbs v London & South Western Railway (1875) LR 10 QB 111, 206
Hopgood v Brown [1955] 1 WLR 213, 192
Houlahan v Australian and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd (1992) 110 FLR 259, 45
Housden v Marshall [1959] 1 WLR 1, 39
House of Peace Pty Ltd v Bankstown City Council (2000) 48 NSWLR 498, 61
Houston v Burns [1918] AC 337, 184
Hughes v Winter [1955] SASR 238, 53
Hume v Perpetual Trustees Executors and Agency Co. of Tasmania (1939) 62 CLR 242, 164
Hy Whittle Ltd v Stalybridge Corporation (1967) 65 LGR (UK) 344, 52
Hyundai Shipbuilding and Heavy Industries Co. Ltd v Pournaras [1978] 2 Lloyd's Rep 502, 63

Investors Compensation Scheme Ltd v West Bromwich Building Society [1998] 1 WLR 896 66–68, 155, 185

J Fenwick & Co. Pty Ltd v Federal Steam Navigation Co. Ltd (1943) 44 SR (NSW) 1, 60
J. Spurling Ltd v Bradshaw [1956] 1 WLR 461, 175
John G Stein & Co. Ltd v O'Hanlon [1965] AC 890, 214
John Lee & Son (Grantham) Ltd v Railway Executive [1949] 2 All ER 581, 59
Johnson v American Home Assurance Co. (1998) 192 CLR 266, 59
Johnson v Shaw [2004] 1 P & CR 10, 192
Jones v Joseph (1918) 87 LJ KB 510, 131

Karam v Australia & New Zealand Banking Group Ltd [2001] NSWSC 709, 46
Kay v Lambeth London Borough Council [2004] 2 WLR 1396, 51
Kendle v Melsom (1998) 72 ALJR 560, 231
Kenny v Preen [1963] 1 QB 499, 29

Ketchum International Plc v Group Public Relations Holdings Pty Ltd (Eng CA, unreported, 17 October 1997), 64
Kevest v Spiteri [2002] NSWSC 22, 74
KJRR Pty Ltd v Commissioner of State Revenue (1999) 99 ATC 4335, 51
Koskas v Standard Marine Insurance Co. Ltd (1927) 27 Ll L Rep 59, 175

L'Estrange v F Graucob Ltd [1934] 2 KB 394, 115
Lambert, Re [1908] 2 Ch 117, 134
Lavery v Pursell (1888) 39 Ch D 508, 206
Laybourn v Gridley [1892] 2 Ch 53, 193
Legal & General Insurance Australia Ltd v Eather (1986) 6 NSWLR 390, 72
Leggott v Barrett (1880) 15 Ch D 306, 218
Leonard's Application [1966] Fleet Street Patent Law Reports 132, 71
Letang v Cooper [1965] 1 QB 232, 58
Lewis Emanuel & Son Ltd v Hepburn [1960] 1 Lloyd's Rep 304, 58
Lewis v Bell (1985) 1 NSWLR 731, 51
Lezam Pty Ltd v Seabridge Australia Pty Ltd (1992) 35 FCR 535, 175
Lloyds Bank Ltd v E.B. Savory & Co. [1933] AC 201, 16
LMI Australasia Pty Ltd v Baulderstone Hornibrook Pty Ltd [2003] NSWCA 74, 69
Lobb v Phoenix Assurance Co. Ltd [1988] 1 NZLR 285, 60
London Borough of Islington v Green [2005] EWCA Civ 56, 51
London Borough of Newham v Khatun [2005] QB 37, 123
London Regional Transport v Wimpey Group Services Ltd (1986) 280 EG 898, 43, 198
Loring v Thomas (1861) 30 LJ Ch 789, 133, 134
Lovick v Brough (1998) 36 RFL (4th) 458, 202

Mackay v Dick (1881) 6 App Cas 251, 50
Manchester Bonded Warehouse Co. v Carr (1880) 5 CPD 507, 131
Mandalidis v Artline Contractors Pty Ltd (1999) 47 NSWLR 568, 55, 57
Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd [1997] AC 749, 63, 64, 66, 70, 71
Manning v Chambers (1847) 1 De G & Sm 282 (69 ER 1069), 135
Manton v Parabolic (1985) 2 NSWLR 361, 216
Manufacturers Mutual Insurance Ltd v Withers (1988) 5 ANZ Insurance Cases 60–853, 65, 184

Marshall v Cottingham [1982] 1 Ch 82, 187
Martin v Martin (1987) 54 P & CR 238, 193
Massey v Morris [1894] 1 QB 412, 169
McCann v Switzerland Insurance Australia Ltd (2000) 203 CLR 579, 59
McMahons Tavern Pty Ltd v Suncorp Metway Insurance Ltd (2004) 89 SASR 125, 59
McPherson, Re [1968] VR 368, 134
Meadfield Properties Ltd v Secretary of State for the Environment [1995] 1 EGLR 39, 176
Merkur Island Shipping Corporation v Laughton [1983] AC 570, 124
Metcalfe v Williams [1914] Ch 61, 134
Metcalfe, Re [1909] 1 Ch 424, 134
MFI Properties Ltd v BICC Group Pension Trust Ltd [1986] 1 All ER 974, 63
Millen v Grove [1945] VLR 259, 214
Minister for Immigration and Multicultural Affairs v Savvin (2000) 61 ALD 107, 186
Minister for Immigration v Hughes (1999) 86 FCR 567, 164
Minister for Natural Resources v Brantag Pty Ltd (1997) 8 BPR 15,815, 59
Minister of State for the Army v Dalziel (1944) 68 CLR 261, 165
Ministry of Health v Simpson [1951] AC 251, 211
MLC Ltd v O'Neill [2001] NSWCA 161, 59
Moage Ltd, Re (1998) 153 ALR 711, 215
Monkland v Jack Barclay Ltd [1951] 1 All ER 714, 140
Moorcock, The (1889) 14 PD 54, 49
Mudie & Co. v Strick (1909) 100 LT 701, 53
Munro v Shackleton (unreported, Kyle J, Saskatchewan Court of Queen's Bench, 12 November 1993; [1993] SJ No 616), 118
Mylward v Weldon (1596) Tothill 102; 21 ER 136, 32

Nada Shah v Sleeman (1917) 19 WALR 119, 155
National Australia Bank Ltd v Hall (1993) ASC 56–234, 125
National Australia Bank Ltd v Nobile (1988) ATPR 40–855, 125
Neilson v Poole (1969) 20 P & CR 909, 151, 192, 193
Nema, The [1982] AC 724, 72
New South Wales Rugby League Ltd v Australian Rugby Football League Ltd (1999) 30 ASCR 354, 47

New Zealand Government Property Corporation v HM & S Ltd [1982] QB 1145, 165
Nicholls v Public Trustee (South Australia) (1945) 72 CLR 86, 164
Nocton v Lord Ashburton [1914] AC 932, 15
No-fume Ltd v Frank Pitchford & Co. Ltd (1934) 52 RPC 28, 71
North v Marina (2003) 11 BPR 21,359, 59
Norwich Union Life Insurance Society v British Railways Board [1987] 2 EGLR 137, 7
NRMA Insurance Ltd v Collier (1996) 9 ANZ Insurance Cases 76,717, 111, 119
NRMA Insurance Ltd v McCarney (1992) 7 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–146, 119
NSW Rifle Association v Commonwealth of Australia, unreported, New South Wales Court of Appeal, 15 August 1997, 46

O'Loughlin v Mount (1998) 71 SASR 206, 218
Okolo v Secretary of State for the Environment [1997] 2 All ER 911, 66
One.Tel Ltd v Rich (2005) 190 FLR 443, 198
Optus Vision Pty Ltd v Australian Rugby Football League Ltd [2004] NSWCA 61, 69
Overseas Union Insurance Ltd v AA Mutual International Insurance Co. Ltd [1988] 2 Lloyd's Rep 63, 40

Pacific Carriers Ltd v BNP Paribas (2004) 218 CLR 451, 64
Parcels of Land v Snavely, Ohio App Lexis 2398 (1999, Ohio), 52
Pearl Assurance PLC v Shaw [1985] 1 EGLR 92, 63
Peat Resources of Australia Pty Ltd, Re (2004) 181 FLR 454, 213
Penn v Gatenex Co [1958] 2 QB 210, 14
Perpetual Executors and Trustees Association of Australia Ltd v Hosken (1912) 14 CLR 286, 220
Peter Darlington Partners Ltd v Gosho Co. Ltd [1964] 1 Lloyd's Rep 149, 49
Piccolo v National Australia Bank Ltd [2000] FCA 187, 52, 110
Proudfoot v Hart (1890) 25 QBD 42, 131

Quazi v Quazi [1980] AC 744, 54

R A & K Becker Pty Ltd v Cariste Pty Ltd [2001] NSWSC 663; 11 BPR 20,111, 190
R v Calabria (1982) 31 SASR 423, (1983) 151 CLR 670, 58
R v Craske, ex parte Metropolitan Police Commissioner [1957] 2 QB 591
R v Jasper (2003) 139 A Crim R 329, 169, 215
R v Lavender (2005) 79 ALJR 1337, 59
R v Norfolk County Council (1891) 60 LJ QB 379, 154
R v Ojibway (spoof) (1965) 8 *Criminal Law Quarterly* 137, 155
R v Regos (1947) 74 CLR 613, 53
R v Secretary of State for Social Services; ex parte Child Poverty Action Group (*The Times* 10th October 1988), 141
Radaich v Smith (1959) 101 CLR 209, 51
Ravenseft Properties Ltd v Davstone (Holdings) Ltd [1980] QB 12, 130
Rayfield v Hands [1958] 2 All ER 194, 136
Rayner, Re (1925) 134 LT 141, 134
Re Agricultural Union v Massey-Ferguson Industries Ltd (1979) 94 DLR (3d) 743, 202
Rearden Smith Line Ltd v Yngvar Hansen-Tangen ('The Diana Prosperity') [1976] 1 WLR 989, 48, 63
Redfern, Re (1877) 6 Ch D 133, 47
Rich v CGU Insurance Ltd (2005) 79 ALJR 856, 60
Richards v The Commercial Bank of Australia (1971) 18 FLR 95, 80
Riltang Pty Ltd v L Pty Ltd (2002) 11 BPR 20,281, (2004) 12 BPR 22,347, 69, 148
Roake v Chadha [1984] 1 WLR 40, 230
Rogers v Whitaker (1992) 175 CLR 479, 16
Ross v Caunters [1980] Ch 297, 15
Ross v NRMA Life Ltd (1993) 7 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–170, 119
Rowlands, Re [1973] VR 225, 134
Rowlett, Leakey & Co. v Scottish Provident Institution [1927] 1 Ch 55, 59
Royal Botanic Gardens and Domain Trust v South Sydney City Council (2002) 76 ALJR 436, 69
Ruapehu Alpine Lifts Ltd v State Insurance Ltd (1998) 10 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–404, 53, 59
Rush & Tompkins Ltd v Greater London Council [1989] AC 1280, 150
Ryland Brothers (Australia) Ltd v Morgan (1926) 27 SR (NSW) 161, 57

S. S. Knutsford Ltd v Tillmanns & Co. [1908] AC 406, 54
S. S. Magnhild v McIntyre Brothers and Co. [1920] 3 KB 321, 54, 55
Saloma Pty Ltd v Big Country Developments Pty Ltd (1997) 8 BPR 15,935, 20
Samad v District Court of New South Wales (2000) 50 NSWLR 270, (2002) 76 ALJR 871, 202
Samuel v Jarrah Corporation Ltd [1904] AC 323 at 326, 80
Sandford v Raikes (1816) 1 Mer 646 at 651; 35 ER 808, 184
Saunderson v Piper (1839) 5 Bing (NC) 425; 132 ER 1163, 152
Savill Brothers Ltd v Bethell [1902] 2 Ch 523, 59
Scarfe v Adams [1981] 1 All ER 843, 192
Schellenberg v Tunnell Holdings Pty Ltd (2000) 74 ALJR 743, 142
Schuler AG v Wickman Machine Tool Sales Ltd [1974] AC 235, 49
Scottish Power plc v Britoil (Exploration) Ltd (*The Times*, 2 December 1997), 66, 68
Seay v Eastwood [1976] 1 WLR 1117, 159
Sefton v Tophams Ltd [1967] AC 50, 39
Selby-Bigge, Re [1950] 1 All ER 1009, 226
Sewell,Re [1929] SASR 226, 134
Seymour v Lucas (1860) 29 LJ Ch 841, 135
Sharman's Contract, Re [1936] Ch 755, 191
Sheppard, Re (1855) 1 K & J 269; 69 ER 459, 134
Shropshire County Council v Edwards (1983) 46 P & CR 270, 230
Sidaway v Bethlem Royal Hospital Governors [1985] AC 871, 16
Skerrits of Nottingham Ltd v Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions [2000] 3 WLR 511, 149
Sklavenites v Phoenix Prudential Australia Ltd (1986) 4 ANZ Insurance Cases 60–745, 198
Smith v Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd (1996) NSW Conv R 55–774, 20
Smith v Chadwick (1882) 20 Ch D 27, 52
Socpen Trustees Limited v Wood Nash & Winters, Jupp J, Queen's Bench Division, 6 October 1983, 42
Solicitor, Re a [1966] 1 WLR 1604, 205
South Australia v Peat Marwick Mitchell & Co. (Supreme Court of South Australia, Olsson J, 15 May 1997), 32

South Australian Housing Trust v Development Assessment Commission (1994) 63 SASR 35, 202
Southam, Re; *ex parte Lamb* (1881) 19 Ch D 169, 141
Sparrow and James' Contract, Re [1910] 2 Ch 60, 192
Spathis v Hanave Investment Co. Pty Ltd (2001) NSW ConvR 55–983, 177
Spiro v Glencrown Properties Ltd [1991] Ch 53, 63
Spring v Biles (1783) 1 TR 435n; 99 ER 11182n at 1184, 134
St Edmundsbury and Ipswich Diocesan Board of Finance v Clark (No. 2) [1975] 1 WLR 468 at 477, 59
Stafford v Conti Commodity Services Ltd [1981] 1 All ER 691, 16
Stag Line Ltd v Foscolo, Mango & Co. Ltd [1932] AC 328, 53
State of Ohio v Bowen (Court of Appeals, First Appellate District of Ohio, 28 July 2000), 185
Staunton v Wood (1851) SC 15 Jur 1123, 141
Stockdale v City of Charles Sturt (2000) 76 SASR 225, 59
Street v Mountford [1985] AC 809, 51
Suncorp General Insurance Ltd v Cheihk (1999) 10 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–442, 124
Superior Lands Ltd v Wellington City Council [1974] 2 NZLR 251, 148
Surveyor-General v Seychell (2002) 81 SASR 277, 202
Sutton, Re (1885) 28 Ch D 464, 211

Thomas Nationwide Transport (Melbourne) Pty Ltd v May and Baker (Australia) Pty Ltd (1966) 115 CLR 353, 60
Toll (FGCT) Pty Ltd v Alphapharm Pty Ltd (2004) 79 ALJR 129, 115
Towne v Eisner 245 US 418 (1918), 156
Trade Indemnity Co. Ltd v Workington Harbour and Dock Board [1937] AC 1, 45
Trafalgar House Construction (Regions) Ltd v General Surety & Guarantee Co. Ltd (1994) 10 Const LR 240, [1995] 3 WLR 204, [1996] AC 199, 45
Transport Accident Commission v Hipwell [1995] 1 VR 582, 186
Truckell v Stock [1957] 1 WLR 161, 193

Unilever plc v The Procter & Gamble Co. [1999] 1 WLR 1630, 150

Van der Waal v Goodenough [1983] 1 NSWLR 81, (1998) 72 ALJR 713, 47

Victims Compensation Fund v Brown (2002) 54 NSWLR 668, 213
Villar, Re [1928] Ch 471, 14
Vines v Djordjevitch (1955) 91 CLR 512, 164
Viscountess Rhondda's Claim [1922] 2 AC 339, 59

Wade v Licardy (1993) 33 NSWLR 1, 205
Walker v Wilsher (1889) 23 QBD 335 at 337, 150
Walker, Re [1930] 1 Ch 469, 133, 134
Watson v Haggitt [1928] AC 127, 62
Webb v Nightingale (1957) 107 LJ 359, 192
Welsh v Greenwich Borough Council [2000] 49 EG 118, 74
Westpac Banking Corp v Tanzone Pty Ltd (2000) 9 BPR 17,521, 44, 63
White v Jones [1995] 2 AC 207, 16
Whitehouse v Jordan [1981] 1 WLR 246, 16
Whittaker v Comcare (1998) 28 AAR 55, 199
Wicks Farming Pty Ltd v Waraluck Mining Pty Ltd [1996] 1Qd R 99, 164
Wigginton and Milner Ltd v Winster Engineering Ltd [1978] 1 WLR 1462, 192
Wilkie v Gordian Runoff Ltd (2005) 79 ALJR 872, 60
Williams & Glyn's Bank Ltd v Boland [1981] AC 487 at 504, 221
Williams v Williams [1988] QB 161, 52

York v Casey [1998] 2 EGLR 25, 64
Yorkshire Insurance Co. Ltd v Campbell [1917] AC 218, 175
Yoshimoto v Canterbury Golf International Ltd [2001] 1 NZLR 523, 65
Young v Lamb (2001) 10 BPR 18,553, 148

INTRODUCTION

Traditional legal language

The English language of today is still recognisably the language of Chaucer and Shakespeare, of Abraham Lincoln and Winston Churchill, of the Book of Common Prayer and the Authorised Version of the Bible. It is also the language of lawyers in many countries: the United Kingdom, the United States, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and India, to name but a few. In English, lawyers draft documents and compose letters; in English, lawyers formulate statutes and propagate regulations; in English, lawyers prepare pleadings and argue their cases.

Legal English, however, has traditionally been a special variety of English. Mysterious in form and expression, it is larded with law Latin and Norman French, heavily dependent on the past, and unashamedly archaic. Antiquated words flourish, such as *aforementioned*, *herein*, *therein*, *whereas* – words now rarely heard in everyday language. Habitual jargon and stilted formalism conjure a spurious sense of precision: *the said, aforesaid*, *the same*. Oddities abound: oath-swearers do not believe something, they *verily* believe it; parties do not wish something, they are *desirous* of it; the clearest photocopy only *purports* to be a copy; and so on. All this – and much more – from a profession that regards itself as learned.

Some infelicities of expression, some overlooked nuances, some grammatical slips, can be forgiven. Lawyers are only human, and in the day-to-day

practice of law they face an overwhelming weight of words. But what cannot be forgiven is the legal profession's systematic mangling of the English language, perpetrated in the name of tradition and precision. This abuse of language cannot be justified, legally or professionally. Nor, increasingly, do clients accept it, showing a mounting dissatisfaction with vague excuses such as 'That's the way we always put it' or 'That's how we say it in legal jargon'.

Speaking generally, today's legal English evolved over the 300-year period that spanned the setting up of the first printing press in England (1476) and the American Declaration of Independence. Its terminology and style remain largely frozen in the form they had reached by the early years of the nineteenth century. Nothing much has changed since then, despite sporadic efforts at reform. The lack of change is evident in Panel 1, taken from the charges register of an English land title: notice the similarity of language in documents over 200 years apart.

In more recent times, typewriters, word processors and computers have brought changes in the format, layout and length of legal documents. The language, however, has remained largely unchanged. How odd it must seem to non-lawyers that the law's antique language lingers on, harking back to another age, so numbing and relentless that even lawyers themselves sometimes fail to read it (or fail to understand it if they do). How odd that legal gobbledegook lies dormant in office files, precedent books, computers and word processors, ready to be recycled at a moment's notice in documents produced in the early twenty-first century.

Pressures for reform

All areas of human endeavour have their advocates for reform. But reformers, including legal reformers, are often disappointed.[1] Radical thinkers such as Jeremy Bentham, Lord Brougham and Lord Denning – all of whom urged reforms not only in the substance of the law but also in its language – in the end have had relatively little impact. Lawyers have a vested interest in preserving their mystique, and part of that mystique is enshrined in

[1] See, for example, the hopelessly optimistic predictions following the 1845 English land law reforms, in 'Conveyancing Reform' (1845) 2 *Law Review*, p. 405.

Title Number : DN37753

Schedule of Restrictive Covenants

1. The following are details of the covenants contained in the Conveyance dated 25 January 1750 referred to in the Charges Register:-

   AND the said John Jeffery doth for himself his heirs and assigns and every of them further covenant promise and agree to and with the said Duke his heirs and assigns and every of them by these presents THAT he the said John Jeffery his heirs or assigns shall not nor will open or work any Quarry or quarries of stone or any mines or minerals in or upon the said premises or any part thereof (other than for building or repairing the said premises) without the Licence and consent of the said Duke his heirs or assigns for the purpose first had and obtained.

2. The following are details of the covenants contained in the Conveyance dated 5 August 1958 referred to in the Charges Register:-

   The Purchasers to the intent that this covenant shall bind so far as may be the property hereby assured into whosesoever hands the same may come and to the intent likewise that this covenant may enure for the benefit of and be annexed to the land in the said Parish of Plymstock which immediately after the execution of this Deed may remain vested in the Vendor and the Company or either of them and to each and every part of such land taken separately HEREBY COVENANT jointly and severally with the Vendor and as a separate covenant with the Company that the Purchasers and their successors in title will at all times hereafter observe and perform the covenants and conditions on the part of the Purchasers contained and set forth in the Second Schedule hereunder written

   The Vendor and the Company reserve the right to release alter or vary any of the covenants to which any other part or parts of the Thornyville Estate is shall or may be subject and to alter or vary the lay-out of The Thornyville Estate or any part thereof and to sell any part or parts of the Thornyville Estate free from the said covenants or subject to such other covenants stipulations and conditions as the Vendor or the Company may think fit.

Panel 1 Charges register extract

traditional legal language. But today there are clear signs that the need for traditional legal language is being questioned.

This questioning has been fuelled largely by the consumer movement of the second half of the twentieth century. Non-lawyers now expect to be able to understand what they sign. Consumer groups urge customers to seek answers and explanations. Some lawyers see this as a threat. Others, however, see it as a challenge. They recognise that a clearer, crisper style relieves them from the drudgery of acting as interpreter, of having to translate the antique into the contemporary. They also perceive the advertising advantage their documents provide for marketing their expertise. Even those lawyers whose prime concern is to avoid negligence claims can see that 'plainness' might prove an advantage over gobbledegook: when a document is drawn in

straightforward, up-to-date, no-nonsense English, clients are hard-pressed to assert afterwards that they did not understand it.

Yet the advocates of standard, modern English – or, to use the term now becoming widespread, plain English – should not be complacent. Among lawyers, proponents of plain English are in a minority. Many lawyers have difficulty in accepting anything other than traditional legal terminology; the ancient sonorous language of the law embodies all they stand for. But improvements are appearing, notably in commercial documents. Commercial lawyers appear more likely than (for example) conveyancing lawyers to use standard, modern English. Perhaps this is because commercial work often involves putting new ideas and new methods into a legal setting; in contrast, conveyancing often harks back to the Middle Ages.

Change in legal English will come, but it will be slow. There will be no storming of the citadel, no victory parade, no triumphal march through the streets. Traditional legal language will be a long time dying. But die it will, under the weight of the reality that change is inevitable. Wittgenstein once wrote of language, 'Everything that can be put into words can be put clearly'.[2] Legal language is no different.

What this book tries to do

Our purpose in this book is to encourage legal drafters to write in modern, standard English. We do so by illustrating why modern, standard English is preferable to traditional legal English. We start in Chapter 1 by considering the influences that affect today's legal drafter. We also examine the factors that help perpetuate traditional styles of legal drafting, factors such as the fear of negligence claims and the familiarity that comes from using a conventional style. Chapter 2 deals with the interpretation of legal documents, and explains why drafters in the modern style can be assured that their efforts will not fall foul of the so-called rules of interpretation. Chapter 3 traces the move towards modern English in legal drafting in various countries. In Chapter 4 we consider some of the benefits of drafting in plain language, showing how it can improve the image of lawyers and help avoid negligence

[2] Ludwig Wittgenstein, *Tractatus Logico-Philosophicus*, trans D. F. Pears and B. F. McGuinness (London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1961), p. 51.

claims. This leads us, in Chapter 5, to discuss what to avoid when drafting modern documents. Chapter 6 explains how to draft documents in modern, standard English, covering not only obvious points such as language and punctuation but also important factors such as structure and layout. Lastly, Chapter 7 puts the principles to the test by analysing some traditional legal clauses and rewriting them in modern, standard English.

Chapter One

WHAT INFLUENCES THE LEGAL DRAFTER

Introduction

The traditional style of legal writing is the product of many influences. Some influences are constant, some are sporadic. They rarely exist in isolation; usually, many operate together. This chapter reviews the main influences on traditional legal drafting:

- familiarity and habit – the security that comes from adopting forms and words that have been used before and seen to be effective
- conservatism in the legal profession, allied to the common law tradition of precedent
- fear of negligence claims
- the means of production
- pressures to conform to professional norms
- the desire to avoid ambiguity
- the mixture of languages from which the law derives its vocabulary
- payment by length of document
- payment by time
- the litigious environment of legal practice.

Some of these influences, such as the mixture of languages and payment by length of document, are largely historical, with little direct effect today. Others, however, remain relevant.

The stylistic hallmarks of traditional legal drafting are apparent in many types of documents. Some of the best (or worst) examples are leases, their dense prose and 'torrential' style intimidating even the hardiest reader.[1] But other documents exhibit a similar style: conveyances, wills, trust deeds, insurance policies, mortgages, and shipping documents, to name but a few. The common thread pervading them all is tradition, going back hundreds of years. This tradition is so powerful that it has been impervious to reform through the centuries and continues to resist reform even today, when change might be thought an easy option. A tradition so persistent merits detailed scrutiny.

Familiarity and habit

Lawyers prefer to use documents that have been tested in operation. They prefer the established to the novel, the familiar to the new. In a sense, this should not be surprising: all human beings share the same trait. For lawyers, however, the trait creates particular problems, because eventually they come to write legal documents in a style that is peculiarly time-warped. It is traditional; it is inculcated in law schools; it is used by judges and legislators; it is how they always write. Knowing no other style, they never pause to question it. What incentive is there to do so? All the pressures are the other way.

To illustrate, consider the following extract from a contemporary conveyance. The conveyance is of a parcel of land in a subdivision, and the drafter's aim is to create an easement to permit owners of other lots in the subdivision to tap into the drains under the land being conveyed. The document comes from England, but it could have come from any country where English is the language of the law:

> AND excepting and reserving also in fee simple unto the Company their successors in title owners or owner for the time being of the parts not herein comprised of the said Building Estate the right to connect with any drain or

[1] Law Com No 162, *Landlord and Tenant: Reform of the Law* (1987), paras 3.6, 3.7. Hoffmann J, in *Norwich Union Life Insurance Society v British Railways Board* [1987] 2 EGLR 137 at 138, found the flood of words in a lease so 'torrential' that he thought there might be 'some justification' in counsel's argument that he should depart from the normal principle of construction that requires effect to be given to every word in a clause.

> drains made or to be made in through or under the said pieces or parcels of land thereby conveyed any drain or drains belonging to any adjoining or adjacent site or sites on the said Building Estate for the purpose of forming one or more general drain or drains or otherwise.

This drafting is the product of habit, not design. Written from scratch, it could have looked more like this:

> Reserving in fee simple the right to connect any drain in any part of the rest of the estate with any drain in the conveyed land.

Compared to the earlier version, this reduced version seems disarmingly simple. In fact, though, it assumes a high degree of expertise – so high that few lawyers would be bold enough to attempt it. Let us explore some of the technical knowledge required for the reduced version.

First, since new rights are created (whether to use existing drains or drains to be built), it is sufficient to use 'reserving' in place of 'excepting and reserving'. Most drafters, however, would instinctively play safe with the arcane distinctions between exceptions and reservations (see p. 29) and would retain the conventional 'excepting and reserving'.

Second, what of the phrase 'in fee simple'? This term has come down from medieval times. It harks back to the distinctions that English law draws between ownership of the land and ownership of rights in the land. In many jurisdictions that have inherited the English common law, a person cannot in legal theory 'own' land in any absolute sense. Only the Crown (now, the State) owns the land; land 'owners' in fact merely 'hold' the land 'of [that is, from] the Crown'. But, also in legal theory, a person can own an interest in the land, and the largest possible of these interests is the 'fee simple'. The word 'fee' denotes an interest that can be sold or passed on to descendants; the word 'simple' denotes that the interest is not curtailed in the way that some other interests are. But the medieval theory is just that: theory. For all practical purposes we can safely describe a person who owns the fee simple as 'owning' the land or (if we wish to retain an echo of the medieval theory) owning the 'freehold'. No misunderstanding or ambiguity arises from calling a person the 'owner' of the land or the owner of the 'freehold'. So 'fee simple' can be discarded in favour of a more modern term. Indeed, this change has

statutory blessing. For example, in England and Wales, s 1(2) of the *Law of Property Act* 1925 provides:

> The only interests or charges in or over land which are capable of subsisting or of being conveyed or created at law are –
>
> (a) an easement, right, or privilege in or over land for an interest equivalent to an estate in fee simple absolute in possession or a term of years absolute . . .

In the light of this provision, it would be possible to say:

> Reserving for the equivalent of a freehold the right to connect . . .

Indeed, it would be possible to go further, and simply say:

> Reserving the right to connect . . .

Given its context in the conveyance, the parties must have intended the easement to be a perpetual right (as distinct from an easement intended to last for a specified number of years). This intention is implemented without the need for formalistic phrases, under s 60 of the English *Law of Property Act* 1925, which provides that a 'conveyance' of land passes the fee simple, read with s 205 of the same Act, which defines 'conveyance' to include every assurance of property 'or of an interest therein'. In practice, however, simplified usage of this kind is not seen. Lawyers retain the technical 'in fee simple', on the illusory justification that it is legally essential. They ignore as irrelevant the mystification it causes to non-lawyers.

The point of this example is that drafting a reservation of an easement requires expertise. So, too, does drafting many other legal documents. Few lawyers risk changes in terminology, for it puts their expertise on the line. It is easier and safer to stick with the familiar.

Conservatism

The common law traditionally looks backwards, seeking authority from things past. A clear example is the principle of *stare decisis* (to stand by things decided): lawyers defer to past judicial decisions, moving from them only reluctantly.

However, reliance on past judicial decisions – 'precedents', as lawyers call them – can curb innovation. The pattern of the present is fixed by reference to the past, giving rise to reluctance to alter the law in general to deal with a problem in particular. This reluctance is reflected in the well-known saying: 'Hard cases make bad law'. When confronted by a manifest injustice, it is easy to lose sight of principle; there is a fear of setting a precedent for the future.

Of course, some lawyers do not allow themselves to be fettered by precedent. For them, rigid adherence to principle can inhibit justice. Among judges, perhaps the best-known example in modern times is Lord Denning. His 1979 book, *The Discipline of Law*, contains a chapter called 'The doctrine of precedent', which he concludes in his customary clear and forthright style:

> Let it not be thought from this discourse that I am against the doctrine of precedent. I am not. It is the foundation of our system of case law. This has evolved by broadening down from precedent to precedent. By standing by previous decisions, we have kept the common law on a good course. All that I am against is its too rigid application – a rigidity which insists that a bad precedent must necessarily be followed. I would treat it as you would a path through the woods. You must follow it certainly so as to reach your end. But you must not let the path become too overgrown. You must cut out the dead wood and trim off the side branches, else you will find yourself lost in thickets and brambles. My plea is simply to keep the path to justice clear of obstructions which would impede it.[2]

Lord Denning had earlier dealt with a similar theme, but with particular emphasis on lawyers' language. In his Romanes Lecture at Oxford in 1959, entitled 'From Precedent to Precedent', he said:

> You will have noticed how progressive the House of Lords has been when the lay peers have had their say, or at any rate, their vote on the decisions. They have insisted on the true principles and have not allowed the conservatism of lawyers to be carried too far. Even more so when we come to the meaning of words. Lawyers are here the most offending souls alive. They will so often stick to the letter and miss the substance. The reason is plain enough. Most of

[2] Lord Denning, *The Discipline of Law* (London: Butterworths, 1979), p. 314.

> them spend their working lives drafting some kind of document or another – trying to see whether it covers this contingency or that. They dwell upon words until they become mere precisians in the use of them. They would rather be accurate than be clear. They would sooner be long than short. They seek to avoid two meanings, and end – on occasions – by having no meaning. And the worst of it all is that they claim to be the masters of the subject. The meaning of words, they say, is a matter of law for them and not a matter for the ordinary man.[3]

These criticisms are hardly new. Getting on for 300 years ago Jonathan Swift had expressed similar views. In *Gulliver's Travels* (1726) his hero describes a society of men in England bred from youth to prove 'by words multiplied for the purpose' that black is white and white is black 'according as they are paid':

> It is a Maxim among these Lawyers, that whatever hath been done before, may legally be done again: And therefore they take special Care to record all the Decisions formerly made against common Justice and the general Reason of Mankind. These, under the name of Precedents, they produce as Authorities to justify the most iniquitous Opinions; and the Judges never fail of decreeing accordingly . . .
>
> It is likewise to be observed, that this Society hath a peculiar Cant and Jargon of their own, that no other Mortal can understand, and wherein all their Laws are written, which they take special Care to multiply; whereby they have wholly confounded the very Essence of Truth and Falsehood, of Right and Wrong; so that it will take Thirty Years to decide whether the Field, left me by my Ancestors for six Generations, belong to me, or to a Stranger three Hundred Miles off.[4]

So far, we have used the word 'precedents' to mean court decisions of the past. However, English and Commonwealth lawyers also use the term to describe model legal forms. These model forms, published specifically for use by the legal profession, lawyers employ in every facet of legal practice. They influence not only the language of legal documents but also their style and layout. They are found in precedent books, which are generally derived

[3] Quoted in ibid., p. 293.

[4] *Gulliver's Travels* (Oxford: Basil Blackwell, 1959), pp. 249, 250. This is part of a general diatribe against lawyers.

from yet earlier precedent books, and so on backwards to the origins of the first precedent books.

Books of model forms were first published in England in the sixteenth century.[5] Their number proliferated in succeeding centuries.[6] Also published were books of simplified legal principles, like *Every Man His Own Lawyer* and *The Justice of the Peace and Parish Officer*. Of these, David Mellinkoff of the University of California at Los Angeles said:

> Such books preserved in detail a continuity of archaic English, bad grammar, and deficient punctuation, in form available to every scrivener and dabbler in the law, with or without the slightest knowledge of what he was writing. They gave greater currency to the similar language of the more learned formbooks and of the few archaic forms enshrined for the literate by Blackstone. Where English letters blossomed with originality and sparkle in the eighteenth century, the law was encased in a hard shell of fixed pattern, its language determined by forms and the deadweight of precedent. The mass of misplaced precedent, attached to the forms by coincidence rather than art, dropped into the hands of a legal profession unprepared to cope with the bulk of its expanding business. The time had not yet come for any mass re-examination; there was too much movement in the law itself to look for more than the show of security. That appearance at least the forms gave, and lawyers embraced the illusion.[7]

Given their derivative nature, it is hardly surprising that even current precedent books are couched in a traditional style.

Mellinkoff has shown that many of the early drafters of precedents were uneducated laymen.[8] Others, though, were able barristers.[9] Of the latter,

[5] The history of conveyancing precedent books is traced in *Martin's Practice of Conveyancing* (London: Maxwell & Son, 1844), vol. 2, pp. 24 ff.

[6] Sir William Holdsworth, *A History of English Law* (London: Methuen and Sweet & Maxwell), vol. 12 (1938), p. 375. Examples from the eighteenth century are: Nicholas Covert, *The Scrivener's Guide*, 3rd edn (London: Elizabeth Nutt, 1716); *The Attorney's Compleat Pocket-Book*, 5th edn (London: J. Worrall, 1764); *The Attorney and Solicitor's Complete Assistant* (London: J. Worrall, 1767); Anthony Macmillan, *A Complete System of Conveyances of, and Securities upon, Lands* (Edinburgh: Elphingston Balfour, 1787).

[7] David Mellinkoff, *The Language of the Law* (Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown and Co., 1963), p. 199.

[8] Ibid., p. 194.

[9] Holdsworth, *History of English Law*, 3rd edn, vol. 3 (1923), p. 653; vol. 6 (1924), p. 446.

perhaps the most famous was Sir Orlando Bridgman, later Chief Justice of Common Pleas and styled 'the father of conveyancers'.[10] His forms of conveyance, first published in 1682 (though compiled earlier), continue to influence current practice, as witness the traditional 'covenants for title' still used in many countries.[11]

The tyranny of the precedent books is still with us. They continue to be published, hundreds of thousands of words pouring off the printing presses each year, swamping the legal profession with sentence upon sentence for pleadings, affidavits, declarations, wills, leases, conveyances, notices, bills of lading, mortgages, trust deeds, hire-purchase agreements, assignments, bonds, highway agreements, covenants – and any other documents that one lawyer imagines another might need. Two of the better-known collections in England are *Atkin's Court Forms* and *Butterworths' Encyclopaedia of Forms and Precedents*. Each runs to more than 40 volumes. *Atkin* lines the shelves of most barristers' chambers; and most solicitors' firms of any size have the *Encyclopaedia*.

To many practitioners, the contents of the precedent books are gospel. Some lawyers even cling to the belief that adopting precedents from books such as these will save them from claims in negligence. However, this reliance on precedent books is misplaced. Standard forms have their place, but legal documents should be drafted for the needs of the particular client, in the light of the circumstances of the particular transaction. Just as the needs of clients differ, so do the needs of their documents. Yet, as Robinson has written, 'the majority of members of the branches of the profession are addicted to the use of precedent books, office forms, and printed forms. The thinking seems to be that the needs of a client must be satisfied by some cure prescribed years ago.'[12]

Blind adherence to precedents is one cause of the complexity of modern legal documents. In *Penn v Gatenex Co.*, Lord Evershed MR condemned the

[10] A title bestowed by Mr Serjeant Hill, in *Goodtitle v Funcan* (1781) Dougl 565 at 568; 99 ER 357 at 359.

[11] They were compiled in 1649–60. M. J. Russell, 'Brevity v Verbosity' (1962) 26 Conv (NS) 59 reproduces some of Bridgman's material. For an example of current practice in Australia, see *Conveyancing Act* 1919 (NSW), s 78. In England and Wales, the language of these covenants has been updated: *Law of Property (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act* 1994.

[12] Stanley Robinson, 'Drafting – Its Substance and Teaching' (1973) 25 *Journal of Legal Education*, p. 514.

unthinking use of precedent books. Commenting on a tenancy agreement for a flat, he said:

> the second clause contained no less than 18 separate covenants on the part of the tenants comprehending such matters as the keeping of rabbits and reptiles, the mowing of lawns and the weeding of gardens, which may have owed their presence more to precedents than the requirements of the actual contract being made.[13]

Sometimes, slavishly-copied precedents are not merely inappropriate to the particular transaction: they are dangerous or even wrong. 'Botched clauses'[14] find their way into the precedent books; and once there, they are perpetuated. For example, in *Dunn v Blackdown Properties Ltd*, the grant of an easement in a form found in several precedent books was held to be void because it infringed the rule against perpetuities.[15] Other cases dealing with the rule against perpetuities have pointed out the dangers of an uncritical adoption in modern wills or trusts of 'royal lives clauses' found in old precedent books.[16] Yet still the precedent books – whether good or bad, appropriate or inept – are relied on and treated as holy writ.

These two aspects of 'precedents' – reliance on past decisions and dependence on published forms – are compounded by a third: the customary methods of learning in practice. Richard Preston, writing in the early nineteenth century, explained how lawyers taught themselves to draft documents:

> The misfortune of a person, who either as clerk to a solicitor, or as a student in a conveyancer's chambers, begins to study the practice of conveyancing, is, that he is taught by form, or precedent, rather than by principle. He is made to copy precedents, without knowing either their application, or those rules

[13] [1958] 2 QB 210 at 218.

[14] *Re Gulbenkian's Settlements* [1970] AC 508 at 517. This case is discussed further in Chapter 2.

[15] [1961] Ch 433, CA.

[16] See especially *Re Villar* [1928] Ch 471, which Morris and Leach cite as 'an awful warning against the use of out-of-date editions of law books': J. H. C. Morris and W. Barton Leach, *The Rule Against Perpetuities* (London: Stevens & Sons, 1962), p. 61 fn. 43. See also discussion in *Clay v Karlson (No. 2)* (1998) 19 WAR 287 at 293.

> on which they are grounded. When he begins to prepare drafts, he is led to expect all his information from these forms; and his knowledge is, in the end, as limited as the means by which he has been instructed.
>
> One of the principal difficulties to be surmounted, by a person so educated, is to gain sufficient strength of mind, and resolution, to free himself from the shackles of precedent.[17]

Sadly, much the same can be said today. Training in law firms, universities, and colleges of law reinforces the budding lawyer's natural desire to seek comfort in the precedents of yesteryear. As a result, lawyers are reluctant to set aside what has been used for years and presumed to work.

Fear of negligence claims

Fear of negligence claims governs the professional life of many lawyers. To some extent, this fear is justified. Courts regard lawyers as a special class, highly-trained and therefore expected to provide a high standard of care. This was apparent as long ago as 1914, when the House of Lords in *Nocton v Lord Ashburton* held a solicitor liable for breach of fiduciary duty for giving negligent advice to a client.[18] Decades later it was confirmed in *Ross v Caunters*, a decision which greatly enlarged the legal profession's potential liability.[19] Solicitors posted a will to a client (the testator) for him to sign. They told the client that his signature needed to be witnessed, but failed to warn him that the spouse of a beneficiary should not be a witness. Under English law, a gift to a beneficiary is void if the beneficiary or the beneficiary's spouse witnesses the will. Megarry V-C held that, by analogy with earlier authorities, the solicitors owed a duty of care not only to their client but also to the beneficiary.[20] So the beneficiary recovered from the solicitors what he would have received from the will. The principle of *Ross v Caunters*

[17] Richard Preston, *A Treatise on Conveyancing*, 3rd edn, 3 vols (London: W. Clarke & Sons, 1819–29), vol. 1, p. ix.

[18] [1914] AC 932. [19] [1980] Ch 297.

[20] The earlier authorities were *Donoghue v Stevenson* [1932] AC 562, HL; *Hedley Byrne v Heller* [1964] AC 465, HL; *Dorset Yacht Co. Ltd v Home Office* [1970] AC 1004, HL.

has since been confirmed by the House of Lords in England and the High Court in Australia.[21]

Indeed, lawyers may be open to claims for negligence even though they act in accordance with usual professional practices.[22] This may put lawyers in a liability class of their own. The law sometimes treats members of other professions more kindly. For example, doctors have been held not to be negligent where they have adopted normal professional procedures, and there is no higher duty on financial advisers.[23]

In short, lawyers are more at risk of negligence claims today than their predecessors ever were, and more at risk than members of other professions. And clients now have no qualms about suing their lawyers, and have little difficulty in getting a lawyer to act for them against another lawyer in a negligence claim.

Small wonder, then – as several Law Commissions have noted[24] – that many a lawyer's natural caution and conservatism reinforces fears that innovative legal drafting might prove dangerous and give rise to negligence claims. But these fears, if unchecked, can colour the whole approach to professional life. They can (and often do) encourage the retention of ossified phrases and antiquated forms that have long lost their relevance to the

[21] *White v Jones* [1995] 2 AC 207; *Hill v Van Erp* (1997) 188 CLR 159. However, there are limits to the duty a solicitor owes to non-clients: see, for example, *Clarke v Bruce Lance & Co.* [1988] 1 WLR 881; *Al-Kandari v J. R. Brown & Co.* [1988] QB 665 at 672 (Lord Donaldson MR); *Gran Gelato Ltd v Richcliff (Group) Ltd* [1992] Ch 560.

[22] See *Edward Wong Finance Co. Ltd v Johnson Stokes & Master* [1984] AC 1296, PC. See also *G. & K. Ladenbau (UK) Ltd v Crawley & de Reya* [1978] 1 WLR 266 (failure to search commons register). Even the barrister's traditional immunity from negligence for work done in court has disappeared in England (*Hall v Simons* [2002] 1 AC 615, HL), though not yet in Australia and some other common law countries.

[23] For doctors, examples are *Bolam v Friern Hospital Management Committee* [1957] 1 WLR 582; *Hills v Potter* [1983] 3 All ER 716; *Clark v Maclennan* [1983] 1 All ER 416; *Whitehouse v Jordan* [1981] 1 WLR 246, CA; *Sidaway v Bethlem Royal Hospital Governors* [1985] AC 871, HL; and note *Ashcroft v Mersey Health Authority* [1983] 2 All ER 245 at 247 (Kilner Brown J): 'it could be said that the more skilled a person is the more the care that is expected of him'. But compare *Rogers v Whitaker* (1992) 175 CLR 479, holding that ultimately the question of liability is decided by the court, not by the medical profession. For financial advisers, see *Stafford v Conti Commodity Services Ltd* [1981] 1 All ER 691 (commodity brokers). Banks, however, may be liable even if they follow accepted practice: *Lloyds Bank Ltd v E. B. Savory & Co.* [1933] AC 201.

[24] Law Com No. 162, *Landlord and Tenant: Reform of the Law* (1987), para 3.7; Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Plain English and the Law* (Report No. 9, 1987), p. 49.

people for whom they are intended. They can (and often do) encourage the indiscriminate accretion of pure surplusage – as witness the scourge of unamended preliminary enquiries in English conveyancing practice or requisitions on title in other jurisdictions.[25] And they can (and do) lead to documents of excruciating length, replete with clauses aimed at every possible contingency, whether immediate or remote, relevant or fanciful, with little regard for the circumstances of the transaction or the essence of the bargain between the parties.

The consequences of these fears are exacerbated when coupled with the legal profession's long-held notion that traditional words and phrases carry meanings that have been settled by judicial interpretation.[26] We will have something to say about this notion in a later chapter. Here it is enough to comment that a word or phrase that has been the subject of judicial interpretation may well be suspect, for if it were clear it would not have been litigated in the first place.[27]

Means of production

Another influence on legal drafting is the way in which legal documents are physically produced. A number of the characteristics of legal style can be traced to this influence. Over the centuries the means of production has changed, but its influence on drafters remains.

Handwriting

Before the invention of printing, legal documents were necessarily handwritten. Various forms of stylised Latin script evolved, with abbreviations

[25] See Richard Castle, 'Preliminary Enquiries: A Welcome Initiative' (1987) 84 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 2257. The problem was lessened in England for residential conveyancing following the introduction of the Law Society's TransAction scheme. For criticisms of the undue width of standard requisitions, see *Re Ford and Hill* (1879) 10 Ch D 365 at 369; *Emmet and Farrand on Title*, 19th edn (London: Longman, looseleaf, 1998), para [5.077].

[26] See William C. Prather, 'In Defense of the People's Use of Three Syllable Words' (1978) 39 *Alabama Lawyer*, p. 395.

[27] However, to say, as some do, that a word or phrase that has been litigated must necessarily have something wrong with it, is to go too far: see Charles A. Beardsley, 'Beware of, Eschew and Avoid Pompous Prolixity and Platitudinous Epistles' (1941) 16 *California State Bar Journal*, p. 66.

'incomprehensible to any but the initiated'.[28] The best-known of these scripts was court hand, used in the records of the superior courts of law.

After William Caxton set up the first printing press in England in 1476, printed works soon proliferated. Not much printing, though, found its way into private legal documents. Until the typewriter took over in the twentieth century, legal documents were for the most part handwritten by clerks who were often poorly educated and poorly paid.[29] The clerk simply copied what had been done before in similar circumstances. Preparing legal documents by hand remained common until as recently as the 1950s. For an example of a 1949 handwritten conveyance, see Panel 2 on page 19.

The typewriter

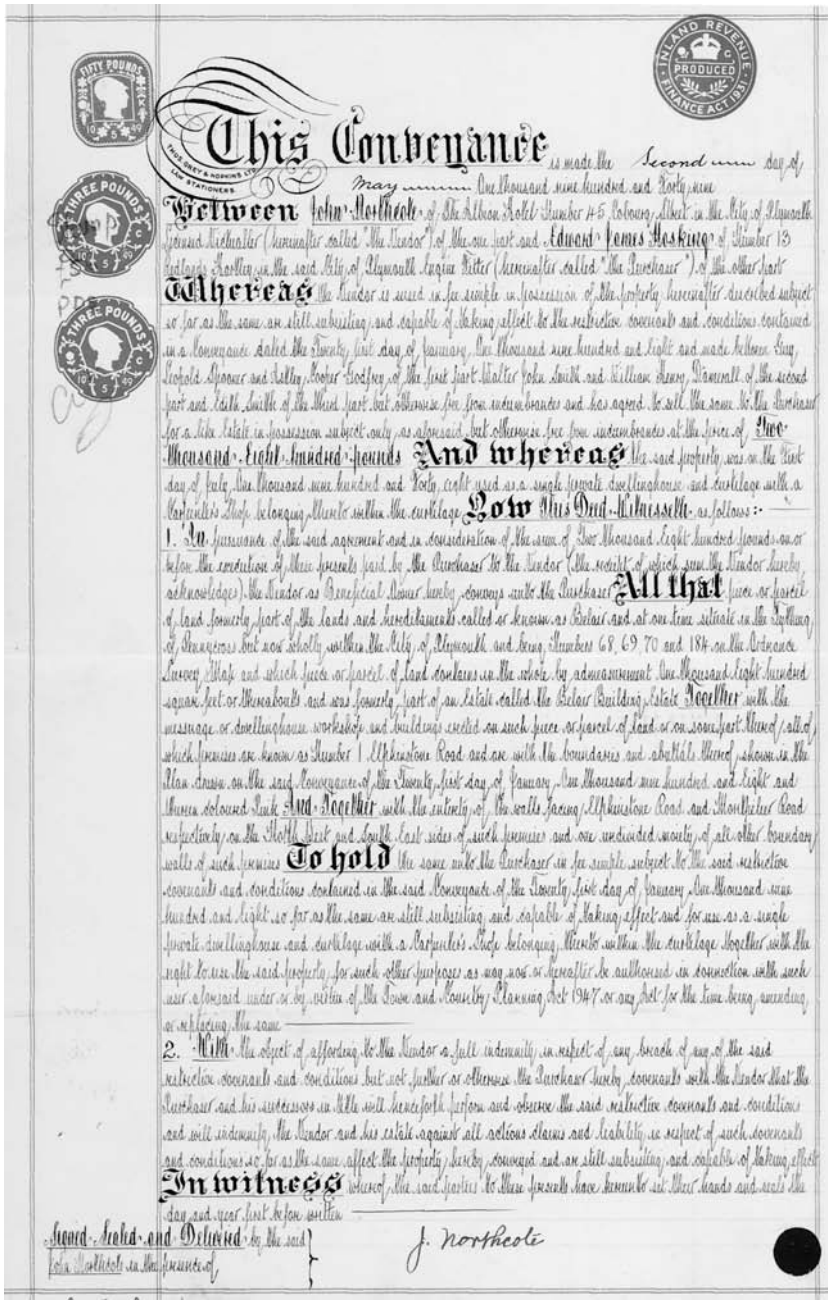
Typewriters were invented in the USA in 1867, and began to be commercially successful seven years later when Remington & Sons started to produce them. The First World War provided an impetus to their use in legal practice. Men were away fighting, and women were employed to operate these small machines. The manual typewriter with a moving platen remained the basic model until the 1960s, when IBM introduced the 'golfball'. Electric typewriters then took over generally, until a decade or so later they in turn were replaced by the next generation: electronic typewriters with a memory function, proportional spacing, and justification of the right-hand margin.

The typewriter lessened the impact of the rising price of labour. As a result, the nineteenth century reforms designed to curb verbosity in legal documents (see pp. 33–36) had less effect than they might otherwise have had.

The computer and word processor

Now that the computer has supplanted the typewriter, word processing programs are frequently blamed for legal documents that are overlong, unnecessarily complicated and not tailored to the task in hand. But word processors do not think. The writer still must formulate the ideas, make the judgments and compose the text. As Christopher Turk and

[28] Mellinkoff, *Language of the Law*, p. 86.
[29] Geoffrey Best, *Mid-Victorian Britain 1851–75* (London: Fontana, 1979), p. 109.


This Conveyance is made the Second day of May One Thousand nine hundred and Forty nine
Between John Northcote of The Albion Hotel Number 45 Lobourg Street in the City of Plymouth Licensed Victualler (hereinafter called "The Vendor") of the one part and Edward James Hoskings of Number 13 Bridges Terrace in the said City of Plymouth Engine Fitter (hereinafter called "The Purchaser") of the other part
Whereas The Vendor is seised in fee simple in possession of the property hereinafter described subject so far as the same are still subsisting and capable of taking effect to the restrictive covenants and conditions contained in a Conveyance dated the Twenty first day of January One Thousand nine hundred and Eight and made between Guy Leopold Spooner and Selby Hooper Cooper of the first part Walter John Smith and William Henry Trewhella of the second part and Edith Smith of the third part but otherwise free from incumbrances and has agreed to sell the same to the Purchaser for a like estate in possession subject only as aforesaid but otherwise free from incumbrances at the price of Two Thousand Eight Hundred pounds And whereas the said property was on the First day of July One Thousand nine hundred and Forty eight used as a single private dwellinghouse and workshop with a Hairdresser's Shop belonging thereto within the curtilage Now this Deed witnesseth as follows:-
1. In pursuance of the said agreement and in consideration of the sum of Two Thousand Eight Hundred pounds on or before the execution of these presents part by the Purchaser to the Vendor (the receipt of which sum the Vendor hereby acknowledges) the Vendor as Beneficial Owner hereby conveys unto the Purchaser All that piece or parcel of land formerly part of the lands and hereditaments called or known as Belsize and at one time situate in the Parishes of Stonehouse but now wholly within the City of Plymouth and being Numbers 68, 69, 70 and 184 on the Ordnance Survey Map and which piece or parcel of land contains in the whole by admeasurement One Thousand Eight Hundred square feet or thereabouts and was formerly part of an Estate called the Belsize Building Estate Together with the messuage or dwellinghouse workshop and buildings erected on such piece or parcel of land or some part thereof called or which premises are known as Number 1 Elphinstone Road and are with the boundaries and chattels thereof shown in the Plan drawn on the said Conveyance of the Twenty first day of January One Thousand nine hundred and Eight and thereon coloured Pink And Together with the entirety of the walls facing Elphinstone Road and Montpelier Road respectively on the North East and South East sides of such premises and one undivided moiety of all other boundary walls of such premises To hold the same unto the Purchaser in fee simple subject to the said restrictive covenants and conditions contained in the said Conveyance of the Twenty first day of January One Thousand nine hundred and Eight so far as the same are still subsisting and capable of taking effect and for use as a single private dwellinghouse and curtilage with a Hairdresser's Shop belonging thereto within the curtilage together with the right to use the said property for such other purposes as may now or hereafter be authorised in connection with such user aforesaid under or by virtue of the Town and Country Planning Act 1947 or any Act for the time being amending or replacing the same
2. With the object of affording to the Vendor a full indemnity in respect of any breach of any of the said restrictive covenants and conditions but not further or otherwise the Purchaser hereby covenants with the Vendor that the Purchaser and his successors in title will henceforth perform and observe the said restrictive covenants and conditions and will indemnify the Vendor and his estate against all actions claims and liability in respect of such covenants and conditions so far as the same affect the property hereby conveyed and are still subsisting and capable of taking effect
In witness whereof the said parties to these presents have hereunto set their hands and seals the day and year first before written
Signed Sealed and Delivered by the said John Northcote in the presence of J. Northcote

Panel 2 Handwritten conveyance

John Kirkman point out in their book *Effective Writing*, new technology changes the processes of writing, not its principles.[30]

Nevertheless, computers are particularly apt to encourage monotonous repetition of words or whole chunks of text. This tendency is particularly evident in modern commercial leases, almost all of which are now produced on computers. Drafters can make do with wordings they have used before, pasting additional material unthinkingly, sidestepping the task of amending for slightly changed circumstances. As a result, leases become uniform, repetitive and prolix, and often lacking in logical organisation.[31]

Obviously, computers have the potential for greatly improving the standard of legal drafting, making it easy to hone and clarify expression. But the potential remains largely unrealised. Instead, word processors 'regurgitate complexity and verbiage'.[32] Lawyers 'put more store on convenience of their word processor than clarity for the reader'.[33]

The dictating machine

Most lawyers use dictating machines. They are worthy tools for effectively using the time of both fee-earner and typist. But they can be over-employed. The mind can only accommodate so much, and what was dictated only moments before can be forgotten. Consistency disappears and inaccuracies emerge.

Further, effectively combining printed precedents with variables spoken into a machine can be difficult. The machine is picked up and used between appointments, after a telephone call, or whenever time permits; if something more pressing occurs, the machine is put down. The threads of what went before must then be collected when opportunity next arises.

Except in the most experienced hands, dictating machines are particularly unsuited to composing formal documents. The longer the document, the more difficult the task. Since the invention of the tape cassette in the

[30] 2nd edn (London and New York: E. & F. N. Spon, 1989), p. 120.
[31] See ibid., p. 122.
[32] *Smith v Australia and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd* (1996) NSW Conv R 55-774 at 55,936 (Kirby P).
[33] *Saloma Pty Ltd v Big Country Developments Pty Ltd* (1997) 8 BPR 15,935 (Young J, Supreme Court of New South Wales).

1950s and particularly the introduction of the Philips mini-cassette in 1966, dictation to secretaries via shorthand has declined almost to extinction. A secretary could read back what went before, and was often asked to. Although it is possible to replay a tape, any attempt to find more than the immediately preceding piece is likely to be frustrating. Certainly it is not possible to keep checking back for consistency and accuracy as it is with a document, whether handwritten or typed.

Perhaps dictating machines will become less important as more lawyers acquire computer keyboard skills. (Even keyboard skills may become redundant as voice-recognition technology improves – but that is likely to be some way ahead.) In the meantime, the lapses of a tired fee-earner dictating into a machine are all too often revealed, usually in correspondence but sometimes also in formal documents.

Professional pressures

The pressures of professional legal practice are numerous. Three in particular call for attention here: lack of time; demands of clients; and the perceived need to conform to the conventions of other lawyers. All three can influence drafting styles.

Lack of time is the easiest to identify. Successful lawyers are busy people – indeed, success and lack of time are logical concomitants. Needless to say, lack of time can seriously impede clear drafting. To write succinctly takes time. In 1656 Pascal apologised to the Jesuit Fathers for making his letter so long, because he did not have time to make it shorter.[34]

Equally pressing are the demands of clients: the lawyer naturally wants to give clients what they want – after all, clients pay the fees. Yet this can adversely affect the drafting of documents. For example, faced with a client's demand to include a provision (or a set of provisions), the lawyer may feel disinclined to explain that the point is already covered, or that it could be better dealt with another way, or that it need not be dealt with at all. One commentator has put it this way:

[34] *Provincial Letters* XVI (4 December 1656).

> The client asks you to include, as standard, a covenant not to put rubbish bins in the common parts [of the building]. The easy way out is to stick in the extra clause, probably at the end of the other covenants to save renumbering; but why not point to the existing covenant against nuisance, the right for the landlord to make regulations, and the fact that the tenant has no right to put out dustbins in the first place. If the client is not persuaded, the covenant should be put in its rightful place among the others dealing with similar matters.[35]

Also pressing is the tendency to conform to professional conventions. This arises partly from the way that legal drafting is learned. Earlier, we showed how legal training encourages the unthinking use of precedents. On the whole, in England and many Commonwealth countries legal drafting is not taught at universities or in the law schools. Students are not exposed to the techniques of clear, precise drafting. For the most part, drafting is learned on the job, picked up piecemeal in chambers by the pupil barrister or in the office by the solicitor's trainee. Little guidance is given. Small wonder, then, that learners begin nervously, by reference to models in the precedent books or in office forms. Wanting to become respected members of the group, they conform to the language conventions of that group.[36] Inevitably, old forms, old styles, old words and old phrases are perpetuated. The result is traditional legal language, preserving professional mystique at the expense of lay comprehension.

Straining to avoid ambiguity

Ambiguity is legal drafting's chief curse; its avoidance is the drafter's chief goal. By 'ambiguity' here, we mean its dictionary sense of the admission of more than one meaning; of being understood in more than one way; or of referring to more than one thing at the same time. The distinguished American writer on legal drafting, Reed Dickerson, called ambiguity 'perhaps the most serious disease of language'.[37] To give them their due, most lawyers

[35] Nick Lear (1987) 84 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 1630.
[36] Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Plain English and the Law*, para 31.
[37] *The Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, 2nd edn (Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown and Co., 1986), p. 32.

strive to avoid ambiguity in their drafting. Yet the law reports are littered with cases dealing with ambiguity of one kind or another. Maybe this is not surprising, for even the shortest and simplest words can be difficult to analyse and use with precision.

Nonetheless, it is important to keep the goal of ambiguity-free drafting in perspective. Language can be wrenched out of context. Perverse interpretations are almost always possible. Not every word or sentence is ambiguous; nor is every word or sentence a lawyer writes subject to 'every conceivable misinterpretation'.[38] But the lawyer's fear of ambiguity is one of the principal reasons why the language of legal documents has reached its present parlous state.[39] So much so that whether the documents communicate meaning to those for whom they are intended has become of secondary importance.

The mixture of languages

Legal English reflects the mixture of languages that has produced the English language generally. The principal sources of the modern legal lexicon are French and Latin.[40] But they are not the only sources. Another is Scandinavian: by AD 900 invaders from Scandinavia had installed themselves in the eastern part of Britain called the Danelaw. The Scandinavian influence gives us the word *law* itself.[41]

As for the French influence: the Norman invaders of 1066 spoke a dialect form of French, known as Norman French. Following the Norman Conquest, French became the official language of England, though most people still spoke English. For nearly 300 years, French was the language of legal proceedings, with the consequence that many words in current legal use have their roots firmly in this period.[42] They include *property*, *estate*, *tenement*, *chattel*, *appurtenance*, *lease*, *encumbrance*, *seisin*, *tenant* and *executor*.

[38] Sir Ernest Gowers, *The Complete Plain Words* (London: Pelican, 1962), p. 19.
[39] David Crystal and Derek Davy, *Investigating English Style* (London: Longman, 1969), p. 193.
[40] Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Plain English and the Law*, p. 14.
[41] Robert Burchfield, *The English Language* (Oxford and New York: Oxford University Press, 1995 reissue), pp. 12, 175; Albert C. Baugh and Thomas Cable, *A History of the English Language*, 5th edn (Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, 2002), p. 99.
[42] Burchfield, *English Language*, p. 14; Baugh and Cable, *History of the English Language*, p. 146.

French continued in use in England from the Norman Conquest until the fourteenth century. It came to be known as Anglo-French. Like all languages, it drew on other linguistic influences, in this case not only Norman French but also Central French (the dialect of Paris). This has consequences even today. For example, Central French preferred an initial *ch*, so the Norman *catel* corresponds to the Central *chatel*. The first gives us *cattle*; the second gives us the word familiar to lawyers, *chattel*.[43] And like all languages, Anglo-French evolved over time, giving rise to various forms of law French.[44]

During this period, Latin remained the language of record – that is, the language of formal records and statutes.[45] But because only the learned were fluent in Latin, it never became the language of oral pleading or discussion. Of course, Latin had long been an influence on the English language, though not as a result of the Roman occupation (which had left little impact on the language, apart from a few corrupted placenames).[46] Latin initially made its mark when it was brought in by the first Christian missionaries in AD 597.[47] As Christianity came to be adopted in most parts of the land, Latin words were taken into the language and adapted to English formations.[48]

Thus for some centuries following the Norman invasion, England was tri-lingual: English remained the spoken language of the great majority of the population, but virtually all writing was in French or Latin. Significantly for our purposes, English had no place in legal matters. The first known appearance of an English word in a legal document was in a report (in

[43] Burchfield, *English Language*, p. 16; Baugh and Cable, *History of the English Language*, p. 171.

[44] Mellinkoff, *Language of the Law*, ch. IX. Sir Frederick Pollock, in *A First Book of Jurisprudence*, 6th edn (London: Macmillan, 1929), p. 299, gives fascinating examples of the degeneration of law French. The examples are of living Anglo-Norman, as spoken in 1292 (taken from YB 20 Ed I, pp. 192–3); decaying Anglo-Norman, as spoken in 1520 (taken from YB 12 Hen VIII, p. 3); and degenerate law French, reported in the seventeenth century (taken from Dyer's *Reports* 188b, in the notes added to the 1688 edition).

[45] Sir Frederick Pollock and F. W. Maitland, *The History of English Law Before the Time of Edward I*, 2nd edn (2 vols, Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1968), vol. 1, pp. 82, 86.

[46] Robert McCrum and others, *The Story of English*, 3rd edn (London: Faber & Faber, 2002), p. 52.

[47] Ibid., p. 61.

[48] Burchfield, *English Language*, p. 11.

Latin) of a case brought by Henry III (1216–72), where the clerk called the king's action *nameless* (pointless).[49]

On the battle between Latin, French, and English in legal documents, Pollock and Maitland write:

> Legal instruments in French come to us but very rarely, if at all, from the twelfth century; they become commoner in the thirteenth and yet commoner in the fourteenth, but on the whole Latin holds its own in this region until it slowly yields to English, and the instruments that are written in French seldom belong to what we may call the most formal classes; they are wills rather than deeds, agreements rather than charters of feoffment, writs under the privy seal, not writs under the great seal.[50]

The gradual demise of French in the law can be traced to 1356, when the mayor and aldermen of London ordered proceedings in the sheriff's court of London and Middlesex to be in English.[51] In 1362 the *Statute of Pleading* enacted (in French) that all proceedings should be in English, though they should be enrolled in Latin.[52] However, Pollock and Maitland remark that this came too late:

> It could not break the Westminster lawyers of their settled habit of thinking about law and writing about law in French, and when slowly French gave way before English even as the language of law reports and legal text-books, the English to which it yielded was an English in which every cardinal word was of French origin.[53]

As the printed word became more commonplace, some writers made a deliberate effort to adopt words derived from Latin, hoping to make their text appear more learned. This happened also in the law. Legal words taken from Latin in this way include *adjacent*, *frustrate*, *inferior*, *legal*, *quiet*, and *subscribe*.[54] Some writers also affected Latin word order. This led to an ornate style, consciously adopted to impress more than inform. Even today, Latin grammar is responsible for some of the

[49] McCrum, *Story of English*, p. 76.
[50] Pollock and Maitland, *History of English Law*, vol. 1, p. 85.
[51] Baugh and Cable, *History of the English Language*, p. 149.
[52] 36 Ed III c 15.
[53] Pollock and Maitland, *History of English Law*, vol. 1, p. 85.
[54] Baugh and Cable, *History of the English Language*, p. 185.

ornateness and the unusual word order of legal documents. It also lies behind the all-pervasive *shall* constructions, discussed further in Chapters 5 and 6.[55]

Different documents came to adopt English at different times. Wills began to be written in English about 1400. The petitions of the Commons were enrolled in French until 1423, after which they were often in English. Statutes were in Latin until about 1300, in French until 1485, in English alongside French for a year or two, and in English alone from 1489.[56] The abbreviated French used by lawyers was a serviceable and accurate shorthand,[57] and written pleadings in law French (despite the statute of 1362 and a similar one in 1650)[58] became more and more technical. But as the seventeenth century progressed, there arose aspects of law governed by principles not so easily expressed in French. These included new branches of commercial law. Also, many developments in land law were introduced by courts of equity, whose language had always been English.[59]

English law's linguistic progression – through French, Latin and English – is sometimes cited to explain the legal tradition of using two or three words where one will do. Lawyers, it is said, saw some benefit (if not strict need) in drawing from the law's diverse language stocks, particularly in periods of transition from one language to the next. In this way words from one language stock came to be used in conjunction with words from another language stock. There is some evidence to support this assertion: as we show below, certain common word pairings that have survived in modern legal usage are indeed drawn from different languages. But the argument does not hold true for all common pairings: many are drawn from the same language. More likely, whether drawn from the same or from different language stocks, word pairings merely exemplify the lawyer's natural proclivity towards verbosity. The following examples illustrate the point.

[55] For the complexities of Latin construction, see H. C. Nutting, *The Latin Conditional Sentence* (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1925).

[56] Baugh and Cable, *History of the English Language*, pp. 153, 154.

[57] Holdsworth, *History of English Law*, 2nd edn (1937), vol. 6, p. 572.

[58] C. H. Firth and R. S. Rait, *Acts and Ordinances of the Interregnum*, 1642–1660, vol. ii (Abingdon: Professional Books, 1978), p. 455. A statute similar to the 1650 statute was enacted in 1731: 4 Geo II, c 26.

[59] Holdsworth, *History of English Law*, 2nd edn (1937), vol. 6, p. 572.

'Null and void'

'Null' comes from the Latin *nullus*, or from the old French *nul*. 'Void' comes from the old French *voide*. In legal usage, the two words are synonymous. Occasionally the phrase 'absolutely null and void' is seen, or even 'absolutely null and void and of no further force or effect whatsoever'. ('Absolutely' in this context means simply 'without condition or limitation'; usually it can be discarded, though sometimes it is useful to lend emphasis.)[60] So common is the doublet that for most lawyers 'null' or 'void' used singly seems odd. The pairing has virtually become one word. Strictly, though, 'void' alone will do.[61]

'Observe and perform'

This pairing is frequently seen in promises relating to land, as in: 'to observe and perform all the covenants and stipulations set out in the charges register and to indemnify the Lessor against all actions in respect of any non-observance or non-performance'.[62]

'Observe' comes from the Latin *observare*: to watch, attend to, guard. 'Perform' comes from the Anglo-Norman *perfourmer*. It might be thought that the doublet could be justified on the ground that 'observe' is merely passive, while 'perform' involves some action, so that (for example) 'observe and perform' reflects the distinction between restrictive and positive covenants so well known in English and Commonwealth Law.[63] But the courts have decided otherwise: in the context of most legal documents, there is no difference between 'observe' and 'perform'.[64] Either word will do.

[60] See *Re Delamere's Settlement Trusts* [1984] 1 All ER 584, CA.

[61] An argument might be made for retaining the doublet in bijural countries such as Canada. See L. Mailhot and J. D. Carnwath, *Decisions, Decisions* . . . (Quebec: Les Editions Yvon Blais Inc., 1998), p. 100, quoting Susan C. Markman, Senior Counsel, Department of Justice, Canada, at the Canadian Bar Annual Meeting, August 1997: 'The plain language advocates tell us there is no reason to use the lawyers' standby "null and void" but the drafter mindful of the sensibilities of the two English-speaking audiences will want "null" for civil lawyers and "void" for common lawyers.'

[62] A shortened version from Theodore B. F. Ruoff and C. West, *Land Registration Forms*, 3rd edn (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1983), p. 133.

[63] As to this distinction, see Peter Butt, *Land Law*, 5th edn (Sydney: Lawbook Co., 2006), ch. 17.

[64] See *Grey v Friar* (1854) 4 HLC 565; *Croft v Lumley* (1858) 4 HLC 672; *Bass Holdings Ltd v Morton Music Ltd* [1988] Ch 493, CA; *Ayling v Wade* [1961] 2 QB 228 at 235, CA.

'Fixtures and fittings'

This doublet is common in the context of land transactions. 'Fixture' derives from the late Latin *fixura*, and is the description applied to something that has become so attached to land that the law regards it as forming part of the land.[65] The origin of 'fitting' (with its adjective 'fit': suited, answering the purpose, appropriate) is unknown.

When used in conjunction with 'fixtures', 'fittings' merely serves to confuse.[66] Usually, the two terms are used as synonyms: that is, fixtures *are* fittings, and fittings *are* fixtures.[67] To some users of the word, however, 'fittings' are chattels – that is, not fixtures at all.[68] To other users, 'fittings' describes items that have been attached (and so are fixtures) but that remain essentially removable, such as fitted carpets, kitchen racks, and bathroom cabinets. But if we turn to the case law, we see that judges generally distinguish, not between fixtures and 'fittings', but between fixtures and 'chattels'.[69] Drafters would do well to follow this judicial lead.

'Right and liberty'

This familiar pairing often heads a list of appurtenant rights, as in: 'full right and liberty for the Tenant to pass and repass with or without vehicles over and upon the roads shown and tinted brown on the said plan'.[70] 'Right' comes from the Old English *riht*. 'Liberty' comes from the Latin *libertas*, through the Provençal *libertat*. In strict jurisprudential theory, a *right* differs from a *liberty*; but in the context of legal documents, most drafters use the words as synonyms. Either word will do, although 'right' is to be preferred as the more idiomatic of the two.

[65] See Butt, *Land Law*, ch. 3.

[66] See J. E. Adams, 'Fixtures and Fittings – Time for Some Clear Thinking' (1986) 136 *New Law Journal* (UK), p. 652; Richard Castle, 'Estate Agents' Particulars – Incorporation in the Contract' (1987) 84 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 326.

[67] See Marcus Binney, 'Preying on the Churches', *The Times*, 3 December 1988, p. 10.

[68] See J. E. Adams, (1986) 136 *New Law Journal*, p. 652; D. N. Clarke and J. E. Adams, *Rent Reviews and Variable Rents*, 3rd edn (London: Longman, 1990), p. 328.

[69] See *Elitestone Ltd v Morris* [1997] 1 WLR 687. Perhaps 'fixtures and fittings' is paralleled by 'goods and chattels'. 'Goods' (Old English *god*) and 'chattels' (Old French *chatel*) are treated as near-synonyms, although strictly speaking 'chattels' embraces 'goods'. See Robert E. Eagleson, 'Legislative Lexicography', in E. G. Stanley and T. F. Hoad, *Words for Robert Burchfield's Sixty-Fifth Birthday* (London: D. S. Brewer, 1988), p. 83.

[70] A shortened version from Ruoff and West, *Land Registration Forms*, p. 151.

'Excepting and reserving'

'Exception' comes from the late Latin *exceptio*: exception, restriction, limitation. 'Reservation' comes from the late Latin *reservatio*, itself derived from the verb *reservare*: to keep back, lay up, reserve, to keep for some purpose. The pairing commonly heralds a qualification to the transfer of a property, intoned as if the words were synonyms. However, the law draws a clear difference between them. An 'exception' is a subtraction from something already in existence, while a 'reservation' is a creation of something new out of the thing granted.[71] For example, a right of drainage through an existing pipe is an exception, while a new right of way over the property sold is a reservation. Indiscriminate pairing of the words sometimes demonstrates the drafter's ignorance of the essential difference between them.

'Use and enjoyment'

The roots of these words lie in Latin (*usus*) and Old French (*enjoier*, to give joy to). In a legal context, however, 'enjoyment' almost always means simply the use of something; it bears no connotation of pleasure, happiness or recreation.[72] So almost always the words are synonyms. Similarly, 'hold and enjoy' are legal synonyms, though 'hold' comes from the Old English *haldan* (and the Old Frisian *halda*, Old Saxon *haldan*, Old High German *haltan*, and Old Norse *halda*).

'Free and uninterrupted'

This phrase is commonly found in the grant of easements, as where the grantee is given 'the free and uninterrupted right of passage and running of gas electricity water soil and other utility services through the grantor's land'.[73]

[71] *Emmet and Farrand on Title*, 19th edn, para 15.027; Butt, *The Standard Contract for the Sale of Land in New South Wales*. 2nd edn (Sydney: LBC Information Services, 1998), para [10.78]. Leading judicial discussions of the distinction include: *Cooper v Stuart* (1889) 14 App Cas 286 at 289–90 (PC); *Attorney-General (New South Wales) v Dickson* [1904] AC 273 at 277 (PC); *Commissioner of State Revenue v Pioneer Concrete (Vic.) Pty Ltd* (2002) 209 CLR 651 at 655–6.

[72] In *Kenny v Preen* [1963] 1 QB 499, Pearson LJ said that 'enjoy' in this context is a translation from the Latin 'fruor', denoting the exercise and use of a right in the sense of having the full benefit of it, rather than deriving pleasure from it.

[73] From Ruoff and West, *Land Registration Forms*, p. 151.

'Free' is from the Old English *freo*. 'Uninterrupted' is a combination of the Old English *un* (a prefix expressing negation), the Latin *inter* (between, among), and the past participle of the Latin *rumpere* to break. In everyday English the two words are not synonyms. When joined in a legal context, however, they are normally used as synonyms.[74] If the services run freely through the pipes, they are uninterrupted; so one word could be discarded. But why use the words at all? 'The right to run services through the pipes and cables' would grant in clear terms what was intended.

'Easements rights and privileges'

This compendious phrase is often found in conveyances of land: the conveyance includes all 'easements rights and privileges'. The root of 'easement' is the Old French *aisement*. 'Right' is Old English, as we have seen. 'Privilege' is from the Latin *privilegium*, itself a compilation of *privus* (private) and *leg*, *lex* (law). An easement is a particular kind of privilege, and a privilege is a particular kind of right. Unless the context requires the three concepts to be kept separate (and such a context would be rare), the widest word – 'right' – would do for all three.

'Agreed and declared'

'Agreed' has its roots in the Latin *ad gratus* (pleasing, welcome) and 'declared' in the Latin *de clarus* (clear). The words are sometimes said to be synonymous and are almost certainly used with that intention.[75] Strictly, however, they are capable of performing different functions. An 'agreement' is an arrangement between people; it arranges, or rearranges, the relationship between them. A 'declaration' is a formal statement about an existing state of affairs; it is not in itself an agreement, though it may amount to a warranty or create an estoppel.

A companion pairing is 'agrees and warrants' – as where a party to a contract 'agrees and warrants' that a state of affairs exists. Here too, 'agrees' or 'warrants' would suffice, unless the drafter deliberately (and dare we say, pedantically) wants to foreshadow an argument that 'warrant' carries the

[74] We say 'normally', because (as we emphasise in Chapter 2) context can be crucial. For example, a lease of a holiday cottage might require the landlord to provide electricity 'free and uninterrupted'; there, it might be argued, 'free' means 'without cost to the tenant'.

[75] For example, Stanley Robinson, *Drafting* (Sydney: Butterworths, 1979), p. 13.

sense of a promise (a 'warranty') breach of which sounds only in damages, as distinct from giving a right of termination. But in all except the most special circumstances, this technical argument would be irrelevant.

'Freed and discharged'

In security documents, a person is said to be 'freed and discharged' of a debt, or land is conveyed 'freed and discharged' of encumbrances. As we have seen, 'freed' comes from the Old English *freo*. 'Discharge' comes from the Old French *descharger*. The word 'charge' in law has several meanings,[76] but '*dis*charge' always carries the sense of unloading, unburdening or freeing. So in these contexts 'freed' and 'discharged' are synonyms.[77]

'Full and sufficient'

This is a common doubling, and appears in the usual form of indemnity: a person gives a 'full and sufficient indemnity' to someone.[78] 'Full' is directly from the Old English. 'Sufficient' comes from the Latin *sub* + *facere* (to do). In a legal context, the two words are commonly used as synonyms, but in fact they do not have the same sense. A 'full' indemnity must be 'sufficient' indemnity, but a sufficient indemnity need not be a full indemnity. Here too, we may ask whether the words are needed at all. An 'indemnity' must be a 'full' indemnity or it is not an indemnity at all. The drafter uses the words 'full and sufficient' out of a sense of caution, to safeguard against all eventualities. They could be left out altogether; nothing would be lost, and clarity and directness might well be gained.

Payment by length

From the earliest times, officials of the English common law courts were paid by fees, the staffing of all the central courts being self-supporting. Many court

[76] For example: a criminal accusation; a judge's instruction to the jury; expenses; an encumbrance on land to secure payment of a debt.

[77] Again, we add a rider about context. Context may indicate that the two words are not used as synonyms. For example, in the context of a court martial, a military prisoner may be 'freed' and 'discharged'; here, the words clearly have different meanings.

[78] For an example, see Ruoff and West, *Land Registration Forms*, p. 160.

officials bought their office, and naturally were keen for their investment to show a return.[79] One way was to charge fees for preparing and filing documents.[80] Litigants were required to pay for office copies, regardless of whether they wanted them and sometimes regardless of whether the documents were ever prepared.

Originally, fees were based on the overall length of documents. This led to various devices to make documents longer: wide margins, greater line-spacing, and, of course, more words. Sir Matthew Hale (1609–76), Chief Justice of the King's Bench, in his influential book *A History of the Common Law in England*,[81] gave his reasons for the development of lengthy pleadings ('as our vast Presses of Parchment for any one Plea do abundantly witness'). One reason was: 'These Please being mostly drawn by Clerks, who are paid for Entries and Copies therof, the larger the Pleadings are, the more Profits come to them, and the dearer the Clerk's Place is, the dearer he makes the Client pay.'

As with court officials, lawyers too came to be paid by length. Longer pleadings meant more income. Occasionally the prolixity frustrated even the judges. In one famous case in 1596, a pleader was fined £10 and sent to Fleet Street prison for drafting pleadings which ran to 120 pages.[82] The judge thought that 16 pages would have sufficed. To add ignominy to penalty, the judge ordered that a hole be cut in the offending document, that the pleader's head be poked through the hole, and that the pleader be paraded around the courts of Westminster 'bareheaded and barefaced', with the document hanging 'written side outward'. More recently, pleadings exceeding 2600 pages were lodged in a South Australian case; they were later reduced to about 360 pages and then reinflated to 500 pages. The judge expressed his distaste in epithets such as 'contradictory', 'embarrassing and oppressive', 'meaningless', and 'so convoluted that [the pleadings are] well nigh impossible . . . to comprehend'.[83]

[79] Holdsworth, *History of English Law* (3rd edn, 1927), vol. 1, pp. 255, 257.

[80] Mellinkoff, *Language of the Law*, p. 188.

[81] First published posthumously in 1713. The quotations are from the 1971 edition by C. M. Gray, University of Chicago Press, pp. 111, 112.

[82] *Mylward v Weldon* (1596) Tothill 102; 21 ER 136. A fuller report appears in Spence's *Equitable Jurisdiction* (1846), pp. 376–377.

[83] *South Australia v Peat Marwick Mitchell & Co.* (Supreme Court of South Australia, Olsson J, 15 May 1997). Aspects of the case are reported at (1997) 24 ACSR 231.

Prolixity also became endemic in other kinds of legal documents, such as contracts and deeds. One easy way for a lawyer to increase the length of a document was by adding 'recitals'. Typically heralded by 'whereas', recitals introduced the operative part of the document by stating at considerable length the background to the transaction. While occasionally performing the useful function of putting the transaction into context – a function they can still serve today, as we see in Chapter 6 – more often than not they were superfluous, adding length without legal purpose.[84]

Attempts to curb excessive verbiage in legal documents failed. Early in the nineteenth century, in a submission to the Real Property Commissioners, one writer suggested that deeds could be reduced to less than a quarter of their customary length, and pointed to payment by length as the main obstacle to reform.[85] In 1845, Joshua Williams wrote in his *Principles of the Law of Real Property*:

> The payment to a solicitor for drawing a deed is fixed at 1s. for every seventy-two words, denominated a *folio*; and the fees of counsel, though paid in guineas, average about the same. The consequences of this false economy on the part of the public has been that certain well known and long established lengthy forms, full of synonyms and expletives, are current among lawyers as *common forms*, and by the aid of these, ideas are diluted to the proper remunerating strength; not that a lawyer actually inserts nonsense simply for the sake of increasing his fee; but words, sometimes unnecessary in any case, sometimes only in the particular case in which he is engaged, are suffered to remain, sanctioned by the authority of time and usage. The proper amount of verbiage to a common form is well established and understood, and whilst any attempt to exceed it is looked on as disgraceful, it is never likely to be materially diminished till a change is made in the scale of payment.[86]

In 1844, the journal of the reforming Law Amendment Society, *The Law Review*, published an article promoting standard forms which would have

[84] Mellinkoff, *Language of the Law*, p. 190.

[85] Alexander Hordern in a letter to Edward J. Littleton MP, reported in *Real Property Commissioners First Report* (1829): House of Commons Sessional Papers (HCSP) 1829, vol. X, at p. 446; see also at p. 586 (T. J. Hogg Esq.). See also *Report from the Select Committee on Land Titles and Transfer* (1879): HCSP 1878–79, vol. 11, at p. 7.

[86] Joshua Williams, *Principles of the Law of Real Property* (London: S. Sweet, 1845), p. 147.

effectively thwarted the practice of payment by length.[87] The president of the Society was the radical Lord Brougham. The next year, Brougham introduced into Parliament the *Conveyancing Act* 1845 and the *Leases Act* 1845, both of which provided short forms of standard covenants. The Acts also provided that the length of a deed was to be irrelevant on taxation of costs. Section 3 of the *Leases Act* (which was not repealed until 1989)[88] read:

> That in taxing any Bill for preparing and executing any Deed under this Act it shall be lawful for the Taxing Officer and he is hereby required, in estimating the proper Sum to be charged for such Transaction, to consider, not the Length of such Deed, but only the Skill and Labour employed, and Responsibility incurred, in the Preparation thereof.

Shortly afterwards, in an article entitled 'The Conveyancing Acts of 1845', *The Law Review* expressed its opinion that the lawyer's client

> will soon express himself in favour of the new Acts. The law will always be stronger than the lawyer. There is no class of persons who will excite so little sympathy as a body of lawyers resisting a change attempted to be made in favour of the public, and possibly affecting the profits of the profession. Books will be written (we already perceive symptoms of them) to prove that it is unsafe and unwise to rely on the new plans; they will, nevertheless, be acted on. Learned conveyancers under the bar, and still more learned conveyancers at the bar, will argue, sneer, contemn, denounce, rail, ridicule – it will all be in vain.[89]

This optimism proved misplaced. The legal profession, prompted chiefly by a fear that fees would fall, refused to use the short forms supplied by the 1845 Acts.[90] In a first response to the passing of the Acts, *The Legal Observer* was hostile on this account.[91] Brougham made several attempts to overcome the anxiety about fees.[92] Others made similar attempts. In a paper to the

[87] 'Recent Alterations in Conveyancing Forms' (1844) 1 *Law Review*, p. 158. See also another anonymous article, 'Conveyancing, its Early History and Present State' (1845) 1 *Law Review*, p. 382.
[88] *Statute Law (Repeals) Act* 1989.
[89] (1845) 3 *Law Review*, p. 177.
[90] M. J. Russell, 'Brevity v Verbosity' (1962) 26 Conv (NS) 45 at 54.
[91] (1845) 30 *Legal Observer*, p. 369, anonymous article 'Conveyancing Reform and Professional Remuneration'.
[92] See Russell, 'Brevity v Verbosity', p. 54.

Juridical Society in 1862, Joshua Williams expressed himself in his usual forthright way:

> But to tell a man that the more he aims at conciseness, the worse he shall be paid; that the more copies and abstracts he gets done by the law-stationer, the more prosperous he shall be; that it matters not what is in a letter, so long as he writes it; is surely not the way to encourage a genuine industry. And it is curious to see how much the minds of some clerks and others, who have not enjoyed the benefits of a liberal education, are warped by this state of things. I have before now met with some, who seemed to think that their sole duty to their principals consisted, first in expanding every idea into the largest possible number of words, and secondly in making as many deeds as possible out of every transaction.[93]

In 1878–79 a parliamentary select committee investigating registration of deeds and titles looked also at payment by length.[94] By this time it was generally accepted that legal documents had become far too convoluted. Several witnesses urged that a scale based on the value of the transaction would help make documents shorter.[95] Nehemiah Learoyd was frank with the select committee when asked why Brougham's Acts had fallen on stony ground:

> hitherto we have been paid according to the length of the instrument, and there has been no mode of payment which the law has recognised which allows for the responsibilities of our work; so that if I draw a deed which is 60 folios in length, a folio being 72 words, I am paid for it and it probably compensates me for my labour; but if I can find a mode of putting it into a dozen lines, I am entitled to only a few shillings as the remuneration for the transaction, though my responsibilities may be as many thousands of pounds.[96]

The select committee recommended abolishing payment by length and substituting scales of charges based on value ('ad valorem').[97] Its

[93] *On the True Remedies for the Evils which affect the Transfer of Land* (London: S. Sweet, 1862), p. 13.
[94] *Report from the Select Committee on Land Titles and Transfer* (1878, 1879): HCSP 1878, vol. 15, p. 467; 1878–79, vol. 11, p. 1.
[95] Ibid. (1879): HCSP 1878–79, vol. 11, pp. 7, 8.
[96] Ibid. (1878): HCSP 1878, vol. 15, p. 559.
[97] Ibid. (1879): HCSP 1878–79, vol. 11, p. 13.

recommendation was accepted, and for the next 90 years scale fees held sway. The 1883 Remuneration Order[98] introducing them was made under the *Solicitors' Remuneration Act* 1881, which received royal assent on the same day as the *Conveyancing Act* 1881. That Act contained effective and widespread provisions designed to shorten deeds. It was a major step forward. The worst excesses of noun upon noun, verb upon verb, and qualification upon qualification, were never to be seen again.

However, far from abandoning the idea of payment by length, the 1883 Remuneration Order preserved it by allowing solicitors to elect to charge 'according to the present system as altered by Schedule II hereto'.[99] Many of the fees in that schedule were set according to the number of words (expressed as 'folios'), a direct financial inducement to prolixity. This option of payment by length persisted in England until the Solicitors' Remuneration Order of 1953[100] decreed for the first time that one of seven factors in deciding a fair and reasonable payment should be 'the number and importance of the documents prepared or perused, without regard to length'.

Payment by time

Payment by time spent on a task is a standard way of assessing legal fees in many countries. In England, for example, solicitors' fees for 'non-contentious business' (that is, work not in connection with litigation) are governed by the Solicitors' (Non-Contentious Business) Remuneration Order 1994. This Order lists a number of factors in assessing fees:

> A solicitor's costs shall be such sum as may be fair and reasonable to both solicitor and entitled person having regard to all the circumstances of the case and in particular to:–
>
> (a) the complexity of the matter or the difficulty or novelty of the questions raised;

[98] *Solicitors' Remuneration Order* 1883 (SR & O Rev 1948, xxi, p. 205).

[99] Ibid., para 6. The *Solicitors' Remuneration Order* 1953 (SI 1953 No. 117) substituted 'in accordance with' for 'according to the present system as altered by', and substituted a new Schedule II.

[100] SI 1953 No. 117, para 6.

(b) the skill, labour, specialised knowledge and responsibility involved;
(c) the time spent on the business;
(d) the number and importance of the documents prepared or perused, without regard to length; . . .

Para (c) speaks of 'time spent'. Similar wording appeared in the former Order, the Solicitors' Remuneration Order 1972 (which in turn drew on terminology in the Solicitors' Remuneration Order 1953). Thus, where time spent is relevant, the longer the time, the higher the fee – a strong inducement to expand the time taken on a task. Of course, there is no direct and automatic relationship between the time spent and the size of the bill; but equally, there is no incentive to work quickly or to prepare short documents. Indeed, ever since the 1972 Order the Law Society of England and Wales has been at pains to emphasise the importance for solicitors to keep records of the time taken for a task.[101] The result has been an obsession with time-recording and hourly charging rates, particularly in larger law firms. Of the factors listed in the Remuneration Order, time spent has become dominant. And so payment by time – cousin to payment by length – continues to bedevil the practice of law.[102]

The litigious environment

In this chapter we have sought to highlight some of the reasons why lawyers are reluctant to depart from the traditional style of legal drafting. Before leaving the topic we should mention one more: the litigious environment in which lawyers work. This environment plays a large role in perpetuating a settled style. Lawyers draft documents against an adversarial background. There is always the risk that documents will come under judicial scrutiny. Even in the process of drafting, the lawyer cannot ignore the potential effect of the words on a judge.

Judges have evolved a complex set of principles to help clarify ambiguity and resolve uncertainty in legal documents. For some lawyers, these

[101] See The Law Society's booklet, *The Expense of Time* (first published in 1972; several editions since).
[102] For an incisive discussion of some of the issues, see L. Fisher, 'The crude yardstick of the billable hour' (1996) 70 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 160.

principles of interpretation encourage a defensive style: drafters attempt to anticipate them so as to avoid their application. The result is drafting that is reactive, not proactive – drafting that harks back to precedent and tradition, with little or no concern for clarity, brevity, or ease of comprehension.

As we show in the next chapter, however, the principles of interpretation need not stand in the way of a crisp, modern style.

Chapter Two

HOW LEGAL DOCUMENTS ARE INTERPRETED

Overview

This chapter examines the ways in which legal documents are interpreted. After reviewing some judicial comments on the parlous state of traditional legal drafting, we discuss the complex series of principles – sometimes overlapping, sometimes conflicting – which courts have evolved to help clarify meaning in legal documents. In the process, we consider whether those who draft legal documents can or ought to draft so as to anticipate the application of these principles. We then consider the all-important role of context in interpreting legal documents.

We conclude the chapter by pointing out the dangers of a too-strict reliance on precedent when interpreting legal documents. A paramount principle emerges from the case law: decisions on the meaning of particular words or phrases in one document provide little or no guidance to their meaning in another.[1] Each document is unique. To interpret it, one single question should be asked: what did these parties mean by these words in this context?

[1] See, for example, *Sefton v Tophams Ltd* [1967] AC 50 at 84 (Lord Wilberforce); *Re Donald* [1947] 1 All ER 764 at 766 (Lord Greene MR); *Housden v Marshall* [1959] 1 WLR 1 at 5 (Harman J); *Aspden v Seddon* (1874) 10 Ch App 394 at 397 (Jessel MR).

What judges have said about traditional legal drafting

Judges have not been reluctant to criticise poorly-drafted documents. Epithets have included 'botched', 'half-baked', 'cobbled-together', 'doubtful', 'tortuous', 'absurd', 'archaic', 'incomprehensible legal gobbledegook', and 'singularly inelegant'.[2] We will look at some examples from recent decades.

The botched clause[3]

A 1929 settlement gave power to pay income to:

> any person or persons in whose house or apartments or in whose company or under whose care and control or by or with whom the said [Mr] Gulbenkian may from time to time be employed or residing.

As Lord Reid pointed out in the House of Lords,[4] this clause did not make sense as it stood. One of the permutations was 'by whom [Mr] Gulbenkian is residing'. Lord Reid was surprised to learn that such a 'botched clause' had somehow found its way into a standard book of legal precedents. Nevertheless, he said that clients ought not to be penalised for their lawyer's slovenly drafting; and that since no rational person would insert such a provision, it might be necessary to relax the stricter interpretation standards of an earlier era, to see whether a reasonably clear intention lay behind the words.

The half-baked clause[5]

A developer contracted with landowners to develop the landowners' site in return for a 99-year lease of the site. Clause 4 of the agreement provided:

> if for any reason due to the wilful default of the tenant [that is, the developer] the development shall remain uncompleted on 29th September 1983 the lease shall forthwith be granted and completed.

By 1984 the development had not even started. So, in October 1984, the landowners treated the agreement as repudiated. The developer argued that, even if it was in wilful default, it was entitled to the lease under clause 4. Not

[2] 'Doubtful': *Overseas Union Insurance Ltd v AA Mutual International Insurance Co. Ltd* [1988] 2 Lloyd's Rep 63 at 69 (Evans J). The citations for other epithets are given below.
[3] *Re Gulbenkian's Settlement* [1970] AC 508 at 517 (Lord Reid).
[4] At 507.
[5] *Alghussein Establishment v Eton College* [1988] 1 WLR 587.

surprisingly, the Court of Appeal rejected the developer's argument. In the court's view, clause 4 was part of a commercial agreement and the parties must have intended to make a sensible commercial arrangement (discussed further at p. 62)). Hence, the court implied a condition precluding the developer from enforcing the agreement if it was in wilful default. Both sides conceded that clause 4 was inept. Dillon LJ thought it 'half-baked'.[6]

The cobbled-together insurance policy[7]

The mortgagee of a ship took out an insurance policy to protect itself against loss if the ship was damaged. The policy consisted of two parts. One part was a standard printed form ('the SG form'), which, although 'dignified'[8] by parliamentary inclusion as a schedule to an Act of 1906, had been described as long ago as 1791 as 'absurd and incoherent'.[9] The other part of the policy was a set of eight typed conditions known as 'Mortgagee's Interest Clause 1'. These conditions were a translation from Swedish; they had originated in Sweden and had later been adopted in English marine insurance policies. The court was urged to give certain words in these conditions their plain and ordinary meaning. Lloyd LJ said that he did not know whether the words had a plain and ordinary meaning in Swedish, but he was certain they had no plain and ordinary meaning in English. The task of construing the contract as a whole against the commercial background was 'not made easy' when a medieval English form was combined with a translation from modern Swedish. The courts had been protesting for years about the drafting of marine insurance contracts, and Lloyd LJ hoped that the SG form would never again be used in combination with 'Mortgagee's Interest Clause 1' without at least some explanation on how they were to be read together. Purchas LJ hoped that in future marine insurance policies would be properly drawn and designed for the specific purpose involved, rather than 'cobbled together' by joining inconsistent sets of contractual terms taken from policies which were alien both to the market and to the purposes for which they were produced.

[6] A comment which Lord Jauncey of Tullichettle on appeal thought not to be 'overstated': [1988] 1 WLR 587 at 594.

[7] *The Alexion Hope* [1988] 1 Lloyd's Rep 311 at 320, CA (Purchas LJ).

[8] To adopt the description of Purchas LJ, ibid. at 320.

[9] See *Brough v Whitmore* (1791) 4 Term Rep 206 at 210; 100 ER 976 at 978.

The disastrous letter[10]

A firm of solicitors wrote a letter of advice to their client Socpen, who were landlords of offices in London. The lease contained a break clause, allowing either the landlord or the tenant to cancel the lease before it had run its full term. The letter concerned the effect of the break clause, and was addressed to Socpen's secretary. The secretary was not a lawyer and was inexperienced in property management. At issue in the High Court was the meaning of the letter.

The Times described the letter as 'obscure'.[11] But on closer examination, the letter was not so much obscure as wrong. The lease gave either party the right to cancel, whereas the letter indicated that only the tenant had that right. Though hardly a model of clarity, the letter was not hopelessly obscure. Worse examples can be found. Nevertheless, the judge said that part of the letter was phrased in 'very obscure English' and that it had 'anaesthetized [the secretary] into an oblivion' over the effect of the break clause. In the judge's view, the result of the letter from the landlord's point of view was 'disastrous'. The solicitors were negligent in failing properly to advise the landlord that it could have used the break clause to bring the lease to an early end. As a result of that negligence, the landlord had lost the right to relet the offices at a higher rent. The judge ordered the solicitors to pay the shortfall, amounting to £95,000.

The notices that defied understanding[12]

Under United States legislation, elderly people could claim reimbursement from medical insurers for certain medical expenses. The insurer could reduce the claim on certain grounds. The claimant could then ask the insurer to review its decision; and after the review, the insurer was required to send a notice telling the beneficiary of the basis of its decision. The beneficiary then could appeal against the review. As a practical matter, in order to decide whether to appeal, the beneficiary had to be able to assess two points: whether the insurer had properly classified the medical service that had been provided; and whether the insurer had properly computed the reasonable

[10] *Socpen Trustees Limited v Wood Nash & Winters*, Jupp J, Queen's Bench Division, 6 October 1983. The case is unreported.
[11] 'Obscure Legal Advice Cost Firm £90,000', *Times*, 7 October 1983, p. 5.
[12] *David v Heckler* 591 F Supp 1033 (1984).

charge for that service. The case arose because the insurer sent (to hundreds of thousands of claimants) a form of notice which, the court ruled, was unintelligible to the average beneficiary. According to the evidence, about 48 per cent of elderly people in New York had an eighth-grade education or less; yet to understand the notice required a sixteenth-grade education. The notices

> defy understanding by the general populace. They are filled with confusing cross-references to 'control numbers' and are composed of paragraphs that seem strung together randomly. Explanations are couched in technical jargon. The words and phrases 'approved charges', 'customary charges', 'prevailing charges', 'locality', 'economic index' and 'physicians' old and new profile', which are the substance of the [notice], are specialized Medicare vocabulary. To a layman unfamiliar with Medicare regulations, this language has no real meaning . . .
>
> The language used is bureaucratic gobbledegook, jargon, double talk, a form of officialese, federalese and insurancese, and doublespeak. It does not qualify as English.[13]

The court held that the notices were so complex that the beneficiaries had been denied due process.

The tortuous rent review[14]

Surveyors negotiated a formula for rent reviews in a proposed lease, and set out that formula (in words) in correspondence. Solicitors then drew up an agreement to grant the lease. In accordance with standard practice, they attached to the agreement a draft form of the proposed lease, containing the solicitors' attempt (also in words) to embody the surveyors' formula. The language of this attempt Hoffmann J characterised as 'tortuous'. In fact, not only was it tortuous: it was wrong, for the solicitors' formula differed from the surveyors' formula. However, the solicitors' language was so complex that no-one noticed the difference. When the actual lease was granted some time later, it incorporated the surveyors' formula; strictly, it should have incorporated the formula in the draft lease (the solicitors' formula).

[13] Ibid., pp. 1037, 1043.

[14] *London Regional Transport v Wimpey Group Services Ltd* (1986) 280 EG 898 (Hoffmann J).

Only on the first rent review did anyone notice that the two formulas differed. Simpler language should have avoided the discrepancy. Indeed, Hoffmann J suggested that the mistake would not have occurred if the formula had been expressed algebraically instead of verbally. The case showed, he said, 'that a very modest degree of numeracy can save a great deal of money'.[15]

The absurd rent review[16]

A landlord and a tenant signed a lease containing a rent review clause. The clause was drafted so obscurely that neither party seemed to notice its true effect. The clause allowed the landlord a consumer price index (CPI) increase in rent each two years. However, as drafted, the CPI-increase provision incorporated an enormous multiplying factor. Specifically, each two years the rent was to be increased not merely by the CPI increase since the previous review, but by the CPI increase since the start of the lease. This compounded the effect of CPI increases alarmingly – so much so that on one calculation, rent that stood at about $70,000 in 1985 would increase to about $40 million in 1999 – and this for relatively small premises in an Australian country town. The New South Wales Court of Appeal held that a literal application of the clause was not merely unreasonable but 'absurd'.

Had the landlord remained the owner of the land, the tenant could have sought to have the lease rectified. But the landlord had sold the land to a purchaser, who had become registered; and under the New South Wales land registration system, the tenant was immune from a rectification order. Luckily for the tenant, the Court of Appeal held that the absurdity brought into play the principle that courts are able to avoid absurdity by judicially supplying or omitting words – in this case, by supplying words. The court inserted words into the CPI clause to limit the increase each two years to the increase since the date of the previous rent review, rather than since the start of the lease. This was a satisfactory result for the tenant; but of course clear drafting in the first place would have avoided the need for litigation.[17]

[15] Ibid. at 900.

[16] *Westpac Banking Corp v Tanzone Pty Ltd* (2000) 9 BPR 17,521.

[17] For a similar trap in an English rent review clause, see P. Kenny, 'Have you ever been "Blue Dolphined"?' [2005] Conv 279.

The archaic bond[18]

Head contractors of a leisure complex required subcontractors to provide a performance bond for 10 per cent of the value of the subcontract. This could have been achieved by a relatively simple document, but the document which the parties signed was lengthy and complex, drafted in traditional style. Its complexity was compounded by an eccentric order of provisions. The first part acknowledged that the subcontractors and the surety were bound to the head contractors in the specified sum. Then followed a testimonium stating that the parties had sealed the document. This was followed by recitals, which in turn were followed by the condition upon which the bond was given, namely, that the obligation would be 'null and void' if the subcontractors complied with their contract or if the surety paid damages for breach up to the specified sum. In the Court of Appeal, Beldham LJ (echoing comments of Saville LJ) described the wording of the bond as 'archaic, difficult to interpret and ill-suited to its obvious commercial purpose'.[19] When the case reached the House of Lords, Lord Jauncey of Tullichettle said he found 'great difficulty in understanding the desire of commercial men to embody so simple an obligation in a document which is quite unnecessarily lengthy, which obfuscates its true purpose and which is likely to give rise to unnecessary argument and litigation as to its meaning'.[20] (To interpolate our own view here: in our experience, commercial people do not generally desire to express themselves in unnecessarily complex ways. Complexity intrudes because lawyers draft the documents – even if the clients later adopt the documents. Lord Atkin once said that old-fashioned language is not the fault of lawyers;[21] but that view does not stand close scrutiny.)

The gobbledegook guarantee[22]

Two bank customers signed a bank's standard form of guarantee. The customers thought they were signing a guarantee limited to $10,000, but in fact the guarantee was for an unlimited amount. The judge described the

[18] *Trafalgar House Construction (Regions) Ltd v General Surety & Guarantee Co. Ltd* [1995] 3 WLR 204, HL.
[19] (1994) 10 Const LR 240. [20] [1996] AC 199 at 209.
[21] *Trade Indemnity Co. Ltd v Workington Harbour and Dock Board* [1937] AC 1 at 17.
[22] *Houlahan v Australian and New Zealand Banking Group Ltd* (1992) 110 FLR 259.

clause which dealt with the extent of the guarantee as 'a single sentence of 57 lines in length couched in incomprehensible legal gobbledegook'.[23] It was so complex that the judge thought that neither the customers, nor the two bank officials who had been present when the customers signed, had any real understanding of the nature and effect of the clause.[24] (Nor, it seems, did the bank's counsel who argued the case in court.[25]) The customers had not read the document before signing it, but 'they would have been little wiser had they attempted the exercise'.[26] The judge held that the customers were bound only to the extent of $10,000. Perhaps chastened by this experience, the bank later stopped using the form of guarantee and replaced it with a plain English redraft.[27]

The same bank was also criticised over its standard-form mortgage. A judge described the 'all moneys' clause (which exceeded 375 words) in the mortgage as 'characterised by tangled syntax, lengthy, unparagraphed expression and dense, legal terminology, in the least plain of English . . . embodied in tiny print, with minimum punctuation, on a printed form required by the Bank on a take it or leave it basis'. He did not go so far as to say that the bank was obliged to provide a plain English mortgage; but he did say that the bank 'had no reason to believe that reading [the mortgage] would have enlightened' the mortgagors.[28]

The singularly inelegant document[29]

A gun club signed a document by which it acknowledged that it occupied government land in Sydney for use as a rifle range. When the government tried to terminate the occupation, the club sought an order that the document gave it the right to remain for as long as it wished to use the land as a

[23] Ibid. at 263. The law report omits the full text of the clause, but in fact it contained 1193 words. On average, each clause in the document contained 330 words.

[24] Ibid. at 262–3. To similar effect are the comments of Young J in the New South Wales Supreme Court, that a chattel lease transaction 'was written in such legalese that not even the New South Wales office manager of the [lessor] realised what it meant': *Goldsbrough v Ford Credit Australia Ltd* [1989] ASC 58,583 at 58,590.

[25] (1992) 110 FLR 259 at 263. [26] Ibid.

[27] For a comparison of the before-and-after versions of the guarantee, see E. Tanner, 'The Comprehensibility of Legal Language: Is Plain English the Solution?' (2000) 9 *Griffith Law Review*, p. 62.

[28] *Karam v Australia & New Zealand Banking Group Ltd* [2001] NSWSC 709 at [215].

[29] *NSW Rifle Association v Commonwealth of Australia*, unreported, New South Wales Court of Appeal, 15 August 1997, Powell JA.

rifle range. The New South Wales Court of Appeal held that the club had no right to remain. Two of the three members of the court held that the document was not contractual in nature. Powell JA described the document as 'singularly inelegant', reminiscent of the efforts of the 'blundering attorney's clerk' and revealing 'sloppy draftsmanship and confusion of thought'.[30] The Australian High Court later refused leave to appeal from this decision, on the ground that the documents were 'so inelegantly drawn, and their intention to operate contractually [was] so problematic' that the case was not a suitable vehicle for reconsidering the law regarding intention to enter into contractual relations.[31]

The principles of legal interpretation

From judicial condemnation of poor drafting, we now turn to consider the principles which courts have evolved to help interpret documents that come before them. In truth, these 'principles' of interpretation are merely guidelines. They are no more than presumptions, which may be weak or strong depending on circumstances. Sometimes they are called 'rules' – 'rules of interpretation' or 'rules of construction' – but in fact they are all rebuttable.

These principles of interpretation are well-known to lawyers, and form part of their linguistic consciousness. So it might be thought that the principles have a direct effect on the way legal documents are written. In reality, however, lawyers probably pay little heed to the principles of interpretation when they draft documents. Nor should they. Documents should be drafted with sufficient clarity to render unnecessary any recourse to rules of

[30] The same judge some years earlier had castigated a partnership agreement as 'hardly a shining example of the draftsman's art – indeed, it is not going too far to describe it as exuding the glutinous aroma of pastepot and scissors': *Van der Waal v Goodenough* [1983] 1 NSWLR 81 at 87–8. The judge returned to this simile, not only in *New South Wales Rifle Association v Commonwealth*, but also in *New South Wales Rugby League Ltd v Australian Rugby Football League Ltd* (1999) 30 ASCR 354 at 371. The allusion to the 'blundering attorney's clerk' appears to be a reference to Bacon VC's use of that phrase in *Re Redfern* (1877) 6 Ch D 133 at 138, repeated by Joyce J in *Re Dayrell* [1904] 2 Ch 496 at 499.

[31] (1998) 72 ALJR 713 at 714.

construction on points of language.[32] The late Reed Dickerson, a leading US exponent of legal drafting, accurately described the reality:

> For the draftsman, many rules of interpretation are simply irrelevant. These are the rules by which courts resolve inconsistencies and contradictions or supply omissions that cannot be dealt with by applying the ordinary principles of meaning. They are irrelevant because the draftsman who tries to write a healthy instrument does not and should not pay attention to the principles that the court will apply if he fails. He simply does his best, leaving it to the courts to accomplish what he did not. The draftsman who adverts to what the courts will do in such cases is likely to relax his efforts, thus passing the drafting buck to the courts and forcing them to deal with an inferior instrument.[33]

Internal and external factors

The interpretation of legal documents has two aspects: internal and external. The internal aspect looks only at the language of the document; in contrast, the external aspect looks beyond the document for evidence of its meaning and legal effect.

The internal aspect is the dominant one. The internal canons of interpretation apply unless they are displaced, and a party who seeks to displace them bears the burden of proof.[34] Yet a moment's thought will bring home the obvious point that a document can never be complete in itself. A number of external factors are potentially relevant. They include: the background against which the document was prepared; the factual matrix from which it sprang;[35] the circumstances of, and the relationship of, the parties; the terms

[32] Piesse, *Elements of Drafting*, 10th edn, ed. J. K. Aitken and Peter Butt (Sydney: Lawbook Co., 2004), p. v. See also Robert C. Dick, *Legal Drafting*, 3rd edn (Toronto: Carswell, 1995), p. 17: 'A drafter should not use the rules of interpretation as crutches but should be capable of drafting without having to rely on or resolve difficulties in meaning through the use of the rules.' For a different view, see Charles Bennett, *Drafting Residential Leases*, 2nd edn (London: Longman, 1990), p. 8.

[33] Reed Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, 2nd edn (Boston: Little, Brown & Co., 1986), p. 47.

[34] See *Odgers' Construction of Deeds and Statutes*, 5th edn, ed. G. Dworkin (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1967), p. 28; Sir Roland Burrows, *Interpretation of Documents*, 2nd edn (London: 1946), p. 94.

[35] The term 'factual matrix', now common, appears to have been first used in *Rearden Smith Line Ltd v Yngvar Hansen-Tangen ('The Diana Prosperity')* [1976] 1 WLR 989 at 997 (Lord Wilberforce), HL.

which (though physically absent from the document) the courts will imply if necessary; the general law; and the purpose which the document or a part of it was designed to achieve. All these have a powerful but unspoken effect on a document's operation, and neither the parties nor the courts ignore them.[36]

Particularly relevant are the circumstances in which the courts will imply terms into contracts. These deserve our attention before we turn to the 'principles' of interpretation themselves.

Implication of terms

Courts imply terms into contracts on a number of grounds. Some terms are required by statute; others are required by the common law.

To deal first with implication by statute: an example is the implication of merchantable quality under sale of goods legislation.[37] Another is the implication of habitable quality under residential tenancy legislation.[38] The implied terms give a contract a content over and above its printed terms.

As to implication at common law: courts imply terms into contracts on grounds of custom or usage, whether in the trade generally or merely between the particular parties.[39] They also imply terms on the basis of business efficacy.[40] To be implied on the grounds of business efficacy, a term must satisfy each of the following conditions:

(1) it must be reasonable and equitable;
(2) it must be necessary to give business efficacy to the contract (so that no term is implied if the contract is effective without it);
(3) it must be so obvious that 'it goes without saying';

[36] Compare *Schuler AG v Wickman Machine Tool Sales Ltd* [1974] AC 235, in which the House of Lords held that in general the parties' subsequent actions are not relevant in construing the document.

[37] For a detailed discussion, see Roy Goode, *Commercial Law*, 2nd edn (London: Penguin Books, 1995), ch. 11.

[38] For examples in England and Wales, see *Landlord and Tenant Act* 1985, ss 8, 11. For examples in Australia, see *Residential Tenancies Act* 1987 (NSW), ss 25, 26.

[39] See, for example, *Peter Darlington Partners Ltd v Gosho Co. Ltd* [1964] 1 Lloyd's Rep 149: the rule that the supplier must supply the quantity and quality agreed was displaced by evidence of trade usage permitting a limited shortfall in the purity of seed against an appropriate reduction in the price.

[40] *The Moorcock* (1889) 14 PD 54, CA: in a contract for the use of a jetty by a ship, there was to be implied a term that the jetty owner would pay for any damage which the ship might suffer by settling on the river bed.

(4) it must be capable of clear expression;
(5) it must not contradict any express term of the contract.[41]

The courts also imply into a contract a term that the parties will co-operate in doing whatever is reasonable to ensure performance of the contract.[42]

Sometimes, an inference from the written language of the agreement is so obvious that it needs no stating. Thus, *Gardner v Coutts & Co.* held that the grant of a right of first refusal to A precluded the grantor not only from selling the property without first offering it to A, but also from making a gift of the property without first offering it to A.[43]

Occasionally, courts imply terms that are really rules of law. An example is the principle that a professional person must act with reasonable care and skill. Similarly, courts impose constructive trusts to satisfy the demands of justice and good conscience, without necessary reference to any express intention of the parties.[44] Other doctrines, too, are invoked to alter the relationship between the parties, regardless of the express words the parties may have used to describe their relationship. Examples are estoppel, rescission, restitution and rectification. Indeed, judges sometimes disregard even the clear words of a document in order to reach a desired result.[45]

One area where the courts have intervened readily, in apparent disregard of the terms of the document, is landlord and tenant. Two examples come easily to mind. One is the principle, well-established in England, that there can be no contracting out of the Rent Acts.[46] The other, well-established in many countries, is the principle that the parties may be found to have entered into a 'lease' despite deliberately casting their agreement in the form of a 'licence', giving the 'tenant' greater rights than a mere 'licensee' would

[41] *BP Refinery (Westernport) Pty Ltd v Shire of Hastings* (1977) 180 CLR 266 at 282–3, PC; *Codelfa Construction Pty Ltd v State Rail Authority of New South Wales* (1982) 149 CLR 337 at 347.

[42] *Mackay v Dick* (1881) 6 App Cas 251; *Butt v McDonald* (1896) 7 QLJ 68.

[43] [1967] 3 All ER 1064 (Cross J).

[44] See *Carl Zeiss Stiftung v Herbert Smith & Co. (No. 2)* [1969] 2 Ch 276 at 301 (Edmund Davies LJ); *Baumgartner v Baumgartner* (1987) 164 CLR 137; *Bahr v Nicolay (No. 2)* (1988) 164 CLR 604.

[45] For example, *Bishop v Bonham* [1988] 1 WLR 742, where the Court of Appeal held that a mortgagee's court-imposed duty to obtain a proper price on sale overrode the mortgagee's express power to sell 'as [the mortgagee] may think fit' and with exemption from 'liability for any loss howsoever arising'.

[46] See *Barton v Fincham* [1921] 2 KB 291, CA; *Appleton v Aspin* [1988] 1 WLR 410, CA.

possess. An illustration is *Street v Mountford*.[47] There, a landowner had carefully crafted a written agreement in the form of a licence, so as to avoid all semblance of a lease. Headed 'licence agreement', it scrupulously avoided words like 'landlord', 'tenant', or 'rent' – words which might suggest a lease. Further, above the occupant's signature appeared these printed words: 'I understand and accept that a licence in the above form does not and is not intended to give me a tenancy . . .' Despite all this, the House of Lords held that the agreement created a tenancy. The deliberate language and form of 'licence' was not conclusive of the legal relationship the parties had created. Similar decisions have been reached in other cases, both in England and elsewhere.[48]

In all these cases, the implication affects the interpretation of the contract, because it adds to the contract a provision that is not evident merely from reading the document itself.

Document must be read as a whole

Turning now to the internal principles of interpretation: the first to be considered holds that the document (or series of documents, if the transaction is to be carried out by a series) should be construed as a whole. As Viscount Symonds said in *Attorney General v Prince Ernest Augustus of Hanover*, 'no one should profess to understand any part of a statute or of any other document before he has read the whole of it. Until he has done so, he is not entitled to say that it or any part of it is clear and unambiguous.'[49]

[47] [1985] AC 809. This decision quickly produced a substantial literature: see, for example, Street, 'Coach and Horse Trip Cancelled? Rent Act Avoidance after Street v Mountford' [1985] Conv 328; Bridge, 'Street v Mountford – No Hiding Place?' [1986] Conv 344; Clarke, 'Street v Mountford: The Question of Intent – A view from Down Under' [1986] Conv 39; Wallace, 'The Legacy of Street v Mountford' (1990) 41 *Northern Ireland Law Quarterly*, p. 143. It continues to do so: see R. Pawlowski, 'Occupational Rights in Leasehold Law: Time for Rationalisation?' [2002] Conv 550 at 550; S. Bright, 'Leases, Exclusive Possession and Estates' (2000) 116 *Law Quarterly Review*, p. 7; M. Dixon, 'The Non-proprietary Lease: The Rise of the Feudal Phoenix' (2000) 59 *Cambridge Law Journal*, p. 25.

[48] *AG Securities v Vaughan* [1990] 1 AC 417; *Bruton v London & Quadrant Housing Trust* [2000] 1 AC 406; *Kay v Lambeth London Borough Council* [2004] 2 WLR 1396; *London Borough of Islington v Green* [2005] EWCA Civ 56. Australian examples are *Radaich v Smith* (1959) 101 CLR 209 (predating *Street v Mountford*); *Lewis v Bell* (1985) 1 NSWLR 731 (NSW CA); *KJRR Pty Ltd v Commissioner of State Revenue* (1999) 99 ATC 4335 (Vic CA).

[49] [1957] AC 436 at 463, HL. Where a transaction is to be carried out by a series of documents, Australian and United States courts will construe the documents as if they were a single document, even though the parties to the documents are different (as in the case of a bank

This principle is reasonably well-known to lawyers. Yet they frequently disregard it by inserting copious cross-references, which the principle renders strictly superfluous. When done carefully and sparingly, cross-referencing can be useful. But when overdone it can make a document more difficult to read, by forcing the reader to jump backwards and forwards, interrupting the flow of ideas. Also, of course, it adds to the length of the document.

Eiusdem generis

Of all the rules of construction, this is probably the best known to the competent drafter. It can be expressed in this way: where a list of two or more items belonging to the same 'genus' (that is, group or class) is followed by general words, the general words are construed as confined to the same class. To illustrate: in *Williams v Williams*[50] the Court of Appeal was asked whether bundles of unsorted cheques and paying-in slips were included within the description 'ledgers, day books, cash books, account books and other records used in the ordinary business of the bank'. Specifically, were unsorted cheques and paying-in slips covered by the words 'other records'? The court held they were not, because 'other records' were to be construed *eiusdem generis* with the earlier terms in the list.

This rule (like the next two to be discussed) applies also in the construction of statutes, from which many illustrations can be drawn.[51] A clear example is *Hy Whittle Ltd v Stalybridge Corporation*,[52] where Buckley J held that bread and confectionery did not come within the description 'meat, fish, poultry, vegetables, fruit, and other provisions'. The list 'meat, fish, poultry, vegetables, fruit' pointed, he said, to a class of natural products – that is, products not subjected to a manufacturing process. The phrase 'other provisions' was to read as confined to the same class. Bread and confectionery

mortgage and guarantee embodied in two separate documents – a mortgage between the bank and the borrower, and a guarantee between the bank and the guarantor): *Piccolo v National Australia Bank Ltd* [2000] FCA 187 (Australia); *Parcels of Land v Snavely*, Ohio App Lexis 2398 (1999, Ohio). In the United Kingdom, the law seems to remain that courts construe a series of documents as a single document only if the parties to the documents are the same: *Smith v Chadwick* (1882) 20 Ch D 27.

[50] [1988] QB 161, CA.

[51] Alec Samuels, 'The *Eiusdem Generis* Rule in Statutory Interpretation' [1984] *Statute Law Review*, p. 180.

[52] (1967) 65 LGR (UK) 344.

were manufactured items, the 'product of a baker's activities, converting natural flour into a finished article'.[53] Accordingly, they did not fall within the catch-all phrase 'other provisions'.

To take another example: a government proclamation authorised the making of a customs regulation banning the import of 'arms, ammunition, gunpowder, or any other goods'. It was held that the proclamation did not authorise a regulation banning the import of pyrogallic acid (used for film-developing), because the phrase 'any other goods' was to be construed as encompassing only goods of the class of arms, ammunition and gunpowder.[54]

Again, in an Australian case, a defendant was charged with breaching a regulation drafted in the following terms: 'No person shall by speaking, shouting, singing, playing upon, operating or sounding any musical or noisy instrument or doing anything whatsoever attract together a number of persons in any street or so as to obstruct traffic.'[55] The defendant had attracted a crowd (and thus obstructed pedestrian traffic) by standing on the steps of a theatre in a city street, dressed in a gorilla suit, gesticulating but making no noise. He was acquitted of the charge, because the phrase 'doing anything whatsoever' was to be read down by reference to the class inherent in the preceding list of specific activities – namely, activities that generated noise. The defendant's gesticulations being mute, he fell outside the genus of noisemakers.

The *eiusdem generis* rule can only apply where the specific words belong to a 'class'.[56] If the specific words lack an identifiable class, the general words must usually be taken at face value and given the width of meaning they normally bear.[57] For example, an English case concerned the question whether the obligation to pay hiring charges for a ship ceased after the ship ran aground. The charterparty stated that hiring charges would cease 'in the event of loss of time from deficiency of men or owners' stores, breakdown

[53] Ibid. at 354. [54] *Attorney-General v Brown* [1920] 1 KB 773.

[55] *Hughes v Winter* [1955] SASR 238.

[56] *R v Regos* (1947) 74 CLR 613 at 622–4 (Latham CJ); Glanville Williams, 'The Origin and Logical Implications of the *Ejusdem Generis* Rule' [1943] Conv 120 at 123–8.

[57] *Mudie & Co. v Strick* (1909) 100 LT 701; *Ruapehu Alpine Lifts Ltd v State Insurance Ltd* (1998) 10 ANZ Insurance Cases 61404. We add the qualification 'usually', because the context in which the general words are used and the subject matter of the contract may show that the parties intended to use the words in a narrow sense (as in *Stag Line Ltd v Foscolo, Mango & Co. Ltd* [1932] AC 328: 'bunkering or other purposes').

of machinery, or damage to hull or other accident'. The court held that the words and phrases preceding 'or other accident' formed no particular genus or class – they expressed 'no common or denominating feature'.[58] Similarly, an Australian case involved the question whether a company director was excused from participating in the company's affairs 'because of illness or for some other good reason'. The court held that it was not possible from this wording to identify any 'common characteristic' capable of being described as a genus.[59] The court agreed with Lord Diplock's statement that unless at least two different 'species' are identified, it is not possible to determine a relevant 'genus' which may be used to read down the general words that follow.[60]

The *eiusdem generis* rule sometimes seems to defeat the drafter's intentions. In *S. S. Knutsford Ltd v Tillmanns & Co.* a bill of lading exonerated the ship's master 'should the entry and discharge at a port be deemed by the master unsafe in consequence of war [or] disturbance or any other cause'. The court held that 'any other cause' must be construed as within the class of events characterised by 'war [or] disturbance'. Icing-up of the sea was not in that class. Hence, the clause did not exonerate a master who judged a port unsafe because of the existence of ice.[61]

Like other 'rules' of construction, the *eiusdem generis* rule is intended as a guide to discerning the parties' true intentions. It is not to be applied slavishly, divorced from this purpose. This is clear from the following comments of Devlin J in *Chandris v Isbrandtsen-Moller Co. Inc*:

> A rule of construction cannot be more than a guide to enable the court to arrive at the true meaning of the parties. The ejusdem generis rule means that there is implied into the language which the parties have used words of restriction which are not there. It cannot be right to approach a document with the presumption that there should be such an implication. To apply the rule automatically in that way would be to make it the master and not the

[58] *S. S. Magnhild v McIntyre Brothers and Co.* [1920] 3 KB 321 at 332.

[59] *Deputy Commissioner of Taxation v Clark* (2003) 45 ASCR 332 at 359. However, the court also noted that, even without the *eiusdem generis* rule, a general word or phrase may be read down if the Act (or document) taken as a whole indicates that it should be given a restricted interpretation (ibid., at 359).

[60] Lord Diplock's statement is found in *Quazi v Quazi* [1980] AC 744 at 807–8.

[61] [1908] AC 406, HL.

> servant of the purpose for which it was designed – namely, to ascertain the meaning of the parties from the words they have used. [62]

That said, the *eiusdem generis* rule has become something of a 'juristic fetish',[63] giving legal drafters genuine cause for concern. Drafters sometimes attempt to thwart the rule by casting the 'class' as widely as possible, hoping to make the general words embrace more. This is done by drafting lengthy lists, as in the following example taken from a repairing covenant in a lease:

> supplying, providing, purchasing, hiring, maintaining, renewing, replacing, repairing, servicing, overhauling and keeping in good and serviceable order and condition all appurtenances, fixtures, bins, receptacles, tools, appliances, materials, equipment *and other things* which the Landlord may deem desirable or necessary for the maintenance, appearance, upkeep or cleanliness of the Estate or any part of it.

The result is wordy, over-long clauses, impeding comprehension. Indeed, the result is doubly unfortunate, because this kind of defensive drafting may still fail to achieve its purpose: for as long as a 'class' is apparent, the *eiusdem generis* rule remains applicable.

Some judges have expressed reservations about the rule, and have applied a modified form of it: prima facie, general words are to be given their general meaning, and are not to be restricted by the *eiusdem generis* rule 'unless you can find that in the particular case the true construction of the instrument requires you to conclude that they are intended to be used in a sense limited to things eiusdem generis with those which have been specifically mentioned before'.[64] But given the wide acceptance of the rule in its traditional form, only a brave drafter would rely on this limited view of its operation to justify giving an expansive meaning to general words that follow a list of specific items belonging to a class.

[62] [1951] 1 KB 240 at 244, CA.

[63] *S. S. Magnhild v McIntyre Brothers and Co.* [1920] 3 KB 321 at 326.

[64] *Anderson v Anderson* [1895] 1 QB 749 at 753; endorsed by the Australian High Court in *Attorney-General for New South Wales v Metcalfe* (1904) 1 CLR 421 at 427. See also *Mandalidis v Artline* (1999) 47 NSWLR 568 at 585–6, arguing that the *eiusdem generis* rule has limited application in the construction of statutes of a reformatory nature, where courts should adopt a purposive construction (that is, one that will best promote the purpose of the legislation).

Expressio unius

Under this rule of construction, express reference to one matter indicates that other matters are excluded. The rule is embodied in the maxim *expressio unius est exclusio alterius* – the expression of one thing is the exclusion of the other. Where parties have included express obligations in a document, a court is wary about extending those obligations by resort to implication. The presumption is, that having expressed *some*, the parties have expressed *all* of the conditions by which they intend to be bound under the document.[65]

The *expressio unius* rule becomes particularly relevant where a document lists specific matters but omits others that might be thought to be relevant. The rule presumes that the omission was deliberate. This has a certain logic to it. For instance, where a contract lists a number of events that entitle a party to set the contract aside, it seems reasonable to assume that the list is intended to be complete and that no other event will entitle the party to set it aside.

Examples of judicial application of the *expressio unius* principle are relatively rare. The clearest instances are cases involving the interpretation of statutes. To illustrate: an Australian statute gave film-makers certain benefits if their name appeared on films. The statute distinguished between film-makers who were corporations (bodies corporate) and those who were natural persons, and stated that 'in the case of a person other than a body corporate, that name [must be] his true name or a name by which he was commonly known'. It was held that by expressly allowing film-makers other than bodies corporate to use *either* their true name *or* the name by which they were commonly known, the statute allowed bodies corporate to enjoy the benefits only if they used their true name. Burchett J described the case as a 'classic instance' for applying the *expressio unius* maxim:

> Parliament has expressly provided that a name other than the true name will do for the one case, provided the person is commonly known by it, while in the same sentence specifying 'the name of a person' for the other case. I can see no escape from the conclusion that a corporation which intends to avail itself of [the section] must use its very name.[66]

[65] *Broome's Legal Maxims*, 10th edn (1939), p. 443.

[66] *Film Investment Corporation of New Zealand v Golden Editions Pty Ltd* (1994) 28 IPR 1 at 18.

Again, a Canadian statute empowered the Director of Investigation and Research to intervene in proceedings before 'any federal board, commission or tribunal'. Did this empower the Director to intervene in proceedings before provincial tribunals? The Supreme Court of Canada held that it did not, on the basis of the *expressio unius* rule. Having listed the bodies before whom the Director could intervene, the statute contained a 'clear implication' that intervention before other bodies was not permitted.[67]

In the context of statutory interpretation, the *expressio unius* rule has been described as a valuable servant but a dangerous master.[68] By this is meant that a too-rigorous application of the rule to statutes may be inappropriate where the '*exclusio*' results from the drafter's inadvertence, particularly as the inadvertence is likely to be a product of the pressures under which parliamentary drafters labour.[69] The same may perhaps be said about the rule's application to private legal drafters. However, only the most foolhardy of drafters would rely on judicial lenity to excuse inadvertent omissions.

The *expressio unius* rule shows that long lists can be counterproductive. Legal drafters enjoy enumerating, but the rule creates the danger that things not expressed in the list may be held to be deliberately omitted. By being too particular, the drafter may well be held to have made the list exhaustive.

Noscitur a sociis

This rule can be expressed as follows: the meaning of a word or phrase can be controlled by the words or phrases associated with it. The Latin tag from which it is drawn can be translated: 'it is known by its neighbours'. Stanley Robinson treats the rule as part of the general principle that documents are to be read as a whole.[70] Most commentators, though, regard the rule as

[67] *Director of Investigation and Research v Newfoundland Telephone Company* [1987] 2 SCR 466 at 483–4. The case is discussed by John Mark Keyes, '*Expressio Unius*: The Expression that Proves the Rule' (1989) 10 *Statute Law Review*, p. 1.

[68] *Colquhoun v Brooks* (1888) 21 QBD 52 at 65.

[69] *Ryland Brothers (Australia) Ltd v Morgan* (1926) 27 SR (NSW) 161 at 168–9; *Bruce v Cole* (1998) 45 NSWLR 163 at 173 (Spigelman CJ), citing a number of Australian High Court warnings. For an example, see *Dean v Wiesengrund* [1955] 2 QB 120 (CA). Also, it may be inappropriate to apply the rule where it would restrict the operation of legislation which is clearly designed to reform the existing law, for legislation of that kind ought to be construed in a way that allows its purpose to be achieved: *Mandalidis v Artline Contractors Pty Ltd* (1999) 47 NSWLR 568 at 585–6.

[70] *Drafting* (London: Butterworths, 1973), p. 84.

having a life of its own.[71] In reality, this rule – like the others – is simply part of a general store upon which courts draw to give meaning to a document in the face of the parties' differing interpretations.

An English case clearly illustrates the operation of the rule. An insurance policy taken out by a fruit and vegetable importer was expressed to cover 'physical loss or damage or deterioration' arising out of strikes. A dock strike delayed the arrival of the insured's produce at market. During the period of delay, market prices fell, with the result that the produce fetched lower prices than it would have done had the strike not occurred. Was the loss in market price covered by the words 'physical loss or damage or deterioration'? Pearson J held that it was not, applying the *noscitur a sociis* rule. Each of the three listed misfortunes involved physical damage to the produce – physical loss, physical damage, physical deterioration. The words did not extend to mere loss of market value.[72]

Just as the 'genus', or class, must be ascertained before applying the *eiusdem generis* rule, so the '*societas*' to which the *socii* belong must be ascertained before applying the *noscitur a sociis* rule.[73] This can be a difficult exercise, on which different minds can reach different conclusions.[74] Nevertheless, the rule is apt to trap unwary drafters.

Contra proferentem

Under the *contra proferentem* rule, if ambiguity in a clause or document cannot be resolved in any other way, the clause or document is construed against the interests of the person who put it forward.[75] To illustrate: if a provision concerning the extent of cover under an insurance policy is ambiguous, with one possible construction favouring the insurer and another favouring the

[71] See, for example, Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, p. 48.

[72] *Lewis Emanuel & Son Ltd v Hepburn* [1960] 1 Lloyd's Rep 304.

[73] *Letang v Cooper* [1965] 1 QB 232 at 247 (Diplock LJ); *Andrews v Strugnell* [1977] Qd R 284 at 286.

[74] As in the Australian case of *R v Calabria*, which considered whether a person who dries out Indian hemp is caught by a provision which penalises a person who 'produces, prepares or manufactures' Indian hemp. According to the South Australian Full Supreme Court, on the basis of the *noscitur a sociis* rule, 'no' – see (1982) 31 SASR 423; but according to the Australian High Court on appeal, 'yes' – see (1983) 151 CLR 670.

[75] Stated fully, the rule is *verba chartarum fortius accipiuntur contra proferentem*: the words of an instrument are taken most strongly against the party employing them.

insured, a court will adopt the construction favouring the insured.[76] Similarly, an ambiguous provision in a lease imposing obligations on the tenant is construed in favour of the tenant;[77] in a contract for the sale of land, an ambiguous provision is construed in favour of the purchaser;[78] in a guarantee, it is construed in favour of the guarantor;[79] in a grant, it is construed in favour of the grantee;[80] and in a loan agreement, it is construed in favour of the borrower.[81]

However, the *contra proferentem* rule is applied only if the ambiguity cannot be resolved by any other legitimate means.[82] In that sense, it is a rule of last resort and only 'occasionally useful'.[83] Also, views differ over the precise formulation of the principle in certain situations. For example, on one approach, where a party has overall responsibility for drafting the document, an ambiguous provision in the document is construed against that party even though the other party had some involvement in its drafting;[84] on

[76] *Rowlett, Leakey & Co. v Scottish Provident Institution* [1927] 1 Ch 55 at 69 (Warrington LJ); *Ruapehu Alpine Lifts Ltd v State Insurance Ltd* (1998) ANZ Insurance Cases 61–404 at 74,442; *HEST Australia Ltd v McInerney* (1998) 71 SASR 526 at 534–5; *Hammer Waste Pty Ltd v QBE Mercantile Mutual Ltd* (2002) 12 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–553 at [25]–[28].

[77] As in *John Lee & Son (Grantham) Ltd v Railway Executive* [1949] 2 All ER 581 (CA); *Gruhn v Balgray Investments Ltd* (1963) 107 *Solicitors Journal*, p. 112 (CA); *Stockdale v City of Charles Sturt* (2000) 76 SASR 225 at 233 (repairing covenant in lease of unit in retirement village).

[78] As in *Savill Brothers Ltd v Bethell* [1902] 2 Ch 523 at 537–8.

[79] *Eastern Counties Building Society v Russell* [1947] 1 All ER 500 at 503; affirmed [1947] 2 All ER 734 at 736, CA.

[80] *Halsbury's Laws of England* (4th ed), Deeds, para 1472. But it is otherwise if the grantor is the Crown; there, the ambiguity is construed in favour of the Crown: *Viscountess Rhondda's Claim* [1922] 2 AC 339 at 353; *Minister for Natural Resources v Brantag Pty Ltd* (1997) 8 BPR 15,815 at 15,821–2 (NSWCA).

[81] As in *Budget Stationery Supplies Pty Ltd v National Australia Bank Ltd* (1996) 7 BPR 14,891.

[82] *St Edmundsbury and Ipswich Diocesan Board of Finance v Clark (No. 2)* [1975] 1 WLR 468 at 477 (extent of use permitted under reservation of right of way); *Darlington Futures Ltd v Delco Australia Pty Ltd* (1986) 161 CLR 500 at 510 (limitation of liability clause in commercial contract); *MLC Ltd v O'Neill* [2001] NSWCA 161 at [20]; *McCann v Switzerland Insurance Australia Ltd* (2000) 203 CLR 579 at 602 (Kirby J); *North v Marina* (2003) 11 BPR 21,359 at [76]–[78]; *McMahons Tavern Pty Ltd v Suncorp Metway Insurance Ltd* (2004) 89 SASR 125.

[83] *R v Lavender* (2005) 79 ALJR 1337 at 1354 per Kirby P.

[84] *Halford v Price* (1960) 105 CLR 23 at 30 (Dixon CJ), 34 (Fullagar J); *Johnson v American Home Assurance Co.* (1998) 192 CLR 266 at 274 (Kirby J).

another approach, the court asks who introduced the particular (ambiguous) provision into the contract, and construes the provision against that party, regardless of which party 'proffered' the document as a whole;[85] on another approach, the court asks who is to be taken to be saying the ambiguous words (and so the words are construed against that person);[86] and on yet another approach, the provision is construed against the person for whose 'benefit' the provision is inserted.[87] It has been said that the historical genesis of the principle lies in a 'concern for the disadvantages and rights of the less than highly literate', but that it has become in time a rule of general application regardless of the standard of literacy or commercial acumen of the parties.[88] In contrast, it has also been said that there is little if any scope for the maxim where both parties are commercially astute and experienced, where both have enjoyed legal advice, and where both are of roughly equal bargaining power.[89]

Nevertheless, despite these qualifications and uncertainties, the *contra proferentem* principle remains responsible for much of the verbosity in many legal documents, particularly leases. It may also be the reason why exemption clauses (in contracts of all kinds) are cast in the widest possible terms.[90] Lawyers try to avoid the application of the principle (whose Latin tag adds an undue aura of learning)[91] by ensuring that the document confers on their client every conceivable variant of right. In this way a rule of last resort becomes a first principle of drafting.

[85] *Bartlett & Partners Ltd v Meller* [1961] 1 Lloyds Rep 487 at 494; *Lobb v Phoenix Assurance Co. Ltd* [1988] 1 NZLR 285 at 288, 289, 291.

[86] *Amax International Ltd v Custodian Holdings Ltd* [1986] 2 EGLR 111 at 112 per Hoffmann J: in construing an ambiguous rent clause, the tenant is the covenantor and therefore technically the *proferens*.

[87] *Burton v English* (1883) 12 QBD 218 at 220 (Brett MR), 222, 224 (Bowen LJ); *J Fenwick & Co. Pty Ltd v Federal Steam Navigation Co. Ltd* (1943) 44 SR (NSW) 1 at 5–6 (Jordan CJ); *Thomas Nationwide Transport (Melbourne) Pty Ltd v May and Baker (Australia) Pty Ltd* (1966) 115 CLR 353 at 376 (Windeyer J).

[88] *Wilkie v Gordian Runoff Ltd* (2005) 79 ALJR 872 at [51] (Callinan J).

[89] *Rich v CGU Insurance Ltd* (2005) 79 ALJR 856 at 859–860 (Kirby J).

[90] Robinson, *Drafting*, p. 84 (fn). See the extended discussion in *Odgers' Construction of Deeds and Statutes*, pp. 98–105.

[91] See *Ballard v North British Railway Co*. (1923) SC (HL) 43 at 46 (Lord Shaw of Dunfermline, speaking of the term *res ipsa loquitur*): 'If that phrase had not been in Latin, nobody would have called it a principle.'

The two 'golden rules' of interpretation and drafting

Two further 'rules' of legal interpretation we may term 'golden' rules. In contrast to the rules considered so far, which may encourage a drafting style that is defensive, prolix and over-cautious, these two rules (if properly understood) should promote a style that is clear, direct and concise.

Golden rule 1: The 'ordinary sense' of words

This rule requires that words be given their ordinary sense. The meaning of an ordinary English word is not a question of law but of fact, to be found by taking into consideration all the circumstances of the case.[92] Lord Macmillan explained this so-called 'golden rule' of interpretation:

> The grammatical and ordinary sense of the words is to be adhered to unless that would lead to some absurdity or some repugnance or inconsistency with the rest of the instrument, in which case the grammatical and ordinary sense of the words may be modified so as to avoid that absurdity and inconsistency, but no further.[93]

This principle also embraces technical words: they are to be given their technical meaning, with the same qualification about absurdity, repugnance or uncertainty.

In finding the meaning of words – whether the 'ordinary' meaning or the 'technical' meaning – judges are free to consult dictionaries. However, they are also free to hold that the dictionary meaning of a word cannot determine the meaning as used by the parties in the context of their particular transaction.[94]

Golden rule 2: Consistent terminology

This rule may be stated: 'Never change your language unless you wish to change your meaning, and always change your language if you wish to change your meaning.'[95] It could also be expressed along these lines:

[92] *Cozens v Brutus* [1973] AC 854 at 861 (Lord Reid).
[93] *Law and Language* (Birmingham: Holdsworth Club, University of Birmingham, 1931), p. 18.
[94] *House of Peace Pty Ltd v Bankstown City Council* (2000) 48 NSWLR 498 at 505: 'church' when used in a 1954 planning instrument included a mosque.
[95] Piesse, *Elements of Drafting*, p. 19.

'Different words are taken to refer to different things, and same words to same things.' Like all rules of interpretation, it is applied only if the circumstances warrant.[96]

A striking illustration of the difficulties that can arise from a change in language is *Dickerson v St Aubyn*.[97] A landlord granted a lease of a flat for a term of seven years, with a right for the tenant to bring the lease to an end after five years. The tenant covenanted 'To paint in the last quarter of the *said term* with [a specified number of coats of paint]'. The tenant also covenanted to yield up the flat in repair 'at the end or sooner determination of *the tenancy*' and to allow inspection by prospective tenants 'during the last month of *the tenancy*'. The landlord covenanted to repair the outside walls and roofs and pipes 'at all times during the *said term*'. Was the tenant obliged to paint if he brought the lease to an end after five years? The Court of Appeal had no trouble in finding that the answer was 'no'. The lease distinguished between 'the term' and 'the tenancy'. In the context of the lease, 'the term' meant the original period of seven years for which the lease was granted. Du Parcq LJ explained:

> Now, the period of time which has been referred to is seven years, and 'the last quarter of the said term' therefore means the last quarter of the seven years, and the tenant, if he has read this lease, knows that when he gets to that quarter he must paint, and having read that, he sees that, if he gives notice to terminate after five years he will never get to that quarter at all, and the obligation to paint will no more arise than the obligation to go on cleaning windows every two months after he has determined the lease. Counsel for the [landlord] rather suggested that this construction was based on a narrow view, and rather complained that it all turned on one word. It very often happens that very important decisions turn on one word, and it is as well that draftsmen should remember that.[98]

Commercial or purposive interpretation

If the 'internal' rules fail to resolve difficulties in meaning, courts now invoke 'external' factors, viewing the document from the outside. In particular, a

[96] See *Watson v Haggitt* [1928] AC 127, PC.
[97] [1944] 1 All ER 370, CA. [98] [1944] 1 All ER 370 at 371.

court will interpret the document with reference to its commercial purpose and the factual background from which it springs.[99] In taking this approach, the court endeavours to give effect to the whole of the document, but if necessary rejects repugnant words.[100] This is sometimes called the 'purposive' construction, but it is better termed the 'commercial' interpretation.[101] Its classic exposition is found in *The Antaios*, where Lord Diplock said that if detailed and syntactical analysis of words in a commercial contract leads to a conclusion that flouts 'business commonsense', then the analysis must yield to business commonsense.[102] Or, as Hoffmann J said in *MFI Properties Ltd v BICC Group Pension Trust Ltd*: 'if the language is capable of more than one meaning, I think the court is entitled to select the meaning which accords with the apparent commercial purpose of the clause rather than one which appears commercially irrational.'[103]

Of course, if taken to extremes, an analysis based on 'business commonsense' can be as nebulous as one based on concepts such as 'reasonableness'. To that extent, the 'commercial' interpretation can give rise to disputes, especially where a party to the document deliberately seeks to extricate itself from contractual obligations. But such a party rarely invokes the 'commercial purpose' principle as a means of attack. More often the principle is invoked by way of defence against a party who alleges that the document should be interpreted literally.

To those who would urge against the purposive or commercial approach to interpreting documents, two answers can be given. First, the approach is now entrenched.[104] Judges are unlikely to return to a literal approach. This

[99] See *Rearden Smith Line Ltd v Yngvar Hansen-Tangen* [1976] 1 WLR 989, HL; *Hyundai Shipbuilding and Heavy Industries Co. Ltd v Pournaras* [1978] 2 Lloyd's Rep 502, CA.

[100] See *Forbes v Git* [1922] 1 AC 256, PC; *Cooke v Anderson* [1945] 1 WWR 657; *Adamastos Shipping Co. Ltd v Anglo-Saxon Petroleum Co. Ltd* [1959] AC 133, HL.

[101] See *Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd* [1997] AC 749 at 770 (Lord Steyn).

[102] [1985] AC 191 at 201, HL.

[103] [1986] 1 All ER 974 at 976. See also *Datastream International Ltd v Oakeep Ltd* [1986] 1 WLR 404 (Warner J); *Pearl Assurance PLC v Shaw* [1985] 1 EGLR 92 (Vinelott J); *British Gas Corporation v Universities Superannuation Scheme Ltd* [1986] 1 WLR 398 (Browne-Wilkinson V-C); *Basingstoke and Deane Borough Council v Host Group Ltd* [1988] 1 All ER 824, CA (Nicholls LJ).

[104] See, for example, *Spiro v Glencrown Properties Ltd* [1991] Ch 53 (Hoffmann J); *Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd* [1997] AC 749, HL; *Westpac Banking Corp v Tanzone Pty Ltd* (2000) 9 BPR 17,521 (NSWCA) ('absurd' rent review provision

reflects a movement in the law generally, away from conformity to a strict code and towards judgment on the merits. The movement is particularly evident in the 'notice' cases that have followed the decision in *Mannai*, where technical deficiencies in the form of some notices are ignored if, in the context of the transaction, a reasonable person in the recipient's position could not have been in doubt about the purpose and meaning of the notice.[105]

Second, the parties can always forestall argument about the underlying purpose of a document by stating the purpose expressly in the document – in a preliminary clause, or in a declaration at the end, or elsewhere. Indeed, there is much to commend an express purpose statement in every clause or document of any complexity. For example, a statement in a rent review clause that its purpose is to provide an upwards-only rent review every three years may help clarify an inevitably complicated provision, catering as it must for matters such as interest, payment of arrears, and arbitration.

Some might also urge that the commercial or purposive approach prolongs litigation, by allowing the parties to garner extrinsic evidence which otherwise might be inadmissible. But judges can be relied on to ensure that trials are not unduly prolonged, and that extrinsic evidence is admitted only where strictly relevant – though see p. 68 for debate on how far this reliance extends.

Importance of context

While all ambiguities in legal documents are unfortunate, some are worse than others. Some can be clarified by a moment's reflection, and others by applying one or more of the principles discussed earlier in this chapter. In

read down to conform to commercial common sense); *Dockside Holdings Pty Ltd v Rakio Pty Ltd* (2001) 79 SASR 374 (WAFC) (same); *Pacific Carriers Ltd v BNP Paribas* (2004) 218 CLR 451 at [22].

[105] *Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd* [1997] AC 749; *York v Casey* [1998] 2 EGLR 25 (CA); *Ketchum International Plc v Group Public Relations Holdings Pty Ltd* (Eng CA, unreported, 17 October 1997); *Atari Corporation (UK) Ltd v Electronic Boutique Stores (UK) Ltd* [1998] QB 539; *Central Pacific (Campus) Pty Ltd v Staged Developments Australia Pty Ltd* (1998) V ConvR 54–575 (Vic CA); *Bava Holdings Pty Ltd v Pando Holdings Pty Ltd* (1998) NSW ConvR 55–862.

many cases, too, ambiguity is resolved by reference to the context in which the ambiguous word or phrase appears.[106]

As linguists are at pains to emphasise, almost any word, phrase or sentence taken out of context can have two or more meanings.[107] Judges, too, acknowledge this reality.[108] Context often gives meaning to words and phrases that are capable of being read in more than one way; examples are 'juvenile magistrate', 'criminal solicitor', 'serious fraud office'. In reality, ambiguities like these generally pass unnoticed, because the reader unconsciously interprets the phrase within its context.

Some ambiguities, however, are not so readily resolved. Context then becomes even more crucial. Consider a gift by will in these terms:

> 'I give to Albert all my black and white horses.'

What does the testator mean by the words 'black and white horses'? Does he mean all his horses that are wholly black and all his horses that are wholly white? Or does he mean all his horses that are both black and white (piebald)? Reference to the context may help solve the uncertainty. If, at the date of his death,[109] the testator owned only piebalds, the potentially ambiguous words are clear: no wholly black horses or wholly white horses could have

[106] For an early example, see the *Statute of Provisions* 25 Ed 3, c. 4 (1350–51) which prohibited ecclesiastics from purchasing 'provisions' in Rome. The context indicated that by 'provisions' was meant not food but papal nominations to benefices.

[107] See, for example, Max Black, *The Labyrinth of Language* (London: Penguin Books, 1972), p. 167; John Lyons, *Semantics*, vol. ii (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1977), p. 397; Geoffrey Leech, *Semantics* (London: Penguin Books, 1974), p. 77; G. P. Baker & P. M. S. Hacker, *Language, Sense and Nonsense* (Oxford: Basil Blackwell, 1984), p. 310; John Lyons, *Language, Meaning and Context* (London: Fontana, 1981), pp. 14, 28.

[108] See, e.g., McHugh JA in *Manufacturers Mutual Insurance Ltd v Withers* (1988) 5 ANZ Insurance Cases 60–853 at 75,343 ('[F]ew, if any, English words are unambiguous or not susceptible of more than one meaning or have a plain meaning. Until a word, phrase or sentence is understood in the light of the surrounding circumstances, it is rarely possible to know what it means'); Lord Hoffmann in *Charter Reinsurance Ltd v Fagan* [1997] AC 313 at 391 ('[T]he notion of words having a natural meaning is not a very helpful one. Because the meaning of words is so sensitive to syntax and context, the natural meaning of words in one sentence may be quite unnatural in another. Thus a statement that words have a particular natural meaning may mean no more than that in many contexts they will have that meaning. In other contexts their meaning will be different but no less natural.'); Thomas J (NZ CA) in *Yoshimoto v Canterbury Golf International Ltd* [2001] 1 NZLR 523 at [73] ('The truth is that no words have a fixed or settled meaning. Language is inherently uncertain. The plain meaning of a writing can almost never be plain except in a context.')

[109] A will generally 'speaks' from the testator's death, not the date on which the will was signed.

been included in the gift. Even if, at the date of his death, the testator owned white horses, black horses, and piebalds, Albert must surely be entitled to either all the wholly black horses and all the wholly white ones, or all the piebalds. In this latter situation, context would not resolve the ambiguity; but litigation over the ambiguity is not inevitable, for Albert and the other beneficiaries under the will might be able to agree on a division – particularly as the words, read in isolation, do not appear to give Albert all the testator's horses.

Consider another example, this time from a lease of a farm:

> 'The lessee may graze not more than twenty cows or sheep on the land.'

This wording may be impossible to clarify merely by looking at the document. Is twenty the maximum number of animals? How many sheep are permitted? Can sheep and cows be mixed? However, reference to the circumstances known to the landlord and tenant at the date of the lease (for example, that the tenant then owned a total of twenty cows and sheep, or that the carrying capacity of the land was twenty cows or sheep) may clarify the uncertainty. Of course, in this example (as in the previous one) the fault may lie in vague instructions from the client – although a careful drafter would resolve the ambiguity before perpetuating it.

In summary, context and purpose are all-important when interpreting legal documents.[110] The commercial approach to interpretation leans heavily on both.[111]

Modern restatement

The House of Lords has recently restated the principles governing the interpretation of contractual documents, in *Investors Compensation Scheme Ltd v West Bromwich Building Society*.[112] The case turned on a phrase in a claim

[110] See, for example, *Okolo v Secretary of State for the Environment* [1997] 2 All ER 911 at 914 (Sedley J); *Scottish Power plc v Britoil (Exploration) Ltd, The Times*, 2 December 1997, CA.

[111] See *Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd* [1997] AC 749 at 767 (Lord Steyn).

[112] [1998] 1 WLR 896 at 912. Applied in *Barclays Bank Plc v Weeks Legg & Dean* [1999] QB 309 at 331 (Pill LJ); explained in *Bromarin AB v IMD Investments Ltd* [1999] STC 301 at 310 (Chadwick LJ); adopted in *Boat Park Ltd v Hutchinson* [1999] 2 NZLR 74 at 81–2

form: 'Any claim (whether sounding in rescission for undue influence or otherwise) that you have . . .' This drafting the House of Lords thought slovenly. The facts are noteworthy because the convoluted claim form was supplemented by a short explanatory note, itself a model of clarity.[113] Had the note been used alone, the litigation might well have been avoided.

In giving his judgment, Lord Hoffmann referred to the 'fundamental change' that had overtaken the construction of contracts. Generally, contractual documents were to be construed in accordance with 'common sense principles by which any serious utterance would be interpreted in ordinary life'. Almost all the old 'intellectual baggage' of legal interpretation had been discarded. He summarised the modern principles of interpretation:

(1) Interpretation is the ascertainment of the meaning which the document would convey to a reasonable person having all the background knowledge which would reasonably have been available to the parties in the situation in which they were at the time of the contract.
(2) The background was famously referred to by Lord Wilberforce as the 'matrix of fact', but this phrase is, if anything, an understated description of what the background may include. Subject to the requirement that it should have been reasonably available to the parties and to the exception to be mentioned next, it includes absolutely everything which would have affected the way in which the language of the document would have been understood by a reasonable man.
(3) The law excludes from the admissible background the previous negotiations of the parties and their declarations of subjective intent. They are admissible only in an action for rectification. The law makes this distinction for reasons of practical policy and, in this respect only, legal interpretation differs from the way we would interpret utterances in ordinary life. The boundaries of this exception are in some respects unclear.

(NZ CA). See discussion by Lord Steyn, 'The Intractable Problem of The Interpretation of Legal Texts' (2003) 23 *Sydney Law Review*, p. 5; Adam Kramer, 'Common Sense Principles of Contract Interpretation (and how we've been using them all along)' (2003) 23 *Oxford Journal of Legal Studies*, p. 173.

[113] [1998] 1 WLR 896 at 910 (Lord Hoffmann).

(4) The meaning which a document (or any other utterance) would convey to a reasonable man is not the same thing as the meaning of its words. The meaning of words is a matter of dictionaries and grammars; the meaning of the document is what the parties using those words against the relevant background would reasonably have been understood to mean. The background may not merely enable the reasonable man to choose between the possible meanings of words which are ambiguous but even (as occasionally happens in ordinary life) to conclude that the parties must, for whatever reason, have used the wrong words or syntax.
(5) The 'rule' that words should be given their 'natural and ordinary meaning' reflects the commonsense proposition that we do not easily accept that people have made linguistic mistakes, particularly in formal documents. On the other hand, if one would nevertheless conclude from the background that something must have gone wrong with the language, the law does not require judges to attribute to the parties an intention which they plainly could not have had.

Lord Hoffmann's second principle has been criticised on the basis that to include 'absolutely everything' as part of the admissible background is likely to increase both uncertainty and the costs of litigation.[114] In *Scottish Power plc v Britoil (Exploration) Ltd*, Staughton LJ made a plea for restricting background material to what the parties had in mind and what was going on around them at the time they were making the contract.[115] He repeated this plea in a law review article.[116]

In a later case, Lord Hoffmann clarified his remark in proposition (2) that the background material included 'absolutely everything'. He said:

> I should in passing say that when in *Investors Compensation Scheme* . . . I said that the admissible background included 'absolutely everything that could have affected the way in which the language of the document would have been understood by a reasonable man', I did not think it necessary to emphasise that

[114] Simon Price, 'Commercial Contract Interpretation through the Looking Glass' (1998) 142 *Solicitors Journal*, p. 176.
[115] *The Times*, 2 December 1997.
[116] Sir Christopher Staughton, 'How do the Courts Interpret Commercial Contracts?' [1999] *Cambridge Law Journal*, p. 303.

> I meant anything which a reasonable man would have regarded as *relevant*. I was merely saying that there is no conceptual limit to what can be regarded as background. . . . I was certainly not encouraging a trawl through 'background' which could not have made a reasonable person think that the parties must have departed from conventional usage.[117]

Lord Hoffmann's restatement of principle has not yet been taken up in some other jurisdictions. For example, Australian courts have so far baulked at admitting 'absolutely everything' in interpreting a document. Rather, they have insisted that the 'background' is admissible only where the provision under consideration is ambiguous on its face. On this view, if the meaning of the provision is clear on its face, then extrinsic material is not admissible to contradict that clear meaning.[118] A senior Australian judge has lamented that Lord Hoffmann's five propositions had greatly magnified the evidence, both oral and documentary, that courts now must consider in interpretation cases.[119] And so it has been said that 'no Australian authority has gone so far as to allow unambiguous language to be contradicted by context'.[120] In contrast, Lord Hoffmann's five principles admit evidence of the 'background' to show that what appears on its face to be clear is not in fact clear.

Nevertheless, even with those reservations in mind, Lord Hoffmann's five principles are in fact reflected in the way the courts interpret a number of different kinds of private legal documents. We illustrate with

[117] *Bank of Credit and Commerce International SA v Ali* [2002] 1 AC 251 at 269.

[118] *Codelfa Construction Pty Ltd v State Rail Authority of NSW* (1982) 149 CLR 337 at 352; *Royal Botanic Gardens and Domain Trust v South Sydney City Council* (2002) 76 ALJR 436 at [39], [69]–[73], [98]–[105]; *BP Australia Pty Ltd v Nyran Pty Ltd* (2003) 189 ALR 442 at 449–53; *European Bank Ltd v Citibank Ltd* (2004) 60 NSWLR 153 at 156 [7]; *Riltang Pty Ltd v L. Pty Ltd* (2004) 12 BPR 22,347 at 22,355 [38]; cf *Acorn Consolidated Pty Ltd v Hawkslade Investments Pty Ltd* (1999) 21 WAR 425 at 434–6 (Owen J).

[119] *LMI Australasia Pty Ltd v Baulderstone Hornibrook Pty Ltd* [2003] NSWCA 74 at [34]–[36], [50]–[53] per Young CJ in Eq.

[120] *Optus Vision Pty Ltd v Australian Rugby Football League Ltd* [2004] NSWCA 61 at [25] (Santow JA). See also ibid at [33]: 'Lord Hoffmann's approach liberated judges from indulging in the fiction that the parties must have intended an absurdity . . . But it would be ironic indeed if that substituted the notion that context may override text, absent ambiguity or obvious anomaly.' For a similar view from New Zealand, see Paul David, 'The Construction of Commercial Documents', available at <http://www.wilsonharle.com/preview>.

examples drawn from the areas of wills, patent applications, and standard forms.

Wills

Lord Hoffmann's principles reflect the so-called 'armchair principle' which has long been applied in interpreting wills.[121] This principle allows the admission of extrinsic evidence to explain the meaning of words and expressions in a will.[122] The court may receive 'evidence of the testator's habits of speech and of her or his family, property, friends and acquaintances in order that the court may read the will from the position of the person making it (as if sitting in the testator's armchair)'.[123] For example, in a South Australian case a testator devised property 'To Miss Doris Walters 121 William Street Norwood (Meals on Wheels)'. In fact, no Doris Walters lived at this address. The testator had, however, known a Miss Doris Taylor, who had lived at that address and had been associated with Meals on Wheels. Viewing the will from the testator's metaphorical armchair, the court held that the testator must have intended to benefit Miss Taylor, and construed the will accordingly.[124] Again, in an English case a will contained a gift to 'my son Forster Charter'. The testator had two sons, William Forster Charter and Charles Charter; he had no son Forster Charter. Even so, the court admitted evidence that the testator habitually called Charles by the name of Forster, and so the gift went to Charles.[125] There are many other cases to similar effect.[126]

In some jurisdictions, the 'armchair principle' has now yielded to statute. An example is s 21 of the *Administration of Justice Act* 1982 (England and Wales), under which extrinsic evidence (including evidence of the testator's intention) is admissible to construe parts of a will that are meaningless or ambiguous.[127]

[121] See *Boyes v Cook* (1880) 14 Ch D 53 at 56 (James LJ).

[122] F. V. Hawkins and E. C. Ryder, *The Construction of* Wills, 3rd edn (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1965), pp. 12–21.

[123] I. J. Hardingham, M. A. Neave and H. A. J. Ford, *Wills and Intestacy in Australia and New* Zealand, 2nd edn (Sydney: Law Book Co., 1989), pp. 284–5.

[124] *Re Alleyn* [1965] SASR 22.

[125] *Charter v Charter* (1874) LR 7 HL 364.

[126] Some are cited by Lord Hoffmann in *Mannai Investment Co. Ltd v Eagle Star Life Assurance Co. Ltd* [1997] AC 749 at 776–8.

[127] For an Australian counterpart, see s 36 of the *Wills Act* 1997 (Victoria).

Patent applications

Patent applications must be precise, in order to mark the exact confines of the invention. This encourages pedantry, jargon and repetition, in the hope of avoiding ambiguity.[128] Lord Hoffmann's five principles are particularly relevant in this highly specialised area.

Patents are sometimes attacked for alleged 'insufficiency'. This involves investigating whether the description of the patent is sufficient to enable those to whom the specification is addressed to understand how the subject matter of the patent is to be made or worked.[129] The specification must speak for itself, but must be interpreted against the background of the invention and what the inventor was trying to achieve. For example, in *Henriksen v Tallon Ltd*, Henriksen's patent claim read:

> A fountain pen of the ball tip type, comprising a tubular ink reservoir provided at one end with a ball tip and at the opposite end with an air inlet, in which there is disposed between the column of ink in the reservoir and the air inlet a liquid or viscous or paste-like mass which does not mix with the ink and forms a plug which moves with the surface of the ink column and *prevents* air from contacting the surface of the ink [emphasis added].[130]

The Henriksen invention was a particular kind of ballpoint pen, in which a moveable plug kept the air from the ink in the tube. Tallon made a similar pen with a similar plug, but argued that they did not infringe Henriksen's patent because their plug reduced the amount of air getting into the ink to 40 per cent but did not *prevent* air from contacting the surface of the ink. The House of Lords interpreted 'prevents' as meaning 'prevents for all practical purposes', and so the claim was infringed. As a result, the Tallon pen was scotched. Lord Reid pointed out that even the most careful drafter sometimes uses phrases capable of more than one construction, and that it would be applying the wrong standard to hold that the claim was ambiguous merely because it was difficult to construe.[131]

This case is a clear example of the rule applied in patent cases, that a court will make allowances for the language used, in an endeavour to

[128] See *Leonard's Application* [1966] Fleet Street Patent Law Reports 132 at 133 (Lloyd-Jacob J).
[129] See *No-fume Ltd v Frank Pitchford & Co. Ltd* (1934) 52 RPC 28 at 34 (Luxmoore J).
[130] [1965] RPC 434. [131] [1965] RPC 434 at 443.

ascertain what the drafter must have intended. All of Lord Hoffmann's principles operated in the case. The court interpreted the claim by finding the meaning which the claim would reasonably convey against the actual background of technical knowledge. What Henriksen might really have intended (subjectively) was irrelevant; but the judges did not attribute to Henriksen any impossible intention, and wrong or incomplete words and syntax were not fatal.

Standard forms

Where parties embody their contract in a tried and tested standard form, the courts presume that the parties have chosen to govern their relationship on the basis of the law and practice that has evolved in the use of that form.[132] That law and practice – and particularly any judicial decisions on the meaning of words or phrases in the form – are part of the background material which the courts consider when interpreting the meaning of the contract.

To illustrate, in *The Annefield* the English Court of Appeal was asked to interpret a standard form charterparty. The form had been the subject of judicial interpretation in 1936, where the court paid regard to a practice which had existed since 1914. The Court of Appeal therefore adopted the same interpretation given in the 1936 case. Lord Denning MR said:

> Once a court has put a construction on commercial documents in a standard form, commercial men act upon it. It should be followed in all subsequent cases. If the business community is not satisfied with the decision, they should alter the form.[133]

This approach is consistent with Lord Hoffmann's principles. The parties are presumed to know how the courts have interpreted earlier versions of the form and to intend their contract to be interpreted in that light. All this is part of the 'matrix of fact' against which the document has been drafted.

[132] See, for example, *Dunlop & Sons v Balfour Williams & Co*. [1892] 1 QB 507 at 518, CA (Lord Esher MR); *The Nema* [1982] AC 724 at 737 (Lord Diplock), HL; *Legal & General Insurance Australia Ltd v Eather* (1986) 6 NSWLR 390 at 394 (Kirby P).

[133] [1971] P 168.

Dangers in using precedent as an aid to interpretation

Given the importance of purpose and context in construing documents, there are dangers in relying too much on precedent as an aid to interpretation. Sir George Jessel MR pointed out these dangers in *Aspden v Seddon*.[134] The duty of a judge, he said, is to ascertain the meaning of the particular document before the court, and reference to past decisions 'merely for the purpose of ascertaining the construction of a document' is to risk 'confusion and error'. A decision on construction in one case is a guide, but no more than a guide, to construction in a later case. An inflexible, step-by-step, precedent-based process can lead to absurdity:

> There is, first, document A, and a Judge formed an opinion as to its construction. Then came document B, and some other Judge has said that it differs very little from document A – not sufficiently to alter the construction – therefore he construes it in the same way. Then comes document C, and the Judge there compares it with document B, and says it differs very little, and therefore he shall construe it in the same way. And so the construction has gone on until we find a document which is in totally different terms from the first, and which no human being would think of construing in the same manner, but which has by this process come to be construed in the same manner.[135]

Courts do not regard themselves as controlled by the meaning given to words in earlier cases. This is because no two cases are ever exactly the same. Judicial examination of a word's meaning in an earlier case is useful only to the extent that it provides an analogy to prompt the approach to be taken in a later case.[136]

Interpreting plain language documents

How will the courts apply the principles of legal interpretation we have reviewed in this chapter to the construction of documents drafted in plain

[134] (1874) 10 Ch App 394 at 397. [135] Ibid. at 398.
[136] *Galcif Pty Ltd v Dudley's Corner Pty Ltd* (1995) 6 BPR 14,134 at 14,137 (Kirby P).

language? Some commentators have argued for a radical reappraisal of the principles of interpretation, 'so as not to leave plain and simple drafting to the abuse of legal semantics'.[137] But this seems rather to overstate the problem. As we have seen in this chapter, courts already construe documents in the light of context and purpose, and where necessary discard a literalist approach for a purposive one. As one Australian case holds, when interpreting documents drafted in plain language, regard must be had to 'the intention to create a form of agreement that is expressed in plain English and avoids legal technicality'.[138]

Nevertheless, legal drafting of the sparse, uncluttered kind we extol in this book invites close attention to every word. Being shorn of surplus words, a document in 'plain English' runs the risk of judicial scrutiny of every word – a scrutiny even more intense than that exercised on traditionally-drafted documents, where refuge may be available in thickets of verbiage.

An illustration of this closer scrutiny can be seen in the decision of the English Court of Appeal in *Welsh v Greenwich Borough Council*.[139] Greenwich Council had leased a flat to a tenant. The lease included an obligation on the Council 'to maintain the dwelling *in good condition and repair*' (our italics). The flat suffered from severe mould growth, due to condensation of water vapour, which in turn was caused by insufficient insulation. According to the Court of Appeal, the lease was drafted, not in that 'torrential' style familiar to lawyers, but rather in a style that was 'short and apparently simple, as is appropriate for any tenancy agreement to be entered into by a local authority or other social landlord'. The style was 'exceedingly sparse'. This led Robert Walker LJ (with whom Latham LJ and Bell J agreed) to conclude that the term 'good condition' in the repairing clause was intended to mark a separate concept from, and to make a significant addition to, what was conveyed by the word 'repair'. By failing to provide thermal insulation or dry lining for the external walls of the flat, the Council had allowed excessive condensation and black mould to continue, and so had failed to maintain the flat 'in good condition'.

We end this chapter with an obvious, but important, caution. To redraft an existing document into modern, standard English may not be easy. There

[137] Tracey Reeves, 'Opposites attract: plain English with a European interpretation' [1997] *New Law Journal*, p. 578.

[138] *Kevest v Spiteri* [2002] NSWSC 22 (Malpass M).

[139] [2000] 49 EG 118.

is the risk that, in the process of discarding jargon and legalese, legal meaning is lost. The drafter's skill lies in ensuring that legal meaning is retained. In short, the drafter must take care to ensure that the document still has its intended legal effect.[140]

[140] See, for example, *Graham v Public Employees Mutual Insurance Co.* 656 P 2d 1077 (Wash, 1983), where a change to plain language caused the court to reject an insurance claim that would have been covered under the former traditionally-drafted policy; discussed in Lynn B. Squires, 'Autopsy of a Plain Language Insurance Contract: Can Plain English Survive Proximate Cause?' (1984) 59 *Washington Law Review* 565.

Chapter Three

THE MOVE TOWARDS MODERN ENGLISH IN LEGAL DRAFTING

Introduction

The modern style of legal drafting owes much to the plain English movement in law. This chapter considers the history of that movement in a number of countries, concentrating on the period from the 1960s to date.

We begin with a reminder that calls to simplify legal language are hardly new. We mentioned some early examples in Chapter 1. A number of leading nineteenth century reformers made scathing attacks on lawyers' language. Jeremy Bentham was particularly vitriolic in attacking the argument that 'precision' or 'certainty' demanded a repetitious style:

> For this redundancy – for the accumulation of excrementitious matter in all its various shapes, in all its various forms . . . for all the pestilential effects that cannot but be produced by this so enormous load of literary garbage, the plea commonly pleaded [is] . . . that it is necessary to *precision* – or to use the word which on similar occasions they themselves are in the habit of using, *certainty*.[1]

Later in the nineteenth century, the English barrister George Coode published his influential book, *On Legislative Expression*. In it, he rejected the

[1] *Nomography or the Art of Inditing Laws*, published in *Works* (Edinburgh: William Tait, 1838–43), vol. 3, p. 208. Bentham's views are surveyed in *Access to the Law: The Structure and Format of Legislation* (Melbourne: Law Reform Commission of Victoria, 1990), Appendix 4.

convoluted style of traditional legal drafting: 'Nothing more is required than that instead of an accidental and incongruous style, the common popular structure of plain English be resorted to.'[2]

Many of Bentham's and Coode's suggestions were adopted by Lord Macaulay in his *Indian Penal Code*,[3] described by a modern legislative drafter as 'to this day a shining example of legal wisdom and clarity'.[4] In his introduction to the Code, Macaulay wrote:

> There are two things which a legislator should always have in view while he is framing laws; the one that they should be, as far as possible, precise: the other that they should be easily understood . . . That a law, and especially a penal law, should be drawn in words which convey no meaning to the people who are to obey it is an evil.[5]

Yet the work of these and other reformers failed to have any lasting effect. Most legal drafting of the nineteenth and twentieth centuries was couched in the traditional style. As Arthur Symonds – not so well known as Bentham or Coode, but an experienced legislative drafter with perceptive views on legal writing – lamented of legislation:

> our legislators often dream wisely, and talk after the fashion of their dreams; but from ignorance and want of skill in the workmanship of details, which they leave to the routine performance of mere artisans, they seldom succeed in giving to the people a law intelligible either to themselves or the persons for whose especial guidance the law was designed. The beauty of a piece of mechanism is shewn in the completeness of all its parts, and their combined action towards one grand general result. There is nothing excessive – nothing wanting. Each part has its special use, and is indispensable. Apply these principles to English laws, what are they? The clumsiest pieces of workmanship which the unskilled labour of man ever made.[6]

[2] Reprinted in E. Driedger, *The Composition of Legislation* (Ottawa: Department of Justice, 1976), p. 376.

[3] Macaulay's influence on statutory drafting is traced by Mark Duckworth, 'The Body of the Laws as a Popular Book', unpublished conference paper, delivered at Law and History Conference, Canberra, July 1995.

[4] Sir William Dale, 'A London Particular' [1985] *Statute Law Review*, pp. 13–14.

[5] *Works of Lord Macaulay*, ed. Lady Trevelyan (London: Longmans, Green & Co., 1879), vol. 7, p. 423.

[6] Arthur Symonds, *The Mechanics of Law-Making* (London: Edward Churton, 1835), p. iv.

Calls for reform resurfaced from time to time during the first half of the twentieth century, but went largely unheeded. Then, in the 1960s and 1970s, the demands of the consumer movement gave new urgency to the campaign for change. The following discussion concentrates on developments in the United Kingdom, Australia, the United States of America and Canada. However, similar pressures towards plain language are evident in many other parts of the world as well; examples include Sweden, Mexico, South Africa, and the European Union.[7]

The United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, the modern plain language movement in law can be traced to a number of specific developments. First, for the practising lawyer, came two books of precedents by Anthony Parker. Unlike previous precedent books, which perpetuated a style frozen in time, these books were radically modern in approach. Then, about twenty years after the first Parker book, two organisations came to focus on the obstacles to understanding inherent in traditional styles of legal drafting. They were the Plain English Campaign and the National Consumer Council, both originally formed to help the general public in their dealings with officialdom and commerce. About the same time, a newly-formed organisation of lawyers, aptly named Clarity, added its voice to the growing demands for change in traditional styles of legal drafting. These organisations were later joined by another, the Plain Language Commission. Since then, the United Kingdom government has played a role in helping eradicate legalese from government departments and official forms, and in sponsoring moves towards plainer language in legislation.

The Parker books

In 1964 Butterworths published a slim volume of conveyancing precedents edited by solicitor Anthony Parker: *Modern Conveyancing Precedents*. It was

[7] Examples are given in 53 *Clarity* (2005), passim, detailing developments in the European Commission, Hong Kong, Switzerland, Italy, Canada, Israel, Mexico, Spain, Japan, Singapore, and the United States of America. Websites of international organisations include: http://sweden.gov.se/sb/d/4428 (Plain Swedish Group); www.europa.eu.int/comm/translation/en/ftfog (Fight the Fog); www.lenguajeciudadano.gob.mx (Mexico's Citizens' Initiative); www. plainlanguagenetwork.org (world wide plain language network).

unlike any precedent book that had gone before. It used ordinary English, shunned tautology, and avoided excessive caution ('the said City of London'). Parker was a vivid writer, with an apt turn of phrase. He wrote in the preface:

> Many lawyers today feel that draftsmen of traditional conveyancing documents use English as a bludgeon, and that they attempt by casting about repeated blows to beat the subject into submission; these lawyers would like to use a less primitive weapon, yet they have no precedents to help them. It is hoped that this book, which uses modern language, may assist. Others may resent the break with tradition, and to them I would say that the change is not due to any lack of respect for legal history; engineers may admire Stephenson's 'Rocket' as a lesson in the foundations of mechanics, but they would not put into service a replica.

Parker explained the main aims of his forms in this way:

1. To produce the full legal effect intended.
2. To make documents more comprehensible to clients, and thus to assist in relations between solicitors and the public.
3. To avoid the abuse of the English language found in traditional precedents.
4. To avoid the confusion of thought and expression found in some traditional precedents.
5. To make documents shorter, and so save time and money for the legal profession.[8]

He succeeded in achieving those aims. An illustration was his standard adaptable mortgage. The clauses were expressed in clear, concise English, discarding many unnecessary legal complexities. Gone was the legal date for redemption under which the borrower promised to repay the whole loan on a fixed day six months after the date of the mortgage. That was pure fiction, a device merely to bring the lender's remedies into potential use, neither party expecting or wanting the money to be repaid so soon. Gone too was the fiction that for some purposes the parties were in a landlord-tenant relationship. Parker's precedent gave the lie to Lord Macnaghten's aphorism

[8] Anthony Parker, *Modern Conveyancing Precedents* (London: Butterworths, 1964), p. 4.

that 'no-one by the light of nature ever understood an English mortgage of real estate'.[9]

Four years after the conveyancing precedents, *Parker's Modern Wills Precedents* appeared.[10] Its expressed aims were similar to those of the earlier work. In the preface, Parker urged the use of 'minor' rather than 'infant'; the rejection of 'enjoy' in the sense 'to have the advantage of' (as in, 'to enjoy the drains and sewers'); and the adoption of the straightforward 'give' instead of 'give, devise and bequeath'. With the benefit of hindsight, these exhortations seem tame. When they were published, however, they heralded significant changes in drafting styles.

The Parker books were ahead of their time. Parker asserted (in his Editor's Notes to *Modern Conveyancing Precedents*) that he was steering a middle course. But the legal profession thought his precedents too radical. They did not catch on. Since the Parker books were published, few precedent books have advocated the same 'plain' style. An exception (and in the same subject area) is James Kessler's *Drafting Trusts and Will Trusts*, first published in 1992 and now in its seventh edition.[11] But despite books of the Parker and Kessler kind, most wills and trust deeds seen today are still in the traditional form.

Plain English Campaign

In 1976 Martin Cutts and Chrissie Maher helped to establish an advice centre in Salford, Greater Manchester, England. This was the Salford Form Market, where for three years they worked to simplify supplementary benefit forms and leaflets. In 1979 Cutts and Maher took the bold decision

[9] *Samuel v Jarrah Corporation Ltd* [1904] AC 323 at 326, HL. Compare the lament of an Australian judge (Fox J) on the fate of a person signing a traditionally-worded mortgage: 'It is surely a sad commentary on the operation of our legal system that a borrower should be expected to execute a document which only a person of extraordinary application and persistence would read, [and] which, if read, is virtually incomprehensible and which, in any event, has a legal effect not disclosed by its language: *Richards v The Commercial Bank of Australia* (1971) 18 FLR 95 at 99–100.

[10] An Australian edition was later published: F. C. Hutley, *Australian Wills Precedents* (Sydney: Butterworths, 1970).

[11] London: Sweet & Maxwell, 2004. Chapter 2 contains a discussion of drafting, echoing some of the recommendations we make in this book. However, Kessler expresses some reluctance at devoting too much time and attention to matters of style, considering them to be mostly matters of taste and discretion; but he also makes the point that whenever literary style is poor, more serious errors are often found.

to launch a broader, national initiative: the Plain English Campaign.[12] Since then, the Plain English Campaign has expanded enormously. It attracts considerable media attention, especially with its annual 'Golden Bull' awards, which ridicule the worst examples of traditional legal writing, and its 'Crystal Seal' awards for documents that meet its standards for clear writing.

Though Cutts and Maher were not lawyers, they were not afraid to tackle traditional legal writing head-on. They redrafted a large range of legal documents, private and public. Insurance policies in particular proved amenable to the Campaign's crusade for rewriting in plain style.

The Campaign's organisers were not content merely to replace legal jargon with everyday words. For them (as indeed for all proponents of clear writing), plain English involved considering not only language but also content and layout.[13] These three elements are well illustrated in one of the Campaign's early publications, *Writing Plain English*.[14] Among other things, the booklet recommended that writers of official prose should:

- decide what is the essential information, and stick to it
- choose words learnt early in life
- select a clear, legible typeface
- construct sentences simply, with one or two clauses in a sentence
- create a total effect that is pleasing.

In the sphere of legal writing, the Plain English Campaign has helped to clarify texts such as regulations, articles of association, consumer contracts, police procedures and shareholder information. A notable early success was its work on the British Aerospace aircraft lease, which the Campaign rewrote in conjunction with Clifford Chance and Allen & Overy – two of the world's leading law firms. They reduced the lease to one-third of its original length. One of the first transactions to use the new lease involved six Airbus A320

[12] Martin Cutts and Chrissie Maher, *The Plain English Story* (Stockport: Plain English Campaign, 1986). The story of the Campaign's 'launch' in 1979, by a public shredding of government forms in Parliament Square, London, is retold in the Commission's magazine, *Plain English* (issue 59, August 2004), pp. 6–7. The Plain English Campaign's website is at: <http://www.plainenglish.co.uk>.

[13] See, for example, Robert Eagleson, *Plain English in Official Writing* (Canberra: Department of Sport, Recreation and Tourism, 1985), p. 4.

[14] Martin Cutts and Chrissie Maher, *Writing Plain English* (Stockport: Plain English Campaign, 1984).

aircraft, a deal worth US$180 million. The lease helped reduce the time taken for the transaction from the normal six months to three and a half weeks.

In recent years, the Campaign has expanded internationally, influencing drafting in many European countries and opening a branch in the United States. It conducts workshops in Britain and in countries where training in plain language drafting is not otherwise readily available.[15]

Arguably, the Campaign's most lasting achievement has been to change the attitude of everyday consumers. As a result of the Campaign's pioneering work, consumers who find themselves unable to understand a document are now confident to ask: 'What does this mean, in plain English?' A generation ago they would have been less confident, ascribing the document's incomprehensibility not to poor drafting but to their own lack of ability.

Plain Language Commission

Martin Cutts left the Plain English Campaign in 1989 and formed the Plain Language Commission in 1994.[16] The Commission is best-known for its accreditation mark, the Clear English Standard. This has appeared on some 10,500 documents, each vetted for clarity of language and presentation. A companion mark appears on websites such as those of the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Services Compensation Scheme, Companies House and the Insolvency Service. The Commission provides some 200 one-day writing-skills courses a year for government departments, companies and local authorities, as well as training in legal drafting for some of England's leading law firms.

In 1993, Martin Cutts responded to a challenge from the first parliamentary counsel in the United Kingdom to redraft a statute in plain language without significant loss of meaning. The result was a discussion paper, *Unspeakable Acts?*, in which Mr Cutts rewrote the *Timeshare Act* 1992.[17] The parliamentary drafter responsible for the original Bill mounted

[15] These countries include South Africa. The Campaign's projects in that country included preparing and testing a plain language version of the *Human Rights Commission Act* 1995 (SA). For the results of the Commission's work, see Philip Knight, *Clearly Better Drafting – A Report to the Plain English Campaign* (1996).

[16] The Commission's website is at <http://www.clearest.co.uk>.

[17] Martin Cutts, *Unspeakable Acts?* (Stockport: Words at Work, 1993).

a robust defence,[18] and Cutts further revised his redraft. The Cutts version reduced the average sentence length from 36 words to 24, and reduced the total number of words by 1000 (a cut of 25 per cent).[19] When the two texts are compared – as they are comprehensively in Cutts's later paper, *Lucid Law*[20] – there can be little doubt that the Cutts version is far easier to understand and apply, demonstrating the truth of Driedger's assertion that mysterious incantations and special rules of grammar and composition are as unnecessary in statutes as they are in private legal documents.[21]

In a follow-up to *Lucid Law*, the Plain Language Commission redrafted portions of the United Kingdom tax law, working with a team of tax and accountancy experts. Both projects were highly influential in persuading the United Kingdom to rewrite its tax law, discussed later in this chapter. More recently, the Commission has ventured into Europe, with publications directed at simplifying and clarifying the language of EC regulations.[22]

National Consumer Council

In 1975 the British government established the National Consumer Council, to identify and represent the interests of consumers. The Council is a non-statutory body, financed by the government but otherwise independent of it, with twelve board members nominated by the Secretary of State for Trade and Industry.

The National Consumer Council has worked with the Plain English Campaign to promote plain English. The year 1980 saw the publication of

[18] Euan Sutherland, 'Clearer Drafting and the Timeshare Act 1992: A Response from Parliamentary Counsel to Mr Cutts' (1993) 14 *Statute Law Review*, p. 163.

[19] Statistics taken from *Twenty-five years of battling gobbledygook* (High Peak: Plain Language Commission, 2004).

[20] Martin Cutts, *Lucid Law*, 2nd edn (Whaley Bridge: Plain Language Commission, 2000); compare Bennion, 'Don't Put the Law into Public Hands' (subtitled: 'Leave legal wording alone, says Francis Bennion'), *The Times*, 24 January 1995, trenchantly criticising the first edition of the Cutts version. Cutts has also written *The Quick Reference Plain English Guide* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999), later recast as *Oxford Guide to Plain English* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004).

[21] See Elmer Driedger, *A Manual of Instructions for Legislative and Legal Writing* (Ottawa: Dept of Justice, 1982), vol. 1, p. 2.

[22] Martin Cutts, *Clarifying Eurolaw* (High Peak: Plain Language Commission, 2001); Martin Cutts and Emma Wagner, *Clarifying EC Regulations* (High Peak: Plain Language Commission, 2002).

Gobbledegook, a critical review of official forms and leaflets by broadcaster Tom Vernon on behalf of the Council. *Small Print* (1983), with its emphasis on layout as well as content and language, took the form of a report to the Council by the Plain English Campaign. *Plain Words for Consumers: The Case for a Plain Language Law* followed in 1984.

Also in 1984, the Council published its booklet *Plain English for Lawyers*. The first section included the following passage:

> Sadly, lawyers have an almost universal reputation for mystifying their work. Their prose baffles their clients and alienates the public. They go on using a particular phrase, sentence, paragraph or entire agreement because it is familiar. It offers an effortless solution. And as Lord Denning said, when presenting the 1982 Plain English Awards, 'Lawyers try to cover every contingency, but in so doing they get lost in obscurity'. The wordy, repetitive phrases of legal documents in 1984 still conjure up a musty Dickensian image and make them unintelligible to most non-lawyers – the very people who are the ultimate users of many of these documents. Consumer contracts, in particular, are incomprehensible to the consumers who sign them.
>
> But legal writing does not have to be like this. Enlightened lawyers have recognised that good professional writing does not read as though it has been written by a lawyer. There is nothing clever about sounding clever. The result is usually pompous and obscure.

The booklet included a number of guidelines:

- use a logical order
- use familiar forms of address
- leave out surplus words
- use familiar, concrete words
- use short sentences
- use verbs to describe activities and processes; keep verbs in the active voice
- use punctuation sensibly
- arrange your words with care
- avoid language quirks.[23]

Like many plain language publications, the booklet emphasised the importance of writing from the viewpoint of the reader. It concluded that

[23] National Consumer Council, *Plain English for Lawyers* (London, 1984), p. 9.

its 'guidelines' were not inflexible rules, to be followed slavishly. But there was one golden rule: 'write with the interests and abilities of your reader constantly in mind'.[24] This, of course, prompts the question: who is the reader? The Council's assumption, unexpressed, was that the reader of a legal document is the user of the document. This is where plain language drafters depart from drafters who use the more traditional style. The traditional school of legal drafting assumes that the reader is a lawyer – either the lawyer for the other party to the transaction, or the judge before whom the document would come if it were ever challenged in court.

The Council has since published other booklets directed to the legal profession, exhorting a simpler, more direct style of legal drafting.[25]

Clarity

Clarity is an international organisation promoting plain legal language.[26] It has particularly strong memberships in England, Australia, Canada and the United States of America, and it is also represented in many non-English speaking countries.

Clarity's beginnings can be traced to a letter of 12 January 1983 to the English *Law Society's Gazette* from a surveyor, D. J. Swinburne, who lamented that modern-day leases still seemed to be drafted 'in the language of the early 19th century'. The writer told how he[27] had been engaged in difficult negotiations for a lease, which resulted in terms which he could present as heads of agreement on a single A4 page. His client had turned to him 'in utter bewilderment' when the solicitor later produced the draft lease. The concise terms of the heads of agreement had been 'almost completely lost within the antique legal padding' of the lease. The lease referred to the land as extending to 'three acres, two roods and nineteen perches', while the Ordnance Survey plan showed the land as extending to 3.619 acres (1.466 hectares). The 'quite ordinary house' on the land was referred to throughout the lease as 'the messuage or dwellinghouse'. In the repair clause, the tenant was asked to paint 'with three coats at least of good oil paint', and was also

[24] Ibid., p. 26.

[25] For example, *Making Good Solicitors – The Place of Communication Skills in Their Training* (1989); *Plain Language – Plain Law* (1990).

[26] Clarity's website is at <http://www.clarity-international.net>.

[27] We are assuming that the writer was male, though nothing in the letter indicates either way.

to 'stain, varnish, distemper, stop, whiten and colour'. The writer ended by seeking 'some assurance from your profession that before we arrive in the 21st century your profession will have abandoned the meaningless, Victorian verbiage in legal documents and produce something relevant to this century at least'.

The plea did not fall on deaf ears. The *Gazette* of 2 March 1983 published an answer from John Walton, a local government solicitor, who urged lawyers to do something about it. He proposed a movement to simplify legal English from within the profession – an 'organised group of solicitors, barristers and legal executives whose aims would be to write in good, clear English and to persuade others to do the same'. There could be an exchange of precedents to give guidance in producing documents that were both 'certain in meaning and intelligible to ordinary people'. The name of the organisation, he suggested, could be 'Clarity'.

The response was encouraging enough for Walton to announce some three months later in the *Gazette* the birth of Clarity.[28] The organisation's aim was to encourage the legal profession to use good, clear English. This would be achieved by

- avoiding archaic, obscure and over-elaborate language in legal work
- drafting legal documents in language both certain in meaning and easily understandable
- exchanging ideas and precedents, not to be followed slavishly, but to give guidance in producing good legal English
- exerting a firm but responsible influence on the style of legal English, with the hope of achieving a change in fashion.

Membership was to be open to anyone in a position to influence the use of legal English. It was not to be confined to lawyers. A newsletter for the exchange of ideas would be produced, as well as a register of precedents.

The first newsletter appeared in August 1983. By the time of the first annual meeting on 8 September 1984, membership stood at 257. Since then it has risen steadily to more than 1000 worldwide. The newsletter has now been supplemented by a weighty journal, also called *Clarity*. The organisation's former chairman, Mark Adler, has written a book and several

[28] John Walton, 'The Case for "Clarity": Improvement of Legal English' (1983) 80 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 1484.

articles on legal drafting.[29] Clarity has as its patrons three senior judges – one from England, one from Australia, and one from New Zealand – each with a reputation for clear writing.[30]

Tribunals and organisations have sought Clarity's views on simplifying legal language. The National Consumer Council consulted Clarity before finalising its *Plain Words for Consumers* and *Plain English for Lawyers*. The Farrand Committee on the simplification of conveyancing invited Clarity's views. Clarity also commented on the first draft of the 1990 Standard Conditions of Sale (England). The property information form in the English Law Society's TransAction package reflects Clarity's suggested draft. Clarity's membership now extends across 40 countries.[31] Its members include not only practising lawyers, but also judges, legislative drafters, academics, and others from law-related professions. It has held several international conferences, and its journal regularly carries articles showing the progress of plain language around the world.[32]

In its various endeavours, Clarity has helped change the legal profession's attitude to drafting.

The United Kingdom government

The United Kingdom government in recent years has done a great deal for the cause of plain English. The government's input can be traced to the 1940s, when the Treasury invited Sir Ernest Gowers to write his works *Plain Words* (1948) and *ABC of Plain Words* (1951) as a contribution to governmental efforts to improve official English. These two books later led to *The Complete Plain Words*.

A subsequent impetus came from Sir Derek Rayner's report to the Prime Minister in January 1982, called *Review of Administrative Forms*. A white paper, *Administrative Forms in Government*, soon followed. These revealed

[29] Mark Adler, *Clarity for Lawyers* (London: Law Society, 1990); 'Bamboozling the Public' [1991] *New Law Journal*, p. 1032; 'British Lawyers' Attitudes to Plain English' (1993) 28 *Clarity*, p. 29.

[30] The patrons are Sir Christopher Staughton (formerly a Lord Justice of Appeal in England and Wales); Justice Michael Kirby (of the Australian High Court); and Sir Kenneth Keith (formerly of the New Zealand Court of Appeal, and now on the International Court of Justice).

[31] Statistics taken from 53 *Clarity* (May 2005), p. 69.

[32] Issue 53 of Clarity's journal (May 2005) carries articles about the progress of plain language in many parts of the world.

that over 2000 million government forms and leaflets were used by the public each year, at a cost of about £200 million. They also revealed enormous inefficiencies in their use, due in no small part to their complexity. The white paper proposed immediate action: a systematic review of existing forms; a critical look at proposed new forms; staff to design, control and review forms; the development and extension of training; and an annual report to each permanent secretary. In particular, the white paper required departments to ensure that forms became progressively more intelligible, with language 'plain and simple, avoiding jargon'.[33]

Progress reports to the Prime Minister were made in February 1983 and September 1987. Meanwhile, in 1984 the government had issued a ten-page guidance booklet to the Management and Personnel Office, entitled *The word is . . . Plain English*. This booklet, designed by the Plain English Campaign, carried the following message from minister Lord Gowrie:

> The message is simple. Using plain English is the best way to write. The audience will pay more attention to what you have to say if you can capture their interest and if they don't have to waste time unravelling the language.
>
> The first step is also simple. Put yourself in the position of your readers. Then you will see why your letters, minutes or reports will be more acceptable and more convincing if they are written in plain English.

A shorter booklet, called *Making It Plain*, appeared in 1988. Addressed to the civil service as a whole, this booklet bore on its cover the authority of a forceful Prime Minister, Margaret Thatcher. The extract in Panel 3 conveys something of the Thatcher style.

Achievements since the Rayner review in 1982 have been formidable. Government forms have become easier to understand and simpler to complete. Departments have won awards from the Plain English Campaign. According to one source, by 1988

- 125,000 forms had been reviewed
- 27,000 forms had been scrapped
- 41,000 forms had been redesigned
- £14,000,000 had been saved.[34]

[33] *Administrative Forms in Government*, Cmnd 8504 (London: HMSO, 1982), p. 3.

[34] Bernard Saunders, 'Paperwork: A time for Action', *Management Services*, March 1988, pp. 19, 20. See also J. M. Foers, *Forms Design: An International Perspective* (London: Inland Revenue, 1987), p. 39.

Can I say exactly what I mean in plain English?

Of course you can. More to the point, will your reader understand exactly what you mean if you don't use plain English?

The reason for most of your writing is to transmit information or ideas from *your* mind clearly, convincingly and politely to your *reader's* mind. Of course, you may have to use technical terms. But then it is even *more* important to use plain English to explain your ideas.

There's no need to sacrifice accuracy for clarity. Follow Einstein – "I like to make things as simple as possible, but not simpler".

But don't plain words mean more words?

Sometimes, but not often. The real aim is to make your writing quicker to read and easier to understand.

Generally you will find that plain English is shorter. One local authority put its instructions for drawing up contracts into plain English. The old instructions had 3,679 words. The new ones said the same in 1,850 words. What's more, loopholes which had been obscured by jargon in the old instructions were exposed – and closed.

And isn't plain English ugly?

No! The example of tortured officialese on page 1 is hardly beautiful! It's exhausting. You have to unravel the language to find the meaning.

Let thy speech be short, comprehending much in few words

– Ecclesiasticus 32:8

Panel 3 *Making It Plain*

The message that forms and documents could be couched in clear, simple language seems to have been heard by government departments and is getting home to government lawyers. As long ago as 1988, the Inland Revenue published a booklet, *Is it Legal?*, which aimed to encourage designers to prepare forms that the public could understand and complete easily. As the booklet recognised, most of the department's actions were governed by legislation, much of it complex. In designing forms, the department had to act within its powers; and describing difficult concepts in plain English was demanding work. But there was 'no reason why forms written in modern, easily understood English should not be just as valid as their sometimes less comprehensible predecessors'.[35]

As well as simplifying government forms, the United Kingdom government has supported moves to a plainer style of legislative drafting. These moves can be traced to the Renton Committee, established in 1973. The Committee's terms of reference began: 'With a view to achieving greater simplicity and clarity in statute law . . .' Its 1975 report highlighted the complexities in the traditional style of legislative drafting and recommended changes.[36]

The report generated a deal of comment.[37] At first, it seemed as if parliamentary drafters would ignore its recommendations, but slowly the drafting style changed.[38] Further impetus then came in an unexpected guise: reform of taxation laws. The aim was to simplify the tax laws by using plain language, adopting a more logical structure and numbering system, and ensuring greater consistency of definitions.[39] In its *Report and Plans 2005/06*, the project team set out its approach in these terms:

[35] Inland Revenue, *Is it Legal?* (London: HMSO, 1988), p. 3.

[36] *The Preparation of Legislation*, Cmnd 6053 (London: HMSO, 1975).

[37] See Lord Hailsham of St Marylebone, 'Addressing the Statute Law' [1985] *Statute Law Review*, p. 4; Sir William Dale, 'A London Particular' [1985] *Statute Law Review*, p. 11; Lord Simon of Glaisdale, 'The Renton Report – Ten Years On' [1985] *Statute Law Review*, p. 133; Richard Thomas, 'Plain English and the Law' [1985] *Statute Law Review*, p. 139; Justice Nazareth, 'Legislative Drafting: Could our Statutes be made Simpler?' [1987] *Statute Law Review*, p. 81; Sir Patrick Mayhew, 'Can Legislation Ever be Simple, Clear and Certain?' (1990) 11 *Statute Law Review*, p. 1.

[38] Writing in 1990, Lord Renton claimed that 39 of the Report's 81 recommendations had been adopted: 'Current Drafting Practice and Problems in the United Kingdom' (1990) 11 *Statute Law* Review, p. 12.

[39] See [1997] *Solicitors Journal*, p. 920.

> We use colloquial English wherever we can, adopting shorter sentences written using the active, rather than the passive, voice. We replace archaic expressions with more modern ones, taking care not to change the law inadvertently by rewriting words or expressions that have a well understood meaning. We harmonise definitions across the Acts where possible, and then make it easier for the reader to find defined terms. We group similar rules together in one place, and make greater use of signposts to guide the reader to other relevant provisions. And we continue to explore other techniques for making legislation more accessible. These techniques include:
>
> - the use of shorter subsections and sections as well as shorter sentences;
> - method statements;
> - formulas;
> - the use of tables where appropriate;
> - the use of abbreviated references to Acts;
> - the use of lettered conditions;
> - the use of informative labels for definitions wherever possible;
> - our attempt to achieve gender neutral drafting so far as it is practicable to do so at reasonable cost to brevity and intelligibility; and
> - the use of non-statutory explanatory materials such as Explanatory Notes and Tables of Origins and Destinations.
>
> We remain willing to consider new techniques and to develop existing ones if we can improve the legislation still further by doing so.[40]

The original timetable has proved over-ambitious, and the difficulties and delays in the consultation process have seemed irksome.[41] Yet this enormous task, paralleled in Australia and New Zealand, is under way. The first Act to emerge from the process was the *Capital Allowances Act* 2001.[42] One well-known tax lawyer, originally sceptical, was reported as being surprised at how significant an improvement could be made 'just by rewriting'.[43] (Others, including some parliamentary drafters, seem to

[40] See www.hmrc.gov.uk/rewrite.
[41] See (1998) 95/22 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 6.
[42] Discussed in J. Pearce, 'The Capital Allowances Act 2001: A View from the Tax Law Rewrite Project' (2001) 5 *British Tax Review*, p. 359.
[43] See (1999) 96/15 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 8.

remain sceptical.)[44] Similar developments, though perhaps not as yet as dramatic, can be seen in legislative drafting practices in the newly-devolved legislatures of Scotland and Wales.[45]

More recently, the United Kingdom government has supported sweeping changes to the court system in England and Wales. These changes (called the Woolf reforms, after the Lord Chief Justice whose recommendations they implement) included simplifying the language of pleadings and other documents used in court. Lord Woolf had been appointed to review the procedures for civil justice in England and Wales. His work reached fruition in April 1999, when new rules, practice directions and forms came into force. Pre-action protocols were also published.

The changes wrought a revolution in civil procedure. Familiar terms such as *plaintiff*, *ex parte* and *discovery* were discarded, to be replaced by *claimant*, *applications without notice* and *disclosure*. The Civil Procedure Rules themselves are user-friendly and direct, and the new forms are clear and well designed. The rules start with the overriding objective: 'These Rules are a new procedural code with the overriding objective of enabling the court to deal with cases justly.'[46] Proceedings are begun by a claim form rather than by a writ or originating application.[47] Among other things, particulars of claim must include a concise statement of the facts on which the claimant relies.[48] Similar procedures have been produced for employment tribunals.[49]

[44] For example, Brian Hunt, an Irish Parliamentary drafter: 'Plain Language in Legislative Drafting: Is it really the answer?' (2002) 23 *Statute Law Review*, p. 24; 'Plain Language in Legislative Drafting: An Achievable Objective or a Laudable Ideal?' (2003) 24 *Statute Law Review*, p. 112.

[45] See John McCluskie, 'New Approaches to UK Legislative Drafting: The View from Scotland' (2004) 25 *Statute Law Review*, p. 136; Keith Bush, 'New Approaches to UK Legislative Drafting: The Welsh Perspective' (2004) 25 *Statute Law Review*, p. 144.

[46] Civil Procedure Rules 1998 (SI 1998 No. 3132 L 17), r 1.1(1). This bold beginning echoes the admirably drafted s 1 of the *Arbitration Act* 1996 (England and Wales), which sets out succinctly the principles of arbitration. For praise of the *Arbitration Act*, see A. Samuels, 'How to Do it Properly: The Arbitration Act 1996' (1997) 18 *Statute Law Review*, p. 58.

[47] Rule 7.2(1).

[48] Rule 16.4(1)(a).

[49] *Employment Tribunals (Constitution and Rules of Procedure) Regulations* 2004 (SI 2004 No. 1861).

Australia

The plain language movement in Australia began in the 1970s. Its acknowledged leader since those days has been Dr Robert Eagleson, formerly Professor of English at the University of Sydney. In an article in 1985, Dr Eagleson pointed out that writing plainly was not something invented in the twentieth century. Of the 'reinstatement' of plain language in Australia, he said:

> The first tangible sign of revival came in 1974 when Sentry Life Insurance Co and Nationwide Mutual Insurance Co released their plain language car and house insurance policies. Only two years later in 1976 and four years before a similar development in the UK, the National Roads and Motorists' Association (NRMA) in New South Wales produced the first of its Plain English insurance policies. The next year the Real Estate Institute produced its residential and commercial leases in Plain English.[50]

Since those early days, many Australian insurance, banking and investment companies have produced policies and related documents in plain English.[51]

In 1983, Dr Guy Powles told an Australian Senate enquiry into national language policy of the grave need for a major study of legal English in Australia. The purpose was to find out how much was gobbledegook, mere professional jargon, or pompous officialese; how much was designed to obscure meaning or to deceive; what were the language requirements of an effective and fair legal system; and what policies and actions were needed to meet these requirements.[52] The 1984 Senate report which followed

[50] Robert Eagleson, 'The Plain English Debate in Australia', Festschrift in honour of Arthur Delbridge, 48 (1985) *Beiträge zur Phonetik und Linguistik*, p. 143.

[51] For a critique of one of these policies (the personal investment and superannuation investment policy 'Executive Dimension' issued by Norwich Union Life Australia), see Bryan Dwyer, 'A Clear Policy: Plain English and Life Insurance' (1993) 19 *Monash Uni Law Review*, p. 335. Dwyer concludes that the complexity of the investment market may make it impossible for some consumers to understand even a plain language policy, but that 'clear drafting in plain English . . . represents a long stride in the right direction' (at p. 342).

[52] Reported in Victorian Parliament, *Plain English Legislation* (Melbourne, 1985) extract from parliamentary debates, Ministerial statement by J. H. Kennan, 7 May 1985, p. 3.

recommended setting up a national task force to look into ways to reform legal language.[53] The recommendation was never implemented.

A decisive step was taken on 7 May 1985, when the Hon J. H. Kennan, Attorney-General of Victoria, made a ministerial statement to the Victorian Legislative Council 'on the matter of plain English'. After expressing the Victorian government's commitment to clear legislative drafting, he set out what he referred to as a 'new format' for drafting bills. This he modestly called 'Kennanisation'.[54] He said:

> In a sense, however, the steps which have been taken so far represent only the tip of the iceberg . . . What needs to happen now is to have a process whereby Parliamentary Counsel draft Bills, and legislation officers draft subordinate legislation, from the outset in plain English. This requires a radical departure from tradition and a break with the thinking of the past. It requires imagination, a spirit of adventure and a boldness not normally associated with the practice of law or with the drafting of legislation or subordinate legislation. I am confident, however, that under the leadership of the Chief Parliamentary Counsel we have cause for optimism in Victoria.[55]

Following this statement, Kennan referred the question of plain English in legislation and other government communications to the Law Reform Commission of Victoria. In August 1986, the Commission issued a discussion paper, *Legislation, Legal Rights and Plain English*.[56] In a general review of the topic, it made the following valuable points:

- Quality of information is more important than quantity. Attempts to cover all possible contingencies can be counterproductive.
- A plain English document strives to be eminently readable, in the sense of ease of absorption.

[53] Senate Standing Committee on Education, *A National Language Policy* (1984), para 3.17. The report is discussed in 'Legalese and Courtspeak' (1985) 59 *Australian Law Journal*, pp. 189–91.

[54] For judicial castigation of 'Kennanisation', see *Halwood Corporation Ltd v Roads Corporation* [1998] 2 VR 439 at 446 (Tadgell JA).

[55] *Plain English Legislation*, p. 7.

[56] The paper is discussed (and defended) by the Commission's chairperson, David St L. Kelly, in 'Legislative Drafting and Plain English' (1986) 10 *Adelaide Law Review*, p. 409.

- Plain language is concerned with communication and efficiency. It aims to produce documents which the intended audience can easily read and readily understand.
- Any division between content and language is artificial.
- Writers should bear in mind the way that readers approach their task, especially the way that readers react to abstract material.
- The major source of incomprehensibility is not technical words but convoluted structures, incoherent organisation, and a perspective which ignores the real audience.

The discussion paper led in June 1987 to the most comprehensive and scholarly treatment of the topic ever published: *Plain English and the Law* (Report No. 9 of the Law Reform Commission of Victoria).[57] It ran to four volumes. The first volume was the report itself; the second was a drafting manual; the third (and largest) was a redraft of the company takeovers code;[58] and the fourth contained redrafts of other forms and supplementary material. Volume 3 (the takeovers code) had two aims: to show that legislation, even on the most complex subject, could be written in plain language; and to show that the traditional style of legislative drafting could be substantially improved without loss of precision.

After analysing drafting defects in legislation enacted by the Victorian Parliament in 1985 and 1986, the Commission made a powerful plea for what it called the 'plain English approach to communication':

> 'Plain English' involves the use of plain, straightforward language which avoids these defects and conveys its meaning as clearly and simply as possible, without unnecessary pretension or embellishment. It is to be contrasted with convoluted, repetitive and prolix language. The adoption of a plain English style demands simply that a document be written in a style which readily conveys its message to its audience. However, plain English is not concerned simply with the forms of language. Because its theme is communication, it calls for improvements in the organisation of the material and the method by which it is presented. It requires that material is presented in a sequence which the audience would expect and which helps the audience absorb the information.

[57] The Irish Law Reform Commission has undertaken a similar study: *Report on Statutory Drafting and Interpretation: Plain Language and the Law* (December 2000; LRC 61–2000).

[58] See D. St L. Kelly, 'The Takeovers Code: A Failure in Communication' (1987) 5 *Company and Securities Law Journal*, p. 219.

> It also requires that a document's design be as attractive as possible in order to assist readers to find their way through it.[59]

As with the extract from the UK National Consumer Council quoted earlier in this chapter, the unstated assumption is that the audience is the client or lay person who uses the document, not a lawyer or a judge.

Another significant step occurred in 1990, when the Law Foundation Centre for Plain Legal Language was established at Sydney University's Faculty of Law. The Centre's stated aim was 'to promote the study and use of plain language in public and private legal documents (including legislation and official forms)'.[60] The Centre produced some substantial plain English legal documents, and conducted training programs in plain language legal drafting for judges, practising lawyers and law students. Three of its activities merit special mention. The first was its monthly 'words and phrases' column in the New South Wales *Law Society Journal*. Each month, the Centre chose a 'traditional' legal word or phrase, researched the interpretation it had received in the courts, and then suggested a plain English equivalent that would capture the legal nuances of the original.[61] The second was its work on the design of legislation, a joint project with the New South Wales Parliamentary Counsel's Office. This project dealt with matters such as typography, headings, running heads, white space, page size, text layout, numbering systems, and text justification, in an effort to produce a format that was both attractive and readable.[62] Most of the recommendations have been adopted in New South Wales statutes. The third was the Centre's research on the economic benefits of plain English documents – the subject of much anecdote but limited evidence. The resulting

[59] Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Report No. 9: Plain English and the Law* (Melbourne, 1987), vol. 1, p. 45.

[60] For an introduction to the Centre's activities, see 'Eliminating Legalese: New Body to Clear the Fog from Legal Documents' (1992) 3 *New South Wales Law Society Journal*, p. 77.

[61] Words and phrases researched in this way included: *aid and abet*; *deemed*; *escrow*; *estate or interest*; *fit and proper*; *force majeure*; *give, devise and bequeath*; *goods and chattels*; *heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns*; *joint and several*; *last will and testament*; *notwithstanding*; *null and void*; *per stirpes*; *pro bono*; *provided that*; *rest, residue and remainder*; *right, title and interest*; *said*; *signed, sealed and delivered*; *time of the essence*; *whereas*; *without prejudice*. The Centre's collected articles are published as *Law Words* (Sydney: Centre for Plain Legal Language, 1995).

[62] The Centre's results were published in a discussion paper, *Review and Design of NSW Legislation* (Sydney: NSW Parliamentary Counsel's Office, 1994).

publication makes a strong case that plain language documents are far more efficient than their traditional counterparts.[63]

In 2004, the Plain English Foundation was established in Australia. Its two co-founders hold doctorates in English.[64] The Foundation conducts seminars and workshops in legal arms of government in a number of Australian states, and has redrafted court forms and procedure manuals into plain English. They have proposed future research activities and publications,[65] which may well build on the research efforts of organisations such as the Centre for Plain Legal Language.

In the 1990s, Australian parliamentary drafters began to adopt a plain language drafting style. This was a marked departure from the former style of Australian legislative drafting – a style which mirrored, perhaps even surpassed, the complexities of traditional drafting in other English-speaking countries.[66] Indeed, the move to simplicity has been so marked that legislative drafters now use techniques far in advance of those commonly used in the private legal profession. Ground-breaking efforts were the *Local Government Act* 1993 (New South Wales)[67] and the *Land Title Act* 1994

[63] For the results of the research, see *The Gains from Clarity* (Sydney: Centre for Microeconomic Policy Analysis, Centre for Plain Legal Language, and Law Foundation of NSW, 1996).

[64] Neil James and Peta Spear.

[65] Unpublished conference paper by Dr Neil James, 'Plain Language in Australia', presented at 2005 Clarity conference, Université du Littoral, Boulogne-sur-mer, July 2005.

[66] Research by the Law Reform Commission of Victoria indicated the number of years of formal education required to comprehend some traditionally drawn Australian statutes: for example, income tax legislation (27 years: *Australian Financial Review*, 27 September 1991, p. 19); dividing fences legislation (29 years: Richard Wright, Executive Director of the Commission, 'I'm not from here, I just live here', unpublished paper, 7 September 1990, pp. 2–3); credit legislation (22 years: ibid., pp. 3–6); and in vitro fertilisation legislation (32 years: ibid., pp. 6–7). Similar results have been found in New Zealand: L. Tan and G. Tower, 'The Readability of Tax Laws: An Empirical Study in New Zealand' (1992) 9 *Australian Tax Forum* 355. To give parliamentary drafters their due, the overly complex style was partly a response to the excessively literalist approach of the Australian High Court in the 1960s and 1970s, particularly in cases involving income tax legislation. See the impenetrable tax provisions that bewildered Australia's highest court in *Hepples v Commissioner of Taxation* (1992) 173 CLR 492.

[67] The relevant minister, when introducing the Bill into parliament, described it as 'in a format which breaks new ground in Australia and which will be understood by all who need to see it' (G. Peacocke, NSW Legislative Assembly, *Parliamentary Debates*, 11 March 1993, p. 724). This may have been a biased view. However, Justice Michael Kirby (now of the Australian High Court) later described the Act as a 'paragon in our midst' (book review of *Decisions, Decisions*, by Justices Mailhot and Carnwath, (1999) 73 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 292). A

(Queensland).[68] Both demonstrated how complex concepts could be stated clearly and precisely in plain English. At Commonwealth level, the change in style began hesitantly,[69] but it is now entrenched.[70] Illustrations of the new drafting techniques can be seen in two Commonwealth projects to simplify legislative language in the complex areas of corporations law and taxation. Both projects have produced substantial working papers and discussion papers, setting out their drafting techniques and inviting public comment.[71] Both have now resulted in legislation that is simple and direct, a far cry from the conventional style of their predecessors. Both have also spawned a welter of published comment, some favourable and some critical.[72] The taxation law project inspired similar projects in the United Kingdom, as we have seen, and in New Zealand.[73] Yet despite these achievements, research has shown that more work needs to be done on improving the readability of Australian

number of the Act's drafting innovations appear to have been inspired by the draft Alberta *Municipal Government Act*, mentioned below (see p. 108).

[68] For the views of the Act's drafter, see J. Leahy, 'The Advantages of Plain Legal Language', unpublished conference paper, 29th Australian Legal Convention, Brisbane, 26 September 1995.

[69] See I. Turnbull, 'Legislative Drafting – Use of Plain English' [1987] *Australian Current Law*, p. 36,047; and compare Turnbull, 'Clear Legislative Drafting: New Approaches in Australia' (1991) 11 *Statute Law Review*, p. 161; Turnbull, 'Legislative Drafting in Plain Language and Statements of General Principle' (1997) 18 *Statute Law Review*, p. 21; D. Murphy, 'Plain Language in a Legislative Drafting Office' (1995) 33 *Clarity*, p. 3; D. Berry, 'Legislative Drafting: Could our Statutes be Simpler?' [1987] *Statute Law Review*, p. 92.

[70] For an assessment of the extent to which Commonwealth legislative drafters follow their own precepts, see E. Tanner, 'Legislating to Communicate: Trends in Drafting Commonwealth Legislation' (2002) 24 *Sydney Law Review*, p. 529. Tanner performs the same assessment on Victorian legislative drafters, in E. Tanner, 'Communication Strategies: Understanding the *Racial and Religious Tolerance Act* 2001 (Vic)' (2003) 27 *Melbourne University Law Review*, p. 139.

[71] For examples, see *Second Corporate Law Simplification Bill: Exposure Draft, Volume 1, Provisions* (Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service, 1995); *Tax Law Improvement Project: Exposure Draft No. 9* (Canberra: Australian Government Publishing Service, 1997).

[72] See, for example, 'Tarting up the tax law' (various authors) (1995) 30 *Taxation in Australia*, p. 172; Peter Cowdroy, 'Dross into Gloss?', ibid., p. 187; David Evans, 'The Emperor's New Clothes', ibid., p. 192; Cynthia Coleman, 'Major Tax Simplification Begins' (1997) 35 *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (March), p. 46; Bin Tran-Nam, 'Tax Reform and Tax Simplification: Some Conceptual Issues and a Preliminary Assessment' (1999) 21 *Sydney Law Review*, p. 500. For views of the leaders of the tax project, see Brian Nolan and Tom Reid, 'Re-writing the Tax Act' (1994) 22 *Federal Law Review*, p. 448.

[73] See papers from the 1996 Tax Drafting Conference (held in Auckland, New Zealand), published in (1997) 3 *New Zealand Journal of Taxation Law and Policy*, pp. 153 ff. Much of the plain language rewrite has now been enacted: see *Income Tax Act* 2004 (NZ); Margaret

legislation. A recent readability study finds that some recent Australian tax legislation still falls below acceptable levels.[74]

The Law Societies of some of the Australian states have established plain language committees, along the lines of similar Bar Association committees in the United States of America (discussed below). The Queensland committee helped publish a book on clear drafting.[75] The New South Wales committee – now sadly defunct – helped to engender change in the local profession's drafting habits.[76] Its chairperson has written a successful text on the use of plain language in law.[77] The New South Wales Law Society has produced a plain language style manual,[78] along with a number of plain English documents now in common use. They include a contract for the sale of land, a commercial lease, and an agreement for the sale of business. The Society was also successful in persuading the New South Wales legislature to enact simplified forms of easement. Panel 4 (p. 100) shows the result, now enshrined in the *Conveyancing Act* 1919 (NSW).[79]

The United States

In the United States, isolated plain language documents have been appearing since the mid-1970s.[80] To cite one example, the traditional form of eviction notice in Detroit formerly (and formally) began: 'PLEASE TAKE NOTICE,

Nixon, 'Rewriting the Income Tax Act' (2004) 52 *Clarity*, p. 22. On the state of drafting in New Zealand generally, see J. Burrows, 'Statutes and the Ordinary Person' (2003) 11 *Waikato Law Review*, p. 1.

74 G. Richardson and D. Smith, 'The Readability of Australia's Goods and Services Tax Legislation: An Empirical Investigation' (2002) 30 *Federal Law Review*, p. 475.

75 R. Macdonald and D. Clark-Dickson, *Clear and Precise: Writing skills for today's lawyer* (Queensland Law Society, CLE section, 2000).

76 For some of the committee's activities, see M. Asprey, 'Trend Overwhelmingly in Favour of Plain Language, Survey Shows' (1994) *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (October), p. 70; M. Asprey, 'Lawyers Prefer Plain Language, Survey Finds' (1994) *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (November), p. 76.

77 Michèle Asprey, *Plain Language for Lawyers* (Sydney: Federation Press, 3rd edn, 2003).

78 Law Society of New South Wales, *Style Manual for Lawyers* (Sydney, 1997).

79 However, why the heading of the new version ('Easement for drainage of sewage') was thought to be an improvement on the original ('Easement to drain sewage') remains a mystery.

80 They include insurance policies, bank mortgages and promissory notes, contracts for the sale of land, wills, and leases. See R. W. Benson, 'The End of Legalese: The Game is Over' (1984–85) 13 *NYU Review of Law and Social Change*, pp. 564–5.

Part 4 Easement to drain sewage

Full and free right for the body in whose favour this easement is created, and every person authorised by it, from time to time and at all times by means of pipes to drain sewage and other waste material and fluid in any quantities across and through the land herein indicated as the servient tenement, together with the right to use, for the purposes of the easement, any line of pipes already laid within the servient tenement for the purpose of draining sewage or any pipe or pipes in replacement or in substitution therefor and where no such line of pipes exists, to lay, place and maintain a line of pipes of sufficient internal diameter beneath or upon the surface of the servient tenement and together with the right for the body in whose favour this easement is created and every person authorised by it, with any tools, implements, or machinery, necessary for the purpose, to enter upon the servient tenement and to remain there for any reasonable time for the purpose of laying, inspecting, cleansing, repairing, maintaining, or renewing such pipe line or any part thereof and for any of the aforesaid purposes to open the soil of the servient tenement to such extent as may be necessary provided that the body in whose favour this easement is created and the persons authorised by it will take all reasonable precautions to ensure as little disturbance as possible to the surface of the servient tenement and will restore that surface as nearly as practicable to its original condition.

Part 6 Easement for drainage of sewage

1 The body having the benefit of this easement may:

(a) drain sewage, sullage and other fluid wastes in pipes through each lot burdened, but only within the site of this easement, and

(b) do anything reasonably necessary for that purpose, including:

- entering the lot burdened, and
- taking anything on to the lot burdened, and
- using any existing line of pipes, and
- carrying out works, such as constructing, placing, repairing or maintaining pipes and equipment.

2 In exercising those powers, the body having the benefit of this easement must:

(a) ensure all work is done properly, and

(b) cause as little inconvenience as is practicable to the owner and any occupier of the lot burdened, and

(c) cause as little damage as is practicable to the lot burdened and any improvement on it, and

(d) restore the lot burdened as nearly as is practicable to its former condition, and

(e) make good any collateral damage.

Panel 4 Examples of plain statutory drafting from New South Wales *Conveyancing Act* (**Part 4** is the original; **Part 6** is the plain English redraft)

That you are hereby required to quit, surrender and deliver up possession to me of the premises hereinafter described . . .' The new plain language version begins: 'Your landlord or landlady wants to evict you.'[81] Plain language contracts for sale and mortgages are used, though not as widely as in England and Australia.[82]

The year 1978 was a notable one for plain English in the United States. On 23 March, President Carter signed Executive Order No 12044 which (among other things) required federal agencies to ensure that regulations were written in plain English and could be understood by those who had to comply with them. Then on 1 November the New York State plain English law reached the statute book: see Panel 5 (p. 102). The law became known as the Sullivan law, named after Assembly member Peter Sullivan who sponsored it through the legislature. While not itself a model of clarity and simplicity, the statute required residential leases and consumer contracts to be 'written in a clear and coherent manner using words with common and every day meanings'.[83] Other states later passed similar laws, and numerous states have regulations setting standards for plain English in insurance policies and consumer documents.[84] Contraventions of these statutes often result in documents, or parts of documents (such as exclusion clauses in insurance policies), being unenforceable.[85] Of course, state plain language laws are subject to normal constitutional restraints, which may lead to their downfall at the hands of inconsistent federal laws.[86]

[81] Ibid., pp. 566–7.

[82] For the development of a mortgage, see Browne, 'Development of the FNMA/FHLMC Plain Language Mortgage Documents – Some Useful Techniques' (1979) 14 *Real Property Probate and Trust Journal*, p. 696.

[83] For contemporary assessments of the New York law's success, see Walter Kretz, 'The Plain English Law' (1978) 23 *New York Law School Law Review*, p. 824; Richard Givens, 'The "Plain English" Law' (1978) 50 *New York State Bar Journal*, p. 479; Rosemary Moukad, 'New York's Plain English Law' (1980) 8 *Fordham Urban Law Journal*, p. 451.

[84] For a comprehensive list (as at 1992), see Joseph Kimble, 'Plain English: A Charter for Clear Writing' (1992) 9 *Thomas M. Cooley Law Review*, pp. 31–7. See also James Dayananda, 'Plain English in the United States' (1986) 5 *English Today*, p. 14; G. Hathaway, 'An Overview of the Plain English Movement for Lawyers' (1983) 62 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 945.

[85] As in *Fleming v United Services Automobile Association* 988 P 2d 378 (Oregon, 1999), varied 996 P 2d 501 (Oregon, 2000): exclusion clause in insurance policy unenforceable for breaching Oregon statute specifying font size and type for headings that restrict coverage.

[86] Andrew Sarapas, 'Amending Maine's Plain Language Law to Ensure Complete Disclosure to Consumers Signing Arbitration Contracts' (1998) 50 *Maine Law Review*, p. 85.

Senate and Assembly, do enact as follows:

5-702. Requirements for use of plain language in consumer transactions.

(a) Every written agreement entered into after November first, nineteen hundred seventy-eight, for the lease of space to be occupied for residential purposes, or to which a consumer is a party and the money, property or service which is the subject of the transaction is primarily for personal, family or household purposes must be:

1. Written in a clear and coherent manner using words with common and every day meanings;

2. Appropriately divided and captioned by its various sections.

Any creditor, seller or lessor who fails to comply with this subdivision shall be liable to a consumer who is a party to a written agreement governed by this subdivision in an amount equal to any actual damages sustained plus a penalty of fifty dollars. The total class action penalty against any such creditor, seller or lessor shall not exceed ten thousand dollars in any class action or series of class actions arising out of the use by a creditor, seller or lessor of an agreement which fails to comply with this subdivision. No action under this subdivision may be brought after both parties to the agreement have fully performed their obligation under such agreement, nor shall any creditor, seller or lessor who attempts in good faith to comply with this subdivision be liable for such penalties. This subdivision shall not apply to agreements involving amounts in excess of fifty thousand dollars nor prohibit the use of words or phrases or forms of agreement required by state or federal law, rule or regulation or by a governmental instrumentality.

(b) A violation of the provisions of subdivision (a) of this section shall not render any such agreement void or voidable nor shall it constitute:

1. A defense to any action or proceeding to enforce such agreement; or

2. A defense to any action or proceeding for breach of such agreement.

(c) In addition to the above, whenever the attorney general finds that there has been a violation of this section, he may proceed as provided in subdivision twelve of section sixty-three of the executive law.

2. This act shall take effect immediately.

Panel 5 New York plain English law

While some American lawyers supported the introduction of legislation 'mandating' plain English, others were less positive.[87] One leading commentator, Reed Dickerson, saw its main value as symbolic and its main virtue as giving the legal profession and the law schools a 'solid legislative jolt'.[88] He pointed out that readability is not the same as clarity of substance. Also, the 'good faith' defence available under the New York law (and similar statutes) rendered the law largely impotent, since most bad drafters operated in good faith. In his view, better drafting would only come with better law school education. Until then, legislation mandating plain English legislation was merely a useful temporary expedient.[89]

Another leading US commentator, Carl Felsenfeld, made the fundamental point that language is only one aspect of plain English. Speaking in 1978, he said that what really mattered was the *substance* of the document. This was particularly important where documents were built up, cumulatively, over a number of years. The process by which clauses were added was undisciplined: business people generally accepted a new phrase or paragraph on their lawyer's advice that it was desirable, and clauses once added tended

[87] Supporters included: Richard A. Givens, 'The "Plain English" Law' (1978) 50 *New York State Bar Journal*, p. 479; Walter A. Kretz Jr, 'The Plain English Law: "Let the Buyer be Aware"' (1977–78) 23 *New York Law School Law Review*, p. 824. For a knee-jerk reaction, see Prather, 'In Defense of the People's Use of Three Syllable Words' (1978) 39 *Alabama Lawyer*, p. 394. For more insightful criticisms, see John Forshey, 'Plain English Contracts: The Demise of Legalese?' (1978) 30 *Baylor Law Review*, p. 765; Stephen M. Ross, 'On Legalities and Linguistics: Plain Language Legislation' (1981) 30 *Buffalo Law Review*, p. 317; Burt Leete, 'Plain Language Legislation: A Comparison of Approaches' (1981) 18 *American Business Law Journal*, p. 511; David S. Cohen, 'Comment on the Plain English Movement' (1981–82) 6 *Canadian Business Law Journal*, p. 421; Gertrude Block, 'Plain Language Laws: Promise v Performance' (1983) 62 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 950; James Wetter, 'Plain Language in Pennsylvania: Fading Issue or Development on the Horizon?' (1985) 89 *Dickinson Law Review*, p. 441; Harold A. Lloyd, 'Plain Language Statutes: Plain Good Sense or Plain Nonsense?' (1986) 78 *Law Library Journal*, p. 683; Barbara Child, *Drafting Legal Documents*, 2nd edn (St Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Co., 1992), ch 8. David LaPrairie, in 'Taking the "Plain Language" Movement Too Far: The Michigan Legislature's Unnecessary Application of the Plain Language Doctrine to Consumer Contracts' (2000) 45 *Wayne Law Review*, p. 1927, has argued that laws mandating plain language in consumer documents have been rendered superfluous by developments in consumer protection laws and the general principles of unconscionability. But this argument, in our view, misinterprets the main purposes of drafting in plain language.

[88] *Materials on Legal Drafting* (St Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Co., 1981), p. 260.

[89] Ibid., p. 262, originally in 'Should Plain English be Legislated?', *Plain English in a Complex Society* (The Poynter Center, Indiana University, 1980), p. 19.

to remain. In Felsenfeld's view, the plain English movement required a new approach. Documents should be analysed against the specific transaction and the protection required. Many traditional legal provisions might then be found to be unnecessary.[90]

Alan Siegel had spoken on the same theme two months before.[91] He had also urged the use of a number of techniques now common in plain language documents: the active voice rather than the passive; shorter sentences; contractions; the 'we' and 'you' style; examples to clarify complex ideas; and good document design.

Since those early days, a number of Bar Associations have lent their support to the plain language movement. In 1989, the California Bar Association urged its members to use plain legal language.[92] Lest this be dismissed as a Californian eccentricity, the Bar Associations of Michigan, Pennsylvania and Texas established plain language committees, aimed at promoting clear drafting practices among lawyers. For some years the Texas committee published annual 'Legaldegook Awards' for delightfully atrocious legal writing.[93] The Michigan and Texas bar association journals both published regular plain language columns. Under the leadership of Professor Barbara Child, the University of Florida established a compulsory course in plain language drafting for all law students, and many law schools now offer courses on the same subject.[94] American literature on plain legal language abounds.[95]

[90] Reproduced in Dickerson, *Materials on Legal Drafting*, p. 266.

[91] Conference of Experts in Clear Legal Drafting, National Center for Administrative Justice, Washington DC (June 1978), reproduced in ibid., p. 294.

[92] Resolution 135 of 1989.

[93] Its 1991 awards included: the 'Rise-of-the-Roman-Language Award' for pervasive use of Latin; the 'Serpentine Sentence Award' for a 174-word behemoth; and the 'Not Unnegative Award' for the most negatives confusingly placed. The 1992 awards included: the 'She-Sells-Seashells Award' for lilting legislative alliteration (citing the definition of 'reshippers' in the *Texas Administrative Code*: 'Reshippers – Persons who transship shucked shellfish in original containers, or shellstock, from certified shellfish shippers'); the 'Foggy Footnote Award'; the 'Save-the-Period-Award' for minimal use of full stops; and the 'Herculean Headnote Award'.

[94] Professor Child's teaching materials are published as Child, *Drafting Legal Documents*.

[95] Notable contributions include: Benson, 'The End of Legalese: The Game is Over' (1984–85) 13 *Review of Law and Social Change*, p. 519; George D. Gopen, 'The State of Legal Writing: *Res Ipsa Loquitur*' (1987) 86 *Michigan Law Review*, p. 333; Benson and Kessler, 'Legalese v. Plain English: An Empirical Study of Persuasion and Credibility in Appellate Brief Writing'

In August 1992 the Legal Writing Institute – the organisation of legal writing teachers in American law schools – formally resolved to urge its 950 members to work with their respective Bar Associations to establish plain language committees along the lines of those in Texas and Michigan. The Institute also passed a 'Plain Language Resolution', which included the following:

(1) The way lawyers write has been a source of complaint about lawyers for more than four centuries.
(2) The language used by lawyers should agree with the common speech, unless there are reasons for a difference.
(3) Legalese is unnecessary and no more precise than plain language.
(4) Plain language is an important part of good legal writing.
(5) Plain language means language that is clearly and readily understandable to the intended readers.[96]

Despite this activity, change has been slow in the United States compared with some other common law countries. Generally speaking, United States lawyers have seemed reluctant to move to a plainer, more direct drafting style. Certainly they have lagged behind developments in countries such as England, Canada and Australia. That said, a number of recent developments may yet engender a willingness to consider change. In 1998, President Clinton issued an Executive Order requiring federal government documents to be in plain language.[97] In the same year, the Securities and Exchange Commission announced rules requiring some parts of prospectuses to be in plain language, and issued a handbook with guidelines for writing in

(1987) 20 *Loyola of LA Law Review*, p. 301; Kimble, 'Plain English: A Charter for Clear Writing' (1992) 9 *Thomas M. Cooley Law Review*, p. 1; Kimble, 'Answering the Critics of Plain Language' (1994–95) 5 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 51.

[96] *The Second Draft* (Bulletin of The Legal Writing Institute), vol. 8, No. 1, 1992.

[97] The text is at <http://www.plainlanguage.gov/whatisPL/govmandates/memo.cfm>; it is also reproduced in (1998) 42 *Clarity*, p. 2. See also Al Gore, *Memorandum Implementing the Presidential Memorandum on Plain Language* (29 July 1998), with guidelines reproduced at <http://www.plainlanguage.gov/howto/guidelines/PresMemoGuidelines.cfm>. The Plain Language Action Network was established as part of the initiative: its website is at <www.plainlanguage.gov>; see Annetta Cheek, 'The Plain Language Experience of the National Partnership for Reinventing Government' (2001) 105 *Dickinson Law Review*, p. 233.

Table 1 'Before' and 'after' examples of US Federal Court Rules

Original	Restyled
Rule 8(2)(e)	
When two or more statements are made in the alternative and one of them if made independently would be sufficient, the pleading is not made insufficient by the insufficiency of one or more of the alternative statements.	If a party makes alternative statements, the pleading is sufficient if any one of them is sufficient.
Rule 71	
When an order is made in favor of a person who is not a party to the action, that person may enforce obedience to the order by the same process as if a party; and, when obedience to an order may be lawfully enforced against a person who is not a party, that person is liable to the same process for enforcing obedience to the order as if a party.	When an order grants relief for a non-party or may be enforced against a non-party, the procedure for enforcing the order is the same as for a party.

plain language.[98] Then, in 1999, the American Bar Association resolved to urge agencies 'to use plain language in writing regulations, as a means of promoting the understanding of legal obligations'.[99] Many federal agencies now have plain-language programs.[100]

In addition, for some years the Federal Court has been redrafting its rules of appellate procedure, under the guidance of two of the United States'

[98] See Isaac C. Hunt, 'Plain English – Changing the Corporate Culture' (1997) 51 *University of Miami Law Review*, p. 713; Kenneth B. Firtel, 'Plain English: A Reappraisal of the Intended Audience of Disclosure under the Securities Act of 1933' (1999) 72 *Southern California Law Review*, p. 851; Michael G. Byers, 'Eschew Obfuscation – The Merits of the SEC's Plain English Doctrine' (2000) 31 *University of Memphis Law Review*, p. 135; T. Clyde, 'Plain Language Turns the Corner: New SEC Rules for Prospectuses' (1998) 42 *Clarity*, pp. 9–14. The handbook is available at <http:www.sec.gov/pdf/handbook.pdf>. The regulations are at 17 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) secs 230.421(b) and (d).

[99] Resolution of American Bar Association, adopted by House of Delegates, 9–10 August, 1999. The text is at <www.plainlanguage.gov/populartopics/regulations/aba.cfm>.

[100] For links and details, see <http://www.plainlanguage.gov/community/usfed.cfm>.

leading exponents of plain language drafting, Bryan A. Garner and Professor Joseph Kimble.[101] To illustrate the improvements, two 'before and after' examples are reproduced on p. 107.[102]

Canada

For the past twenty-five years, Canadians have been active in promoting the use of plain language in law.[103] From the late 1980s to the mid-1990s, a number of Canadian organisations urged lawyers and those working in law-related fields to use plain language.[104] The Plain Language Institute in Vancouver, and the Plain Language Project in Vancouver, both staffed by lawyers and funded by government and the legal profession, conducted substantial research into the use of plain language in law.[105] In Toronto for some years the Canadian Legal Information Centre had a Plain Language Centre, which maintained an extensive library and ran training courses across the country in plain language drafting.[106] Unfortunately, cuts in government funding later resulted in all three organisations closing.

At the professional level, the Law Society of Upper Canada published a book in 1990 urging the use of plain legal language.[107] In 1991 the Canadian

[101] See B. Garner, *Guidelines for Drafting and Editing Court Rules* (US Govt Printing Office, 1997). Garner's other leading texts include: *The Elements of Legal Style* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1991); *Dictionary of Modern Legal Usage*, 2nd edn (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001); *The Winning Brief* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1999).

[102] Taken from J. Kimble, 'Guiding Principles for Restyling the Federal Rules of Civil Procedure (Part 1)' (2005) 84 *Michigan Bar Journal*, pp. 56–7.

[103] Early articles include: Robert Dick, 'Plain English in Legal Drafting' (1980) 18 *Alberta Law Review*, p. 509; David Elliott, 'What is Plain English?' (1990) 11 *Statute Law Review*, p. 237, a response to Justice Crabbe, 'The Legislative Sentence' (1989) 10 *Statute Law Review*, p. 79; Susan Krongold, 'Writing Laws: Making Them Easier to Understand' (1992) 24 *Ottawa Law Review*, p. 495.

[104] See David Elliott, 'Plain Language Initiative: A Canadian Trend' [1991] *International Legal Practitioner*, p. 19.

[105] Notable publications of the Plain Language Institute included the following (all undated): *Legislating the Use of Plain Language: An Overview*; *Critical Opinions: the Public's View of Legal Documents*; *Language Issues for Service Agencies and their Clients*; *Editorial and Design Stylebook*; *Plain Language at City Hall*; *So People can Understand* (extracts published in *Clarity* 30 (1994), pp. 6–8, 13). An important publication of the Plain Language Project was its *Plain Language Wills* (undated).

[106] See the Centre's *Plain Language Resource Materials* (1990).

[107] T. Perrin, *Better Writing for Lawyers* (1990).

Bar Association resolved (in incongruously archaic terms)[108] to encourage banks and other large organisations to use plain language, and urged law schools and Bar Associations to promote its use. The association also issued a report jointly with the Canadian Bankers Association, entitled *The Decline and Fall of Gobbledygook*, strongly recommending the use of plain language in banking documents.

In 1992 the Alberta Law Reform Institute released plain language versions of a number of documents as part of its Plain Language Initiative. The initiative aimed to demonstrate to Albertan lawyers the advantages of drafting legal documents in plain language. Part of the aim was to overcome the legal profession's perception that plain legal language was a good idea but unworkable in practice.[109] The documents included a will, a bank guarantee, and an enduring power of attorney.

Canadian legislative drafters have long decried the traditional style of statutes,[110] although they appear to have had some difficulty in translating their progressive ideas into actual legislation. An early plain language statute was the *Financial Consumers Act* 1990 of Alberta (now the *Financial Consumers Act*, R.S.A. 2000). The purpose of the Act, as stated in s 1, is 'to encourage the use of readily understandable language in the financial marketplace'. Section 13 requires certain financial documents to be in 'readily understandable language and form'. The statute practises what it preaches, its language and layout ably illustrating modern plain language techniques.[111] In 1991, the Alberta Municipal Statutes Review Committee proposed a new *Municipal Government Act* which, if adopted, would have broken new ground in Canadian statutory drafting.[112] The draft included devices such as purpose statements, headings framed as questions, notes

[108] Resolution M-08–91, 'Plain Language Documentation'. The text is available at <http://www.plainlanguagenetwork.org/Organizations/cbares.html>.

[109] Discussion Paper, 'Plain-Language Consumer Contracts: A Benefit for Consumers and Business Alike' (Alberta Consumer and Corporate Affairs, 1991).

[110] Leading writers are Elmer Driedger, whose works include *The Composition of Legislation* (Ottawa: Dept of Justice, 1976); *A Manual of Instructions for Legislative and Legal Writing* (Ottawa: Dept of Justice, 1982); 'Legislative Drafting' (1949) 27 *Canadian Bar Review*, p. 291; and Robert C. Dick, *Legal Drafting in Plain Language*, 3rd edn (Toronto: Thomson Canada, 1995).

[111] The statute is discussed in David Elliott, 'Legislating Plain Language' (1992) 17 *Clarity*, p. 6. See also David Elliott, 'A Model Plain-Language Act' (1992) 3 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 51.

[112] See the Committee's Report, *Municipal Government in Alberta: A Municipal Government Act for the 21st Century* (1991). The draft was largely the work of David Elliott, Barrister and Solicitor, Edmonton.

and boxed information for readers, and flow charts. Sadly, many innovations in the committee's draft were dropped from the version as enacted[113] – although, paradoxically, they were adopted as the model for municipal legislation in Australia.[114]

A notable recent development in Canada has occurred in the area of securities law and practice. There is now a growing awareness of the benefits to be gained by requiring prospectuses and other securities-related documents to be in plain language.[115] For example, the British Columbia Securities Commission has announced plans to incorporate plain language requirements into its securities rules. The rules will require certain records to be in 'plain language'. Under proposed rule 8, a record is in 'plain language' if 'its form, style and language enable an ordinary investor or client, applying reasonable effort, to understand it'.[116]

What judges have said about plain English

We should not leave this survey of the movement towards plain legal English without mentioning the efforts of judges. Throughout history, many judges have praised the virtues of plain English. In times past, English judges such as Coke, Blackstone, Stephen, and Atkin spoke and wrote in clear, forthright terms. In modern times, English judges like Denning, Staughton and Hoffmann have shown the same qualities. So have judges from other English-speaking countries: for example, Windeyer, McHugh and Kirby from Australia. Some judges have extolled the virtues of plain language in law generally.[117] Some have argued for plain language

[113] *Alberta Municipal Government Act* 1994 cM-26.1.

[114] Notably, the *Local Government Act* 1993 (New South Wales), mentioned above, p. 97.

[115] See Douglas M. Hyndman, 'Plain language means better regulation' (2004) 51 *Clarity*, p. 14; Robin Ford, 'Plain Language at the Regulator' (2005) 54 *Clarity*, p. 35.

[116] As at February 2006, the proposed rules had not come into operation.

[117] For example, Justice M. D. Kirby (Australian High Court), 'Is Law Poorly Written? A View from the Bench' [1995] *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (March), p. 56; Justice M. H. McHugh (Australian High Court), 'The Growth of Legislation and Litigation' (1995) 69 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 46 (qualified support); Chief Justice de Jersey (Queensland Supreme Court), Foreword to *Clear and Precise: Writing Skills for Today's Lawyer* (Brisbane: Queensland Law Society, 2000); Chief Justice Beverley McLachlin (Canadian Supreme Court), 'Preserving Public Confidence in the Courts and the Legal Profession' (2003) 29 *Manitoba Law Journal*, pp. 284–5.

judgments.[118] Some have praised the qualities of plain language documents that come before them for interpretation.[119] And some have offered constructive comments on the thorny issue of how far to apply settled case law in interpreting plain-English revisions of statutes and standard documents.[120]

Nevertheless, direct judicial advocacy of plain, modern English in legal writing as a central theme is relatively rare – at least in published material. Indeed, some judges have openly doubted whether plain language is appropriate for complex subject matters.[121] Their comments stand in uneasy contrast to the judicial criticisms of traditional drafting we outlined in Chapter 2. They also seem to be out of kilter with surveys that show that judges favour the use of plain English in documents that come before them in court. At least, that is the evidence from the United States of America, where surveys have shown that, given the choice, over 80 per cent of American judges would prefer to see pleadings in plain English rather than in traditional form.[122]

[118] Examples include F. M. Mester, 'Plain English for Judges' (1983) 62 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 978; A. L. Cohn, 'Effective Brief Writing: One Judge's Observations' (1983) 62 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 987; M. D. Kirby, 'On the Writing of Judgments' (1990) 64 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 691 (especially at p. 708: 'Brevity, simplicity and clarity are the watchwords for effective judicial writing.'); J. Doyle, 'Judgment Writing: Are There Needs For Change?' 73 ibid., p. 737; Justices Mailhot and Carnwath, *Decisions, Decisions . . .A Handbook for Judicial Decisions* (Quebec: Les Editions Yvon Blais Inc., 1998); Right Hon. Beverley McLachlin, Chief Justice of Canada, 'Legal Writing: Some Tools' (2001) 39 *Alberta Law Review*, p. 695 (extracted in (2004) 51 *Clarity*, p. 5); Justice Patrick Keane (NZ), 'Decisions that Convince' (2004) 52 *Clarity*, p. 26. Other examples are collected in B. Garner, 'Judges on Effective Writing' (2005) 84 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 44. For an academic's viewpoint, see E. Campbell, 'Reasons for Judgment: Some Consumer Perspectives' (2003) 77 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 62.

[119] For example, Heerey J in *Piccolo v National Australia Bank Ltd* [2000] FCA 187 at [18], discussing a plain language guarantee drafted by a leading Australian law firm: 'The guarantee appears to be a standard form document. In contrast to much traditional bank security documentation, it is clear and comprehensible.'

[120] See, for example, Justice G. Hill, 'A Judicial Perspective on Tax Law Reform' (1998) 72 *Australian Law Journal*, p. 685; Justice K. Lindgren, 'Interpretation of the Income Tax Assessment Act 1997' (1999) 73 ibid., p. 425; Justice D. Mahoney, 'A Judge's Attitude to Plain Language' (1996) 34 *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (September), p. 52.

[121] As in *Blunn v Cleaver* (1993) 119 ALR 65 at 83.

[122] R. Benson, 'Plain English Comes to Court' (1986) 13 *Litigation*, p. 21; S. Harrington and J. Kimble, 'Survey: Plain English Wins Every Which Way' (1987) 66 *Michigan Bar Journal* 1024; J. Kimble and J. Prokop, 'Strike Three for Legalese' (1990) 69 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 418 (revised version reprinted in J. Kimble, *Lifting the Fog of Legalese* (Durham, North Carolina: Carolina Academic Press, 2006), p. 3); B. Child, 'Language Preferences of Judges and Lawyers: A Florida Survey' (1990) 64 *Florida Bar Journal*, p. 32.

To illustrate this outmoded attitude: one Australian appeal court judge described certain provisions of the Australian *Corporations Law* – which adopts a consciously plain English style – as being drafted 'in the language of the pop songs'. The judge's prime concern seemed to be the drafting technique of starting a section with 'However', followed by a comma. In his view, the quest for simplicity 'pays the price of vulgarity and ends in obscurity'.[123] Another Australian appellate judge decried the 'grotesque' use of 'must' in statutes, and especially the phrase 'must not'.[124] Yet another appellate judge, criticising a clause in a plain English insurance policy, caricatured 'plain English' as 'confused thought and split infinitives'. He also offered the gratuitous advice that, if the attempt to reduce insurance policies to plain English was going to force judges to wrestle with policies of the kind before the court, then 'the sooner the attempt is abandoned the better'.[125] And yet another judge, in construing a provision that made it an offence for landlords to 'get' key-money from tenants, said: 'in using the word "get" Parliament has descended in a notably imprecise way into the vernacular'.[126]

In the end, however, carping comments of this kind are unlikely to impede the relentless move towards plain legal language. This is because they overlook the substantial benefits of a plain language style in legal documents. To a consideration of those benefits we now turn.

[123] *G. M. & A. M. Pearce and Co. Pty Ltd v R. G. M. Australia Pty Ltd* (1998) 16 ACLC 429 at 432 (Callaway JA).

[124] *Halwood Corporation Ltd v Roads Corporation* [1998] 2 VR 439 at 445–6 (Tadgell JA). The judge's comments are critiqued by linguist Robert Eagleson in: 'Plain English: Changing the Lawyer's Image and Goals', paper delivered to Literature and the Law Seminar, Perth, Australia, 16 May 1998; extracts published in (1998) 42 *Clarity*, p. 34.

[125] *NRMA Insurance Ltd v Collier* (1996) 9 ANZ Insurance Cases 76,717 at 76,721 (Meagher JA).

[126] *Gillett v Burke* [1997] 1 VR 81 at 100 (Ormiston J).

Chapter Four

SOME BENEFITS OF DRAFTING IN PLAIN ENGLISH

The previous chapter traced the development of the plain English movement, which arose out of the benefits perceived to arise from using plain language in legal documents. In this chapter, we consider some of those benefits in more detail.

The meaning of 'plain English'

We begin with a point of terminology: what is meant by 'plain English' or 'plain language' in the context of legal drafting? Various terms are used to describe the modern style of legal drafting, including 'modern English' and 'standard English'. 'Plain English' is the term that has achieved the most widespread use.

Some lawyers are reluctant to use the term 'plain English'. They assume that it denotes an oversimplified 'Dick and Jane' style – that its advocates employ a debased form of language, shorn of beauty, stripped of vocabulary, truncated in form and deficient in style. This, however, is a limited understanding of the true nature of plain English.[1] As the Law Reform Commission of Victoria pointed out in its 1986 discussion paper *Legislation, Legal Rights and Plain English*, 'plain English' is a full, adult version of the language.

[1] R. Eagleson, 'Plain English: Simple or Simplistic?' (1990) 4 *Vox*, p. 106.

Documents in plain English are rightly described as simplified, in the sense of being rid of entangled and convoluted language. But 'plain English' is more than that:

> Plain English is language that is not artificially complicated, but is clear and effective for its intended audience. While it shuns the antiquated and inflated word and phrase, which can readily be either omitted altogether or replaced with a more useful substitute, it does not seek to rid documents of terms which express important distinctions. Nonetheless, plain language documents offer non-expert readers some assistance in coping with these technical terms. To a far larger extent, plain language is concerned with matters of sentence and paragraph structure, with organisation and design, where so many of the hindrances to clear expression originate.[2]

The key lies in the phrase 'clear and effective for its intended audience'. Central to plain English is the assumption that the parties to the document, and not the lawyers, are the audience. Once that is established, the structure and language of the document take on a different form.

More than twenty years ago, the National Consumer Council (UK) defined 'plain English' by reference to what it called 'standard English'. The Council said (in a statement which owes something to the New York plain English law, discussed in Chapter 3):

> Plain English means standard English as currently used and understood, and any move which promotes the use of words in their ordinary, everyday meaning and deters the use of purple verbiage and fathomless grammar must only improve the whole quality of our language. There is not much literary merit in existing contracts.[3]

The nature of plain or standard English can be readily seen when set beside legalese or jargon, examples of which we saw in Chapter 2 and which we consider further in Chapter 5.

With this point of terminology behind us, we proceed to consider some of the benefits of using clear, modern English in legal documents.

[2] *Discussion Paper No. 1* (Melbourne, 1986), p. 3.
[3] *Plain Words for Consumers* (London, 1984), p. 47.

Increased efficiency and understanding

The first benefit is increased efficiency and understanding. Plain language documents are easier to read and understand. Consider the following clauses, where traditional and plain language versions are juxtaposed.

Table 2 Traditional and plain language legal clauses

Traditional	Plain
The Builder shall at his own expense construct sewer level pave metal kerb flag channel drain light and otherwise make good (including the provision of street name plates in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate District Council and road markings and traffic signs in accordance with the requirements of the Council) the street.	The Builder must construct the street to Council specifications.
Until the expiration of twenty one years from the death of the last survivor of the purchasers the trustees for the time being of this Deed shall have power to Mortgage Charge Lease or otherwise dispose of all or any part of the said property with all the powers in that behalf of an absolute owner.	For 21 years after the death of the last surviving purchaser, the trustees have all the powers of an absolute owner.
The Lessee will not without the previous consent in writing of the Lessor at any time fix or place any aerial wires poles or projections or any other articles notices signs pictures legend or advertisement or any other thing outside the Demised Premises nor any part thereof nor in the windows thereof on any part of the Property.	Except with the Landlord's prior written consent, the Tenant must not put anything • outside the property, or • in any window.

In these examples, the plain language versions are more direct and more easily absorbed. This increases not merely efficiency of reading but also ease of understanding. In the third example, the starkness of the plain language version points up the rigour of the restrictions on the tenant. The law should encourage devices which increase ease of understanding, for it remains a basic principle of common law legal systems that persons are bound by the documents they sign. Difficulty of understanding is not generally a defence.[4] Indeed, a US appellate judge has gone so far as to suggest, in the context of insurance policies, that the law effectively imposes on customers a 'duty-to-read' the policy; and that being so, there should be a duty on the insurer to make the policy readily readable.[5]

Also in all these examples, the plainer version is shorter. This is usually the case, since plain language drafting omits unnecessary detail. Sometimes, however, a plain language version is longer than the original. In resolving ambiguities or explaining hidden assumptions, material may have to be added, not subtracted. Of course, if taken to extremes, length may make the document inaccessible. At first glance, this seems to have been the fate of an Australian Act, the *Social Security Act*. In a case brought under the Act, the Federal Court noted that the professed aim of the drafting of the Act's 1471 pages was to 'make it more accessible to persons without legal training', but that the length of the Act meant that non-lawyers could not master it unaided. However, the real difficulty was not length, but rather (as the court commented) the drafters' failure to master the intricacies of their own creation.[6]

The efficiencies achieved by using plain language in place of traditional legal language have been well-authenticated.[7] This is so regardless of whether the document is a one-off, prepared for a particular transaction, or a standard form, prepared for transactions of a recurrent kind. But of course in the

[4] *L'Estrange v F Graucob Ltd* [1934] 2 KB 394; *Toll (FGCT) Pty Ltd v Alphapharm Pty Ltd* (2004) 79 ALJR 129.

[5] *Commercial Union Midwest Insurance Co v Vorbec* 674 NW 2d 665 at [55] (Wisconsin, 2003).

[6] *Blunn v Cleaver* (1993) 119 ALR 65 at 81–2.

[7] For documented studies, see Joseph Kimble, 'Writing for Dollars, Writing to Please' (1996–97) 6 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 3. Cf Ruth Sullivan, 'The Promise of Plain Language Drafting' (2001) *McGill Law Journal*, p. 97 (para 35), concluding from several studies of users' reactions that in communication 'plain language drafting has a long way to go'.

case of standard forms the efficiencies are more marked, since they accumulate each time the form is used. Where a standard form is to be completed by a customer, plain language reduces customer queries about meaning. It also reduces customer errors in filling in the form. Staff formerly employed to handle enquiries and errors can be redeployed to more productive tasks. Staff can also more efficiently process forms that are drafted in plain language. In these ways, many businesses and government agencies have attested to saving substantial amounts by converting documents to plain language.[8]

Plain language is also more efficient for lawyers. For example, in a study for the Law Reform Commission of Victoria, lawyers read versions of the same statute, one written in plain language and the other in traditional language. On average, the time taken to understand the plain language version was one-third to one-half less than the time taken to understand the traditional version.[9]

These results have been confirmed in many other studies. They all show that lawyers and non-lawyers find plain language easier to read than traditional legalese, and that their comprehension of content is markedly increased.[10]

[8] Many examples are documented in Joseph Kimble, 'Plain English: A Charter for Clear Writing' (1992) 9 *Thomas M. Cooley Law Review*, pp. 25 ff; Joseph Kimble, 'Answering the Critics of Plain Language' (1994–95) 5 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 51; Joseph Kimble, 'Writing for Dollars, Writing to Please' (1996–97) 6 ibid., p. 1; G. Mills and M. Duckworth, *The Gains from Clarity: A Research Report on the Effects of Plain-language Documents* (Sydney: Law Foundation of NSW, 1996).

[9] Robert Eagleson, 'Plain English – A Boon for Lawyers' [1991] *The Second Draft* (Legal Writing Institute), p. 12.

[10] For examples, see J. Davis, 'Protecting Consumers from Overdisclosure and Gobbledygook: An Empirical Look at the Simplification of Consumer Credit Contracts' (1977) 63 *Virginia Law Review*, p. 841 (consumers); V. Charrow & R. Charrow, 'Making Legal Language Understandable: A Pyscholinguistic Study of Jury Instructions' (1979) 79 *Columbia Law Review*, p. 1306 (potential jurors); J. Kimble, 'Answering the Critics of Plain Language', pp. 62–5, 69–70; J. Kimble, 'Writing for Dollars, Writing to Please', p. 25; M. Cutts, *Lucid Law* (Stockport: Plain Language Commission, 1994), pp. 22–6 (law students); P. Knight, *Clearly Better Drafting: A Report to the Plain English Campaign on Testing two versions of the South African Human Rights Commission Act 1995* (Stockport, UK; Plain English Campaign, Feb 1966) (lawyers and non-lawyers). A contrary finding is reported by R. Penman, 'Plain English: Wrong Solution to an Important Problem' (1992) 19 *Australian Journal of Communication*, p. 3; but some have criticised Penman's methods and findings –

Although the evidence for increased efficiency and understanding seems conclusive, some lawyers still have reservations on other grounds – reservations which they feel outweigh the benefits of increased efficiency. One (hardly meritorious) is the prospect of lower fees: if a document is more 'efficient', in the sense of taking less time to digest, then lawyers' fees might be reduced. Of course, given its unethical nature, this reservation is unlikely to be expressed so starkly. But in any case, efficiency of this kind is not the threat to income that it might seem, for there is no direct correlation between expertise and efficiency. As we saw in Chapter 1, time is only one factor in assessing the lawyer's fee.

A related reservation might be the time taken to draft plain language documents. For many lawyers, especially those new to the techniques, drafting in plain language may take longer than drafting in the traditional style. While the reader receives the benefit of the drafter's efforts, the drafter may have spent considerably more time preparing the document than if it had been lifted from the computer.

Several responses can be made to this reservation. First, the drafter one day is a reader the next. Lawyers are not always drafters, any more than clients are always sellers. Roles change. If plain language documents become the norm, the legal profession as a whole benefits. Second, the drafter's task is not finished when the draft is prepared and sent out. The other party may propose amendments. If the draft is in plain language, the drafter can absorb and deal with amendments more easily than if the document is in traditional form.[11]

Of course, the drafter might be working from a standard precedent which is already in plain English. The advent of plain English will not negate the usefulness of precedents. In a pressured world, precedents fulfil a need. They are an efficient tool in turning out documents. To advocate that every document should be created anew every time is to fly in the face of reality. Even so, the plain English precedent can be adapted more easily to the needs

for example, B. Coleman, 'Are Clarity and Precision Compatible Aims in Legal Drafting?' [1998] *Singapore Journal of Legal Studies*, pp. 395–7.

[11] There are obvious practical problems where (as is often the case) a plain language drafter is faced with amendments proposed in traditional language. This can produce an uneven document (which can sometimes be improved by the original drafter exercising a little judicious and unannounced editing). Until plain drafting becomes universal, or virtually universal, amendments in an alien style may have to be absorbed.

of each transaction than can its traditional counterpart, because its meaning is more transparent.

Fewer errors

A related bonus of a plain language style is the potential for reducing mistakes.[12] Traditional legal language tends to hide inconsistencies and ambiguities. Errors are harder to find in dense and convoluted prose. Removing legalese helps lay bare any oversights in the original. This can benefit not only the client for whom the document is drawn, but also the drafter, for it forces the drafter to reappraise the text and consider what the client really intended. And by exposing the contents of the document, plain language reduces the likelihood of a professional negligence claim against the drafter or against the person who proffers the document for signature. Clients who sign a document that is plainly expressed and easily understood will be hard-pressed to convince a court that they did not understand it. For example, in a Canadian case two insured persons sued their insurance agent for not advising them that their insurance policy excluded cover for damage to business assets. They failed. The judge considered that the policy was 'in easily understandable language' and 'clearly excluded' the loss in question. The insured persons were literate adults, capable of reading a contract, and it was not appropriate to cast on their agent the responsibility for their not having read the policy.[13]

Logically, if plain language helps reduce errors it should also help reduce litigation about the meaning of documents. Anecdotal evidence suggests that this is indeed the case. For example, the company solicitor for NRMA Insurance (one of Australia's first plain language insurance companies) has written:

> When our first Plain English policy wording was released, Mr Justice Reynolds in an address to the Australian Insurance Institute suggested that the reduction of insurance policy wordings to Plain English might be at the expense of legal

[12] For some examples, see Robert Eagleson, 'Efficiency in Legal Drafting', in *Essays on Legislative Drafting in Honour of J Q Ewens*, ed. D. St Kelly (Adelaide University Press, 1990), p. 25.

[13] *Munro v Shackleton* (unreported, Kyle J, Saskatchewan Court of Queen's Bench, 12 November 1993; [1993] SJ No 616).

> inexactitude [*sic*] or, put in another way, might give rise to litigation over particular wordings which would not have arisen had traditional wordings been used. No such increase has occurred – on the contrary litigation has been reduced in this regard.[14]

This is not to say that plain language documents will never produce litigation about meaning: indeed, cases have already arisen.[15] But it seems unlikely that plain language documents will produce court lists as lengthy as those produced by documents drafted in the traditional style. As long ago as 1941, an American study showed that of 500 contract cases decided the previous year, about 25 per cent were traceable to incomplete negotiation by the parties and to poor draftsmanship by the parties or their lawyers.[16]

Image of the legal profession

Another benefit of plain English is its effect on the legal profession's public image. Lawyers have never had a good press. Writers frequently lampoon them. A chief source of ridicule is the way in which lawyers draft documents. And a chief source of formal complaints to law societies is the way that lawyers communicate – or rather, fail to communicate – with their clients.[17] Lawyers use a language that can only be described as alien: alien to the general public; alien to clients of all kinds; and alien to educated users of

[14] Neville King, 'An experience with Plain English' (1985) 61 *Current Affairs Bulletin* (January), p. 21. To similar effect, in its submissions to the Australian Parliamentary Inquiry into Commonwealth Legislative and Legal Drafting (18 September 1992), the NRMA stated: 'The NRMA has not experienced any adverse court decisions by reason of the "Plain English" and subsequent "user friendly" documents.'

[15] For example, *Ciampa v NRMA Insurance Ltd* (unreported, Supreme Court of NSW, Bryson J, 23 October 1989); *NRMA Insurance Ltd v McCarney* (1992) 7 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–146; *Ross v NRMA Life Ltd* (1993) 7 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–170; *NRMA Insurance Ltd v Collier* (1996) 9 ANZ Insurance Cases 76,717. For reasoned discussions of the possibilities of increased litigation from plain language insurance policies, see L. Squires, 'Autopsy of a Plain English Insurance Contract: Can Plain English Survive Proximate Cause?' (1984) 59 *Washington Law Review*, p. 569; N. Risjord, '"Plain Language" Permission Clauses Spelling Trouble for Insurers' [1990] *Defense Counsel Journal* (January), p. 77; U. Procaccia, 'Readable Insurance Policies: Judicial Regulation and Interpretation' (1979) 74 *Israel Law Review*, p. 74.

[16] Harold Shepherd, Book Review, (1948) 1 *Journal of Legal Education*, p. 154.

[17] Ann Abraham, '*Pro Bono Publico* – Revisited' (2001) 4(1) *Legal Ethics*, p. 12 (Ms Abraham was the UK Legal Services Ombudsman).

English.[18] Paradoxically, it is also alien to lawyers themselves. Australian surveys show that most practising lawyers prefer plain language.[19] So do most American lawyers, as we saw in Chapter 3.

Legal language has a unique tendency to be wordy, unclear, pompous and dull.[20] It is also impersonal, lacking warmth.[21] Yet, of all professionals, lawyers should have a special affinity with language. Words are their tools of trade.[22] Nevertheless, a Canadian survey shows that readers find legal language 'seriously incomprehensible'[23] and find legal documents 'difficult/very difficult' to read. It also shows that the general public believes that, of all professionals, lawyers care least about communicating clearly. [24] English research produces similar results.[25]

The image of the legal profession would be greatly enhanced if lawyers used plain language. As a former president of the Law Society of England and Wales said in his presidential address to the Society's 1984 national conference:

> Few things have done more to drive people from our doors than our inability both in documents and in letters and speech to express ourselves in clear simple English. As Professor Felsenfeld has said: 'Lawyers have two common failings. One is that they do not write well, and the other is that they think they do.' It is not the mark of a learned man to express himself in language which others cannot understand; it is the sign of a fool who cannot think clearly.[26]

[18] See, for example, Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Report No. 9: Plain English and the Law*, vol. 1, paras 17 ('barely intelligible to many lawyers') and 24 ('lawyers themselves are sometimes misled').

[19] Bron McKillop, 'What Lawyers Think About Plain Legal Language' (1994) 32 *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (May), p. 68; Michèle Asprey, 'Lawyers Prefer Plain Language, Survey Finds', ibid. (November), p. 76. There are exceptions: see, for example, W. O. Caldwell, 'Be Conservative or Risk It?', ibid. (July), p. 66.

[20] David Mellinkoff, *The Language of the Law* (Boston: Little, Brown & Co, 1963), ch. III.

[21] See Mark Adler, *Clarity for Lawyers*, p. 1.

[22] See Glanville Williams, 'Language and the Law' (1945) 61 *Law Quarterly Review*, p. 71.

[23] Robert Benson, 'The End of Legalese: the Game is Over' (1984–85) 13 *Review of Law and Social Change*, p. 532.

[24] Survey carried out by the Plain Language Institute of British Columbia: see its *Preliminary Report*, '*Critical Opinions: the Public's View of Legal Documents*' (1992), pp. 18, 26.

[25] Mark Adler, 'Bamboozling the Public' [1991] *New Law Journal*, p. 1032.

[26] Arthur Hoole (1984) 81 *Law Society's Gazette*, p. 2817. The Felsenfeld quotation is from 'The Plain English Movement in the United States' (1981–82) 6 *Canadian Business Law Journal*, p. 413, originally a paper delivered at the University of Toronto in 1981.

Marketing

Related to issues of image, plain language can be a valuable marketing tool. Many businesses such as insurance companies and banks now treat comprehensible language as a virtue, to be trumpeted in public advertising: 'come to us because you can understand our documents'. Lawyers too can market their plain language skills. Many of the larger law firms already do so, with partners publishing widely in law-related journals.[27]

Compliance with statutory requirements

Chapter 3 discussed some of the US laws compelling the use of plain language in certain documents. Many other jurisdictions have passed laws requiring specified documents to be in plain language. Whatever the jurisdiction, these laws illustrate a phenomenon that does no credit to the legal profession: parliamentary intervention to compel recalcitrant lawyers to depart from their traditional style in favour of plainer, more accessible drafting.

Here we consider briefly certain legislation in the United Kingdom and Australia requiring the use of plain language in particular contexts. In these countries, as in others that have passed similar laws, the legislation brings with it drafting opportunities for those skilled in plain language techniques.

The United Kingdom

An example in the United Kingdom is the *Unfair Terms in Consumer Contracts Regulations* 1999,[28] implementing a directive of the European Commission. Essentially, the regulations provide that a consumer is not bound by a standard term with a seller or supplier if that term is unfair. By regulation 7:

[27] For examples from Australia, see E. Kerr, 'Plain Language: Is it Legal?' (1991) 29 *New South Wales Law Society Journal* (June), p. 52; David Colenso, 'Plain English Leases – Clearly Better Leases' (1996) 26 *Queensland Law Society Journal* (April), p. 157; David Kelly, 'Plain English: An Underestimated Task?' (1999) 43 *Clarity*, p. 5; Steve Palyga, 'Is it Safer to Use Legalese or Plain English? What the Judges Say', ibid., p. 46. For an example from Hong Kong, see R. Mazzochi and M. Siu, 'Plain English Prospectuses' (October 2005) *Company Secretary* (Journal of the Hong Kong Institute of Chartered Secretaries), p. 12.

[28] SI 1999 No. 2083, revoking and replacing SI 1994 No. 3159.

(1) A seller or supplier shall ensure that any written term of a contract is expressed in plain, intelligible language.
(2) If there is doubt about the meaning of a written term, the interpretation which is most favourable to the consumer shall prevail . . .

This provision, which may have been inspired in part by the plain language movement in English-speaking countries,[29] is not without its difficulties – in particular, the word 'intelligible'. 'Intelligible to whom?', one may ask.[30] Additionally, the *Consumer Credit (Advertisements) Regulations* 2004 require all advertisements offering credit or hire facilities to use 'plain and intelligible language'.[31]

The Office of Fair Trading is primarily responsible for enforcing the 1999 regulations. The head of the Office's Unfair Contract Terms Unit has written that the Office is yet to find a legal concept that defies translation into plain language.[32] The Office urges:

- the use of ordinary words
- a transparent style and structure
- legibility
- abandoning cross-references to statutes and the consumer rights under them
- jettisoning general phrases like 'this does not affect your statutory rights' and exclusions like 'to the greatest extent permitted by law'.

The Office publishes regular bulletins on cases where traders have dropped or amended terms as a result of enforcement action.[33]

Formerly, doubt existed over whether the regulations applied to documents creating or transferring interests in land.[34] The English Court of

[29] See Ewoud Hondius, 'EC Directive on Unfair Terms in Consumer Contracts: Towards a European Law of Contract' (1994) 7 *Journal of Contract Law*, p. 42.
[30] Meryll Dean, 'Unfair Contract Terms: The European Approach' (1993) 56 *Modern Law Review*, p. 581. See also Francis Bennion, 'Opposites Attract' [1997] *New Law Journal*, p. 684 (commenting on a discussion of the regulations by Tracey Reeves, 'Opposites Attract: Plain English with a European Interpretation', ibid., p. 576).
[31] SI 2004 No. 1484, reg. 3(a).
[32] Ray Wooley, 'Plainly Unfair' (1998) 68 *Adviser*, p. 36. Consumer information can be found at the OFT's website <www.oft.gov.uk/consumer>
[33] Some of these are detailed in Sheila Bone and Steve Wilson, 'Contract terms, fairness and the consumer' [1998] *Solicitors Journal*, p. 346.
[34] See, for example, Rex Newman and Clive Halperin, 'Fair Enough?' (1995) 139 *Solicitors Journal*, p. 632.

Appeal has now held that the regulations do apply to such documents.[35] Whether as the result of the regulations or not, a shift to plain language is evident in a number of important conveyancing documents used in England. These include:

- the Standard Conditions of Sale
- the Law Society's business leases
- mortgage conditions of several large lenders
- the Standard Commercial Property Conditions
- the British Property Federation's short-term commercial lease (2002)
- the British Property Federation's and the British Council for Offices' model clauses for office lease (2003).

The Standard Commercial Property Conditions follow the same pattern as the earlier Standard Conditions of Sale. Both are logically ordered, written in a style that is plain and direct, and reject *shall*. (The similarity is to be expected, as both result from a joint endeavour between the Law Society of England and Wales and Oyez Forms Publishing.) Likewise, the British Property Federation's lease is a bold attempt to provide industry-standard documentation. It is in simple form, to ensure comprehension by a wide audience. While not as radical as the Law Society's business lease, or Aldridge's *Practical Lease Precedents*,[36] it shares many of the same features: clear layout, direct language, and no superfluous provisions.

Finally, the Client's Charter published by the Law Society of England and Wales states that a solicitor will 'make every effort to explain things clearly, and in terms you can understand, keeping jargon to a minimum'.

Australia

A number of Australian statutes prescribe plain language in certain areas. For example, the New South Wales *Legal Profession Act* requires fee disclosures by lawyers to be in writing and be 'expressed in clear plain language'.[37] Consumer credit legislation in all states requires contracts and notices by credit providers to be 'easily legible' and 'clearly expressed'.[38] Commonwealth insurance legislation requires insurers to 'clearly inform' prospective

[35] *London Borough of Newham v Khatun* [2005] QB 37.
[36] Trevor Aldridge, *Practical Lease Precedents* (London: Sweet & Maxwell, looseleaf).
[37] 2004 (NSW), s 315(1). [38] For example, *Consumer Credit (NSW) Code*, s 162.

insured persons of their duty of disclosure when taking out insurance,[39] a requirement which has been held to require not only that the information be clearly expressed but also that it be adequately brought to the insured's attention.[40] The Queensland *Industrial Relations Act* 1999, s 333, requires the Queensland Industrial Relations Commission to ensure that its written decisions are 'in plain English' and 'structured in a way that makes a decision as easy to understand as the subject matter allows'.[41] And the Commonwealth *Industrial Relations Reform Act* 1993 requires the Commonwealth Industrial Relations Commission to vary industrial awards that are not 'expressed in plain English', or are not 'structured in a way that is as easy to understand as the subject matter allows', or that prescribe matters 'in unnecessary detail'.[42] This has forced the Commission to explain the meaning of 'plain English', as the legislation itself offers no guidance. In a leading 1997 case, the Commission explained the term in this way:

> Plain English is, in our view, clear and precise language which is easy to understand and which communicates its message effectively. It is not a simplified form of English. It puts the reader first and avoids archaic words, jargon, unnecessary technical expressions and complex language. Plain English is not just about words. It means using plain language to express ideas so that they make sense to the reader and designing documents so that information is easy to find and understand . . . Using plain English does not mean sacrificing precision.[43]

Less directly, consumer protection legislation both at Commonwealth and state level empowers courts to vary or set aside contracts that are unconscionable or unjust. For example, ss 51AB and 51AC of the *Trade Practices Act* 1974 (Cth) proscribe conduct in trade or commerce that is 'unconscionable'.

[39] *Insurance Contracts Act* 1984 (Cth), s 22(1).

[40] *Suncorp General Insurance Ltd v Cheihk* (1999) 10 ANZ Insurance Cases 61–442 at 75,024.

[41] The requirement is mandatory: 'The Commission must ensure . . .' However, as one judge has noted, despite the peremptory 'must', the Act does not disclose the consequences of disobedience. Are non-complying Commissioners to be treated as law-breakers? See Justice Barrett, 'A judicial response to plain language' (2003) 49 *Clarity*, pp. 8–10.

[42] *Industrial Relations Reform Act* 1993 (Cth), s 17, inserting a new provision, s 150A, into the *Industrial Relations Act* 1988 (Cth). Compare Lord Diplock's lament in *Merkur Island Shipping Corporation v Laughton* [1983] AC 570 at 612, that the law 'should be expressed in terms that can easily be understood by those who have to apply it even at shop floor level'.

[43] *Re Award Simplification Decision* (1997) 75 IR 272 at 305.

Under both sections, in deciding whether conduct is 'unconscionable', the court may have regard to (among other matters) 'whether the consumer was able to understand any documents relating to' the transaction. Similarly, under s 7 of the *Contracts Review Act* 1980 (NSW), a court may vary or set aside contracts that are 'unjust' in the circumstances in which they are made. Under s 9, in considering a contract that is wholly or partly in writing, the court may have regard to (among other matters) 'the physical form of the contract, and the intelligibility of the language in which it is expressed'. The case law which has developed under these and comparable provisions indicates that courts look closely at the language in which contracts are couched, and particularly take into account the impediments to intelligibility posed by documents drafted in the traditional style.[44]

General

Indeed, even in the absence of statutory provisions of this kind, it can be argued that the law has evolved to the point that courts take factors such as these into account in deciding whether to set aside contracts on the ground of unconscionability.[45] If correct, this argument gives the lie to the premise (discussed in Chapter 1) that safety lies in retaining traditional forms of legal drafting. US courts have held that elements in establishing unconscionability include:

- hiding clauses which are disadvantageous to one party in a 'mass of fine print trivia' or in places which are inconspicuous to the party signing the contract
- phrasing clauses in language incomprehensible to a lay reader or that diverts the lay reader's attention from the problems they raise or the rights they extinguish.[46]

[44] Cases include: *National Australia Bank Ltd v Nobile* (1988) ATPR 40–855; *Bridge Wholesale Acceptance (Australia) Ltd v GVS Associates Pty Ltd* [1991] ASC 57,116; *Goldsbrough v Ford Credit Australia Ltd* [1989] ASC 58,583; *National Australia Bank Ltd v Hall* (1993) ASC 56–234. Compare J. Goldring, 'Certainty in Contracts, Unconscionability and the Trade Practices Act: The Effect of Section 52A' (1986) 11 *Sydney Law Review*, p. 529, arguing that since the *Contracts Review Act* requires all the circumstances to be taken into account, this provision should not be taken as a general injunction to use plain English documentation.

[45] Examples include: *Commercial Bank of Australia Ltd v Amadio* (1983) 151 CLR 447; *Creswell v Potter* [1978] 1 WLR 255, especially at 260.

[46] *Willie v Southwestern Bell Telephone Company* 549 P 2d 903 at 907 (1976).

Conclusion

A legal document has several functions. The primary one is to carry out a legal purpose, but there are others: to communicate, to inform, and to persuade. A legal document creates a private law for the parties, governing their relationship for a specified time and for a specified purpose. In laying down that private law, there is no good reason to use language other than plain, modern English.

The traditional legal document is a communication from lawyer to lawyer. The reform movement in legal drafting reminds us that it is also a communication from lawyer to client. Specialists can talk to specialists in special language if they wish. An expert in heraldry may describe an armorial bearing to another expert in language that is precise and unambiguous, yet unintelligible to the uninitiated; nothing much turns on the unintelligibility of their coded language to outsiders. But law is different. Law is involved with the whole world, with life and with people. Legal language should no more be confined to coded messages than language generally.

Modern, plain English is as capable of precision as traditional legal English.[47] It can cope with all the concepts and complexities of the law and legal processes. The few technical terms that the lawyer might feel compelled to retain for convenience or necessity can be incorporated without destroying the document's legal integrity. The modern English of a legal document will never read like a good novel, but it can be attractive and effective in a clean, clear, functional style.

[47] Compare Brady Coleman, 'Are Clarity and Precision Compatible Aims in Legal Drafting?' [1998] *Singapore Journal of Legal Studies*, p. 376, taking a scholarly but less sanguine view than ours.

Chapter Five

WHAT TO AVOID WHEN DRAFTING MODERN DOCUMENTS

Introduction

In the preceding chapters we examined the influences that tend to perpetuate the traditional style of legal drafting. We also considered the ways in which legal documents are interpreted. We traced the move towards plain legal language and explored some of the benefits of using modern, standard English. Now we move to examine rather more closely the techniques of drafting in modern, standard English: the 'how to'. The best way to begin is by considering what *not* to do – that is, by considering techniques the drafter should *avoid*. And so this chapter highlights those aspects of the traditional style that should be shunned by the legal drafter who wants to move to a clear, modern style.

It is not difficult to identify characteristics of traditional legal documents that should be avoided. Here are some of the more common:

- wordiness and redundancy
- overuse of the modal verb 'shall'
- obscure language
- unusual word order
- constantly litigated words and phrases
- foreign words and phrases
- unduly long sense-bites
- legalese and jargon

- peculiar linguistic conventions
- use of noun phrases in place of verbs
- overuse of the passive
- deeming
- poor use of definitions
- overuse of capitals
- careless use of provisos.

This list of characteristics is not exhaustive. But all are found, to a greater or lesser degree, in traditionally drafted legal documents. We will consider each in turn.

Wordiness and redundancy

Wordiness is the legal profession's most recognisable characteristic, redundancy its strongest point. Lawyers really do go on. Their motto might be: 'Never use one word where you can use two; and the more you use, the better.' As an American judge has put it: 'The legal mind finds magnetic attraction in redundancy and overkill.'[1]

These characteristics of wordiness and redundancy give legal writing its distinctiveness. Yet they are almost always unnecessary, both linguistically and legally. They serve only to dull the reader. They are seen most often in common pairings like 'null and void', 'goods and chattels', 'fit and proper', 'storm and tempest', 'well and sufficiently', 'agreed and declared'. (We discussed the tautological nature of some common pairings in Chapter 1.) But they are also seen in forms of repetition that are longer and more ambitious. Consider, for example, the following typical lease provision, setting out some of the tenant's rights:

> TOGETHER WITH the right in common with the Landlord and all others having the like right to use for the purpose of ingress to and egress from the Flat the pathway leading thereto from Grenville Road and also the right to use the yard at the rear of the Flat and the washing line situate therein TOGETHER WITH the free and uninterrupted use of all gas water electricity and other pipes wires flues drains passing in through or under any part of the property but excepting and reserving to the Landlord and the person or persons for

[1] *Coca Cola Bottling Co. v Reeves* 486 So 2d 374 at 383–4 (Miss. 1986; Robertson J).

> the time being occupying any other part or parts of the property (a) the free and uninterrupted use of gas water electricity drainage telephone supply and other pipes wires flues conduits and drains in through and under the Flat (b) the right to install or renew any such services causing as little disturbance as possible and making good any damage forthwith.

This wordiness springs from a spurious attempt at precision. The drafter hopes, by piling word on word, to cover every conceivable circumstance, as if to ensure exactitude by weight of words. But the reality is that the tenant's rights could have been expressed much more simply and just as efficaciously:

With the right to use (along with other users)

- the path between the flat and Grenville Road
- the yard behind the flat
- the washing line in the yard
- all service conduits and wires running in any part of the property

but reserving[2] to the landlord and occupiers of other parts of the property

- the use of all service conduits and wires running in the flat
- the right to install or renew any service conduits and wires serving the flat, but causing as little disturbance as possible and repairing any damage straight away.

This would reduce the original 150 words to about 90, gaining clarity without losing precision.

Repairing covenants in leases also commonly exhibit the same excessive wordiness. The following clause was the subject of litigation in England:

> When where and so often as occasion shall require well and sufficiently to repair renew rebuild uphold support sustain maintain pave purge scour cleanse glaze empty amend and keep the premises and every part thereof (including all fixtures and additions thereto) and all floors walls columns roofs canopies lifts and escalators (including all motors and machinery therefor) shafts stairways fences pavements forecourts drains sewers ducts flues conduits wires cables gutters soil and other pipes tanks cisterns pumps and

[2] The original uses 'excepting and reserving'. Chapter 1 noted the technical distinction between an 'exception' and a 'reservation'. The indiscriminate conjunction of the terms here shows that the drafter is unlikely to have appreciated the distinction.

> other water and sanitary apparatus thereon with all needful and necessary amendments whatsoever (damage by any of the insured risks excepted so long as the lessor's policy or policies of insurance in respect thereof shall not have become vitiated or payment of the policy moneys be refused in whole or in part in consequence of some act or default of the lessee) and to keep all water pipes and water fittings in the premises protected from frost and to be responsible in all respects for all damage caused to the premises or to the said buildings or any part thereof or to the neighbouring property or to the respective owners or occupiers thereof through the bursting overflowing or stopping up of such pipes and fittings occasioned by or through the neglect of the lessee or its servants or agents.

This clause is replete with tautology, both linguistic and legal. No doubt its verbosity was prompted by a desire for precision. Yet despite all its words, the parties ended up in court disputing the extent of the obligation to 'repair'.[3]

Often a repairing covenant spells out that the tenant must not only 'repair' but must also 'put into repair'. This is strictly unnecessary, for an obligation 'to repair' generally includes an obligation to put into repair.[4] Likewise, a repairing covenant generally includes an obligation to rebuild following wilful neglect or destruction by the party obliged to 'repair', to decorate where necessary, and to keep clear of vermin. But these also are strictly unnecessary, being comprehended by a general obligation to 'repair'.[5] So, although most current repairing covenants are much more overblown than merely requiring the tenant to 'repair', the extra words usually add nothing. Indeed, by expressing the tenant's duties in over-particular ways, added words can be counterproductive, since they may serve to exclude what would otherwise be implied (see the discussion of the *expressio unius* rule in Chapter 2).

Excessive wordiness is also commonly found in grants of rights of way. The grantee is given 'the full right to pass and repass on foot or with or without vehicles along and over the footpaths and roads respectively of the

[3] *Ravenseft Properties Ltd v Davstone (Holdings) Ltd* [1980] QB 12.

[4] See *Foster v Day* (1968) 208 EG 495.

[5] *Manchester Bonded Warehouse Co. v Carr* (1880) 5 CPD 507 at 512 (obligation to rebuild on wilful neglect or destruction); *Proudfoot v Hart* (1890) 25 QBD 42 at 53–5, 56 (obligation to decorate when necessary); *Jones v Joseph* (1918) 87 LJ KB 510 (obligation to keep clear of vermin).

said Estate'. Is this any different from 'a right of way, on foot or with vehicles, over the footpaths and roads of the Estate'?[6]

Overuse of 'shall'

Shall is the hallmark of traditional legal writing. Whenever lawyers want to express themselves in formal style, *shall* intrudes. The word litters most precedent books, and finds its way into wills, conveyances, leases, and all types of contracts.

In traditional legal documents, *shall* serves many purposes. They include the following (with examples drawn from documents drafted in the traditional style):

- To impose a duty: 'The Distributor *shall* keep in good and saleable condition a stock of the Goods.'
- To grant a right: 'A purchaser *shall* have the right to cancel the purchase transaction until midnight.'
- To give a direction: 'The receipt of a person who appears to be a proper officer of the charity *shall* be a discharge to my Trustees.'
- To state circumstances: 'The said restrictions *shall* be binding on the property hereby assured and the owner or owners thereof from time to time but the Purchasers *shall* not be personally liable for any breach thereof occurring after they *shall* have parted with all interest in the land in respect of which the breach *shall* occur.'
- To create a condition precedent (a 'precondition'): 'If the Vendor *shall* within one month of the receipt of such notice give written notice . . .'
- To create a condition subsequent: 'If in any circumstances my said intended marriage *shall* not have been solemnised within the period of six months from the date hereof then at the end of that period this my said will *shall* become void.'
- To express the future: 'The waiver of the observance and performance of the said covenant *shall* terminate on the disposal of the said property.'

[6] Even here, the reference to access 'on foot' is strictly unnecessary, since a right of vehicular use includes a right of pedestrian use, permitting the grantee to walk along the roads as well as the footpaths: *Davies v Stephens* (1836) 7 C & P 570; 173 RR 251.

- To negate a duty or discretion: 'The Vendor *shall* not be bound to show any title to boundaries fences ditches or walls.'
- To negate a right: 'Such statement *shall* be deemed to be correct and *shall* be binding on the Client.'
- To express intention: 'The said wall when erected *shall* be deemed to be a party wall.'

This list is not exhaustive. Like the categories of negligence, the categories of *shall* are not closed. Often, in the one document, *shall* serves a number of purposes. There may be a primary purpose, with subsidiary purposes; or two or three purposes may carry equal weight. The following provision from a Canadian credit agreement illustrates different uses of *shall* within the one clause:

> A certificate of a Lender setting forth amount or amounts necessary to compensate such Lender . . . *shall be delivered* [read *must be delivered*] to the Borrower, and *shall be conclusive* [read *is conclusive*] absent manifest error. In preparing any such certificate, a Lender *shall be entitled to use* [read *may use*] averages and make reasonable estimates, and *shall not be required to* [read *need not*] . . . isolate particular transactions. The Borrower *shall pay* [read *must pay*] such Lender the amount shown as due on any such certificate . . .

To the lawyer, a chief attraction of *shall* is its flexibility. But this flexibility is also a source of danger, for it may lead to legitimate argument about which use of *shall* was intended. And so the primary objection to *shall* is not merely that it is archaic and marks out formal legal English from modern, standard English, but that its use can lead to confusion. The potential for confusion was one ground of appeal in the important Hong Kong case of *HKSAR v Ma Wai-kwan*.[7] The case concerned the constitutional validity of Hong Kong's Provisional Legislative Council and the acts of the National People's Congress. That validity turned on the meaning of *shall* in Article 160 of Hong Kong's *Basic Law*. Article 160 provided (with our emphasis):

> Upon the establishment of the Hong Kong Special Administrative Region, the laws previously in force in Hong Kong *shall be adopted* as the laws of the Region . . .'

[7] [1997] 2 HKC 315.

Did the italicised words require a positive act of adoption (which had not occurred) before the previous laws became the laws of the Region; or did they mean that the laws previously in force in Hong Kong *are* the laws of the Region, without the need for a positive act of adoption? The Court of Appeal held in favour of the latter construction. In the context of the Basic Law as a whole, *shall* here was used not in the sense of requiring future action, but in a present, declaratory sense.[8]

Judicial authority on *shall* centres around two prime areas. The first concerns the difference between futurity and a precondition. The second concerns the difference between an obligation and a direction.

Futurity or precondition?

The issue here is the relationship of a triggering event to the date of the document: can a triggering event already have taken place by the time the document is written, even though the document may not come into effect until much later? On one line of authorities, typified by *Re Walker*,[9] the answer is 'no', because *shall* necessarily implies futurity. On this view, a *shall* provision relates only to the period after the document's date. It speaks only of events occurring after the document comes into existence. But on a contrary line of authorities, based on *Loring v Thomas*,[10] the answer is 'yes', because a *shall* provision is a mere description of a state of affairs at a later date, setting out a precondition to some other occurrence. On this second view, something which has already happened before the document's date can be a triggering event.

To illustrate the different approaches, consider the following clause from a partnership deed:

> If any partner shall become bankrupt, the other partners may terminate the partnership.

Can the partnership be terminated on the ground that a partner was already bankrupt at the date of the partnership agreement? According to *Re Walker*, 'no', because *shall* indicates that the parties have in mind a bankruptcy occurring *after* the date of the partnership deed. According to *Loring v Thomas*, 'yes', because the precondition to termination is bankruptcy, *whenever* it occurs.

[8] See especially [1997] 2 HKC 315 at 326–8 (Chan CJHC), 347 (Nazareth VP).
[9] *Re Walker* [1930] 1 Ch 469. [10] *Loring v Thomas* (1861) 30 LJ Ch 789.

The problem is acute in the case of wills, which come into effect not when they are signed but when the testator dies. Wills commonly contain references such as 'who shall die in my lifetime' or 'who shall predecease me' or the like – as in a bequest to the children of those 'who shall die in my lifetime' or to the children of those 'who shall predecease me'. On the first line of authorities, the phrase does not encompass the children of persons already dead at the date of the will.[11] Likewise, the phrase 'who shall be born' would usually exclude persons born before the date of the will.[12]

In *Re Walker*, Lord Hanworth MR said that the 'natural meaning' of *shall* was 'as a word of futurity'.[13] However, that 'natural meaning' clearly did not commend itself to the judges in the *Loring v Thomas* line of cases.[14] An example is *Metcalfe v Williams*,[15] which concerned a substitutionary gift drafted in these terms: if a child of the testator 'shall die in my [that is, the testator's] lifetime', then that child's share should pass to that child's children. A son of the testator had died before the testator made his will. Were the children of that son entitled to the share which their father would have taken had he survived the testator? The court held 'yes'. Likewise, a surrender of copyhold land[16] to such uses as a certain person (the testator) 'shall' by will direct was held to apply to a will executed before the surrender, since the court considered that the surrender referred to whatever will was in existence at the testator's death.[17] So also a clause in a trust deed divesting property

[11] See, for example, *Christopherson v Naylor* (1816) 1 Mer 320; 35 ER 693; *Gorringe v Mahlstedt* [1907] AC 225; *Re Cope* [1908] 2 Ch 1, CA; *Re Brown* [1917] 2 Ch 232; *Re Walker* [1930] 1 Ch 469 (Eve J and CA); *Re McPherson* [1968] VR 368; *Re Rowlands* [1973] VR 225. See also *Bateman's Will Trusts* [1970] 3 All ER 817 (Pennycuick V-C) ('as shall be stated by me').

[12] *Gibbons v Gibbons* (1881) 6 App Cas 471.

[13] *Re Walker* [1930] All ER Rep 392 at 395, CA. This passage did not find its way into the authorised report, [1930] 1 Ch 469; but it appears in other reports of the case: (1930) 99 LJ Ch 225 at 228; (1930) 142 LT 472 at 474.

[14] *Loring v Thomas* (1861) 30 LJ Ch 789; *Re Birchall* [1940] 1 All ER 545, CA; *Re Lambert* [1908] 2 Ch 117; *Barraclough v Cooper* [1908] 2 Ch 121n, HL; *Re Metcalfe* [1909] 1 Ch 424; *Re Sheppard* (1855) 1 K & J 269; 69 ER 459; *Re Rayner* (1925) 134 LT 141; *Re Halliday* [1925] SASR 104; *Re Sewell* [1929] SASR 226; *Re Booth's Will Trusts* (1940) 163 LT 77.

[15] [1914] 2 Ch 61, CA.

[16] The appropriate way of transferring copyhold land was by surrendering the land to the lord of the manor, followed by a regrant to the intended transferee. Copyhold is now obsolete.

[17] *Spring v Biles* (1783) 1 TR 435n at 437 (99 ER 11182n at 1184), Lord Mansfield: 'A will speaks at different times for different purposes; to many purposes from the date; to other purposes from the testator's death.'

from the donee if the donee 'shall become bankrupt' was held to mean simply 'being bankrupt'; it was immaterial whether the bankruptcy occurred before or after the date of the trust deed.[18] And in a recent Australian case, a statute provided that where an insurance policy indemnified a person against liability, the amount of the liability 'shall . . . be a charge' on the insurance moneys payable in respect of that liability. The insurer argued that *shall* here required a construction that the charge arose only where the event insured against occurred after the policy came into existence: that is, *shall* required an element of futurity. The court rejected this argument, holding that the charge arose even where the event insured against occurred before the policy was taken out: that is, *shall* here did not import any element of futurity, but merely described an existing legal result.[19]

These differing conclusions on the effect of *shall* point up the dangers in its uncritical use. They illustrate the folly in assuming that *shall* is a word of legal precision, with a certain and sure meaning. Ultimately, whether *shall* is read as importing a necessary element of futurity or merely a precondition (whether occurring before or after the date of the document) depends entirely on context, each case turning on its own particular circumstances – thus introducing easy potential for litigation. As Lord Greene MR said in *Re Donald*, concerning the use of *shall*:

> A number of cases have been cited. I find no assistance in scrutinising the exact language of those cases and comparing it with the language used in this case. In cases dealing with the construction of wills a comparison in, so to speak, parallel columns between the language used in wills which have been the subject of decided cases and that used in the will before the court does not often lead to a useful result. On the contrary, it very often tends to confuse.[20]

If it is necessary to express the future, what word should be used? Most modern drafters, seeing the difficulties in *shall*, use *will* instead. But of course, this is not without difficulties of its own. *Will* carries as many

[18] *Manning v Chambers* (1847) 1 De G & Sm 282 (69 ER 1069), interpreted in *Seymour v Lucas* (1860) 29 LJ Ch 841 (Kindersley V-C). See also *Re Akeroyd's Settlement* [1893] 3 Ch 363.

[19] *FAI General Insurance Co. Ltd v McSweeney* (1997) 73 FCR 379 (Fed Ct, Australia, Lindgren J).

[20] [1947] 1 All ER 764 at 766, CA.

problems as *shall*, for although normally denoting futurity it can also denote compulsion,[21] an issue to which we now turn.

Direction or obligation?

Courts usually construe *shall* as creating an obligation. Sometimes, though, they construe it as giving a mere direction.[22] To illustrate: in *Halley v Watt*[23] a Scottish statute provided (in a section headed 'Jury trial in Sheriff Court') that, in an employee's action for damages against an employer, either party could require that 'the cause shall be tried before a jury'. This provision was held to give a *right* to that mode of trial, regardless of the court's view about the suitability of the case for trial by jury: in effect, *shall* was mandatory. In contrast, in *R v Craske, ex parte Metropolitan Police Commissioner*,[24] a provision that 'the court shall proceed to the summary trial' (that is, a trial without a jury) was held to be directory only, and did not deprive the court of the power to allow the accused to elect for trial by jury instead of summary trial.

Shall has even been found in the same section of a statute both to impose a duty and to grant a right.[25] This result has been called curious,[26] but it is far from unknown.[27] For example, in *Hatton v Beaumont* the Australian High Court held that paragraph (a) of a liquor licensing regulation, which stated that an appellant 'shall lodge . . . a notice of his intention to appeal . . . within twenty-one days' of the decision appealed against, was mandatory. Yet the Court also held that paragraph (e) of the same regulation, which stated that the appellant 'shall within seven days of lodging his notice of

[21] See *Rayfield v Hands* [1958] 2 All ER 194 ('will' imposes obligation); *Hector Steamship Co. Ltd v VO Sovfracht Moscow* [1945] KB 343 ('will' equals 'is bound to').

[22] For examples, see *Stroud's Judicial Dictionary*, 5th edn, ed. John S. James (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1986), pp. 2403–11 (shortened entry in 6th edn, 2000, ed. D. Greenberg and A. Millbrook, pp. 2428–30).

[23] [1956] SLT 111.

[24] [1957] 2 QB 591.

[25] *Cooke v New River Co.* (1888) 38 Ch D 56, CA; on appeal (1889) 14 App Cas 698 at 699 (Lord Herschell): 'My lords, it has been my lot to construe many Acts of Parliament which were obscurely worded, but I do not think I ever met with one upon which it was more impossible to put a satisfactory construction than the statute with which we have to deal in the present case.'

[26] By the editor of *Stroud's Judicial Dictionary*, 5th edn, ed. John S. James (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1986), at p. 2409 (not repeated in 6th edn, ed. D. Greenberg and A. Millbrook).

[27] See George Coode, *On Legislative Expression*, 2nd edn (1852), pp. 17, 31; reprinted in E. Driedger, *The Composition of Legislation* (Ottawa: Department of Justice, 1976).

appeal deposit the sum of ten pounds or enter into a recognisance with one surety in the sum of ten pounds', was directory only, the appeal not being vitiated by its non-observance.[28]

Here too, the differing senses of *shall* point up the dangers inherent in its uncritical use. As with the futurity/precondition division, so also the obligation/direction division serves as a warning to those who assume that *shall*, so hallowed by usage, is necessarily precise. We return to the obligation/direction problem in Chapter 6, where we consider whether *shall* has any place in a modern legal document.

Obscure language

Obscure language should be an anathema in all legal writing, yet it abounds in legal documents. Lawyers may defend the language they use on the ground that it is necessary for legal efficacy, but legal efficacy and obscurity are strange bedfellows. So too are obscurity and precision. Almost always, simple language has just as much legal effect as obscure language, and it can be just as precise.

To illustrate, consider this description of leased property, drawn from an actual lease:

> ALL THOSE offices and toilet on the second floor of the building at Mill Lane shown for the purpose of identification only edged red on the plan annexed hereto (hereinafter called 'the Building').

This language is the product of pure habit. It is justified neither by legal necessity nor by precision. The words were intended to describe the leased property, which was the whole of the second floor in the building, and nothing more than the second floor. The drafter apparently inserted the references to 'the Building' and 'edged red on the plan' because, from a bird's-eye view, the boundaries of the building and of the floor to be let were identical. But surely it would have been clearer to say:

[28] (1978) 20 ALR 314.

> ALL THOSE offices and toilet (on the second floor of 'the Building' at Mill Lane) shown for the purpose of identification only edged red on the plan annexed hereto.

Once this stage is reached, unnecessary words and phrases could have been deleted in an attempt to write literate, modern English. Unnecessary words and phrases are: 'All those'; 'the purpose of'; 'hereto'. The word 'only' is also strictly unnecessary, because 'shown for identification' surely means shown for identification and not for any other purpose; and in any case, the whole phrase 'shown for identification' can be replaced with 'shown'. Also, we could define 'the building' and 'the plan' elsewhere. We could then describe the property as:

> The offices and toilet on the second floor of the building and shown edged red on the plan.

Unusual word order

Lawyers often adopt an unusual word order. Here are some typical examples taken from traditionally-drafted documents:

- 'title absolute'
- 'for the time being entitled'
- 'from time to time and at all times during the said lease well and substantially to repair'
- 'such documents as the vendor is required by legislation to furnish'
- 'as well before as after any judgment'
- 'as in this deed provided'
- 'that the tenant paying the rents hereby reserved and performing and observing the several covenants on its part herein contained shall peaceably hold and enjoy the leased property'
- 'the title above mentioned'
- 'therein appearing'
- 'will at the cost of the borrowers forthwith comply with the same'
- 'and may thereafter upon the demised premises or on some part thereof in the name of the whole re-enter'
- 'being then a licensed moneylender'.

Examples such as these cause little trouble for lawyers, for whom inverting word order becomes second nature. But they trouble the non-lawyer, unfamiliar with such linguistic eccentricities.

Separating parts of a verb

A particular source of difficulty is the device of widely separating two parts of a verb. Sense may well be lost, as in this clause:

> In the event of any breach by the Cardholder of this agreement the Bank *may* in circumstances where the Principal Cardholder fails to comply or to procure compliance with the terms of a notice served by the Bank upon the Principal Cardholder *require* repayment in full of the outstanding balance on the Account.

The verb combination here is 'may require', but the modal auxiliary 'may' is separated from its associated main verb 'require' by twenty-seven words. The whole passage contains only fifty-three words, so the verb is split by more than half the total words – no wonder the reader is thrown. It would have been better first to state what the bank has power to do, and then to specify the circumstances in which it is entitled to exercise that power. The result would look something like this (stripping out the unnecessary capitals):

> The bank may require repayment in full of the balance on the account if the cardholder breaks this agreement and the principal cardholder fails to comply with the terms of a notice served by the bank.

Consider also this example, cited in Gowers, *The Complete Plain Words*,[29] involving a split infinitive. The 'rule' against splitting the infinitive is not followed as strongly today as it once was. But in this example the crescendo of splitting is so extreme that it hinders comprehension:

[29] 3rd edn (London: Penguin, 1987), p. 145.

The tenant hereby agrees:

(i) *to pay* the said rent;
(ii) *to* properly *clean* all the windows;
(iii) *to* at all times properly *empty* all closets;
(iv) *to* immediately any litter or disorder shall have been made by him or for his purpose on the staircase or landings or any other part of the said building or garden *remove* the same.

Frequently litigated words and phrases

Chapter 2 discussed the dangers in over-reliance on precedent as an aid to interpretation. Traditional legal drafters tend to assume that well-litigated words and phrases should be retained, in the belief that documents benefit from this judicial critique of meaning. However, it would be more logical to be suspicious of constantly litigated words and phrases, for the frequency of litigation suggests an inherent problem with meaning. Any word or phrase that has produced frequent litigation should surely be shunned. Let us consider two examples, familiar to all legal drafters: 'best endeavours' and 'forthwith'.

'Best endeavours' is commonly used by contracting parties: they promise to use their 'best endeavours' to carry out a particular act. Sometimes the use of the phrase suggests a compromise, neither party being willing to accept a clear and unambiguous statement of their respective obligations.[30] This can be seen in the following example, taken from an English case:

> The sellers will use their best endeavours to secure delivery of the goods on the estimated delivery dates from time to time furnished, but they do not guarantee time of delivery, nor shall they be liable for any damages or claim of any kind in respect of delay in delivery.[31]

The phrase is not confined to contracts. It is used in various contexts, including letters, statutes, and professional undertakings. Drafters who use it should recognise its inherent vagueness. Goff J put it plainly in 1972, when he

[30] M. D. Varcoe-Cocks, 'Best Endeavours' (1986) 83 *Law Society Gazette*, p. 1992.
[31] This was the contractual term considered in *Monkland v Jack Barclay Ltd* [1951] 1 All ER 714, CA.

asked rhetorically whether anything could be less specific or more uncertain than an exhortation to use 'best endeavours'. In his view, there was absolutely no criterion by which best endeavours were to be judged.[32] The numerous cases on the meaning of the phrase support this view.[33] In professional undertakings its use is particularly dangerous, given the inherent vagueness and open-endedness it introduces into the obligation undertaken. For this reason, the Law Society of England and Wales has warned solicitors against giving a 'best endeavours' undertaking.[34]

The word 'forthwith' has also led to a great deal of litigation. It is too open-ended to admit of certainty. Some of the many judicial discussions are mentioned in the footnote.[35]

To these two examples we could add many more. All give the lie to the belief that judicial exposition of the meaning of a word or phrase demands its retention. In reality, the opposite is often the case. Drafters should beware of frequently litigated words or phrases, lest they incorporate into their documents the very uncertainty that led to the litigation.

Foreign words and phrases

More commonly than ordinary writers, lawyers delight in foreign words and phrases – usually Latin or law French. Many of these words and phrases have

[32] *Bower v Bantam Investments Ltd* [1972] 3 All ER 349 at 355.

[33] In the first edition, we cited 26 cases over the preceding 20 years where the courts were called on to determine the meaning of 'best endeavours' and similar obligations. For the purposes of this edition we made an electronic database search. As at January 2006, the search produced the following 'results' for the term 'best endeavours': 2335 (UK), 1385 (Australia), 52 (USA, limited search only), 435 (Canada). By 'results', we mean the number of times the term 'best endeavours' is mentioned in the database. The term might be mentioned a number of times in a case, and not all cases involve an argument about its meaning. Nevertheless, the exercise suggests that the term is heavily litigated.

[34] Nicola Taylor (ed.), *The Guide to the Professional Conduct of Solicitors*, 8th edn (London: The Law Society, 1999), p. 355.

[35] *Staunton v Wood* (1851) SC 15 Jur 1123 (delivery 'forthwith' could be within 14 days); *Re Southam*; *ex parte Lamb* (1881) 19 Ch D 169 (notice entered on a Friday and given the following Monday not given 'forthwith'); *Bontex Knitting Works Ltd v St John's Garage* (1943) 60 TLR 44, 253 (one hour's delay in delivery not delivery 'forthwith'); *R v Secretary of State for Social Services; ex parte Child Poverty Action Group*, *The Times* 10 October 1988 (duty to submit a social security claim 'forthwith' did not arise until the department was in possession of the basic information to enable a claim to be determined).

long since disappeared from ordinary English speech and writing. Lawyers themselves may only half-understand them. Examples are:

- *de bene esse*: for the time being (said of something which suffices for now but may be replaced by something better)
- *en ventre sa mere*:[36] conceived but not born
- *force majeure*: an event which can neither be anticipated nor controlled
- *inter alia*: among other things
- *inter se*: among themselves
- *inter vivos*: between living people
- *mutatis mutandis*: with the necessary changes made
- *per stirpes*: by the stocks of descent
- *pro tanto*: to that extent
- *res ipsa loquitur*: the reason is self-evident (literally: the thing itself speaks)
- *toties quoties*: as often as required
- *ultra vires*: beyond power

Phrases of this kind are best abandoned, for three reasons. First, the average reader will not understand them. Second, their foreign origins convey a sense of precision and technicality which they simply do not possess.[37] Third, they are not true legal terms of art. Almost always they can be discarded for an equivalent in modern English.

Long sense-bites

Another characteristic of traditional legal drafting is long slabs of unbroken text – long 'sense-bites'. When combined with a deliberate absence of punctuation and a lack of paragraphing and indentation, this produces impenetrable text, confounding comprehension. An excessive example can be seen in Panel 6, a leviathan clause taken from a standard-form mortgage formerly used by a leading New Zealand bank.

[36] A phrase condemned as long ago as 1840 as 'repulsive': Gael, *A Practical Treatise on the Analogy between Legal and General Composition* (Butterworths: London, 1840), p. 29. For a modern parody, see R. Atherton, 'En Ventre sa Frigidaire' (1999) 19 *Legal Studies*, p. 139.

[37] For example, see *Delnorth Pty Ltd v State Bank of New South Wales* (1995) 17 ACSR 379 (NSW Sup Ct, Cohen J) on the inherent uncertainty of *mutatis mutandis*; *Schellenberg v Tunnell Holdings Pty Ltd* (2000) 74 ALJR 743 (Australian High Court) on the precise scope of the doctrine of *res ipsa loquitur* (notably, no judge in this case suggests a translation, perhaps assuming that for their readers it is unnecessary).

33. Where the mortgaged property or any part thereof consists of a stratum estate created pursuant to the provisions of the Unit Titles Act 1972 and any amendment thereto (in this clause referred to as "the Act") then without in any way (except as provided in this clause) limiting any of the other provisions of this security all sums properly levied on or recoverable from the Mortgagors in respect of the mortgaged property by the Body Corporate and all and every requirement imposed on the Mortgagors by virtue of the Act or the rules of the Body Corporate or pursuant to any resolution whether unanimous or otherwise of the Body Corporate to be paid observed or performed have been paid observed and performed up to the day of the date of this Mortgage, and the Mortgagors will at all times during the continuance of this security pay all sums properly levied on or recoverable from the Mortgagors in respect of the mortgaged property by the Body Corporate and will observe and perform all and every requirement imposed on the Mortgagors by virtue of the Act or the rules of the Body Corporate or pursuant to any resolution whether unanimous or otherwise of the Body Corporate to be paid observed or performed on the part of the Mortgagors and will keep the Bank indemnified against all actions suits proceedings costs damages claims and demands which may be incurred or sustained by reason of the non-payment of the said sums or any part thereof or by the breach or non-observance or non-performance of the said requirements or any of them and upon any breach or non-observance or non-performance of this covenant the Bank shall be at liberty (but without any obligation so to do) at any time and from time to time to make and do all or any of such payments acts and things as aforesaid on behalf of the Mortgagors AND the Mortgagors shall make all reasonable endeavours to procure that the Body Corporate shall observe and perform all and every requirement imposed on it by the provisions of the Act and by its rules and pursuant to any resolution whether unanimous or otherwise of the Body Corporate. During the continuance of the security it shall be lawful for but not obligatory upon the Bank to exercise the voting rights of the Mortgagors at any meeting of the Body Corporate in accordance with the provisions of the Act and where such voting rights are not exercised by the bank they shall be exercised by the Mortgagors in accordance with such directions as the Bank may give from time to time to the Mortgagors in writing not less than twenty-four hours prior to the meeting or adjourned meeting at which such voting rights are capable of being exercised and if no such direction be given within the time so limited the Mortgagors may exercise such voting rights in such manner subject to the covenant conditions or agreements herein contained or implied as the Mortgagors may think fit. The Mortgagors shall forthwith on receiving notice of any such meeting furnish the Bank with a copy of the notice. The Mortgagors shall during the continuance of this security give to the Bank such information relating to the affairs of the Body Corporate as the Bank shall reasonably require. The Mortgagors will not at any time during the continuance of this security without the previous consent in writing of the Bank signed by any of the Officers of the Bank join in any resolution of the Body Corporate to approve any transfer lease or easement or other dealing affecting the common property or land that is to become part of the common property. The Mortgagors will not at any time during the continuance of this security join in any resolution with the Body Corporate to forgo the insurance to be effected by the Body Corporate pursuant to the Act and if such resolution is now in effect the Mortgagors shall forthwith give written notice to the Body Corporate that the Mortgagors require such insurance cover paid and provided that for the purpose of construing Clause 5 of this security any insurance effected by the Body Corporate in respect of the mortgaged property pursuant to the Act shall be deemed to have been effected by the Mortgagors notwithstanding that it is not in the name of the Bank and that the bank alone may not have the power to settle compromise and recover any claim against the insurance company with which the insurance has been effected. The Mortgagors will not during the continuance of this security without the previous consent in writing of the bank signed by any of the Officers of the Bank either alone or together with the other proprietors of Units make any application to the District Land Registrar pursuant to the Act to cancel the unit plan and will (unless the Bank otherwise requests) make all reasonable endeavours to procure that the Body Corporate or the administrator will not make the application to the High Court for an order cancelling the unit plan pursuant to the Act and the making of any such application without such consent as aforesaid shall be deemed to constitute a default in the performance or observance of the terms of these presents AND the Mortgagors will not during the continuance of this security without the previous consent in writing of the bank signed by any Officers of the Bank make any application to the District Land Registrar for the deposit of a plan of redevelopment pursuant to the Act or join in making such application or in any resolution of the Body Corporate to make such application. The Mortgagors will not during the continuance of this security without the previous consent in writing of the Bank signed by any of the Officers of the Bank make any application to the High Court for the appointment of an administrator pursuant to the Act and will unless the Bank otherwise requests make all reasonable efforts to procure that the Body Corporate shall not make such application. In any case where the High Court makes an order pursuant to Section 42 or Section 43 of the Act and the Mortgagors did not in the case of an order made pursuant to Section 42 support the resolution or act or in the case of an order made pursuant to Section 43 did support the resolution or act then the making of such order shall be deemed to constitute a default in the performance or observance of the terms of these presents.

Panel 6 Extract of bank mortgage

Techniques are available to break text into digestible slices. Some – such as the use of shorter sentences – we discuss in Chapter 6. Others, modern drafters would regard as inferior. For example, old-style documents helped to signal their contents and to guide their readers by putting whole words or phrases in capital letters. Located appropriately, this did much to break up dense text. Common examples include:

- NOW THIS DEED WITNESSETH
- ALL THAT
- TO HOLD
- PROVIDED THAT
- AND IT IS HEREBY AGREED AND DECLARED
- IN WITNESS

A typical block of type broken up like this can be seen in Panel 7. Use of capitals in this way (along with the occasional use of brackets) reduced enormously long sentences to a series of shorter passages which, in context, could be digested more easily.

Matters have improved somewhat in recent years. Nowadays, legal documents exhibit much more paragraphing, sub-paragraphing and indentation. Even so, lengthy slabs of text still appear, particularly in conveyancing documents. These formidable blocks of type should be broken up, if not into shorter sentences then certainly into shorter sense-bites. We return to this topic in Chapter 6.

Legalese and jargon

Legalese is more than merely the 'language of lawyers'. Rather, it is the language that lawyers would not use in ordinary communication but for the fact that they are lawyers.[38] Consider the following extract from a letter from one lawyer to another:

> We have now seen our client as regards preliminary enquiries and accordingly return replies to the same herewith together with any enclosures referred to therein.

[38] Stanley Robinson, 'Drafting – Its Substance and Teaching' (1973) 25 *Journal of Legal Education*, p. 516.

NOW THIS DEED WITNESSETH as follows:-

1. IN consideration of the sum of Nineteen thousand seven hundred and fifty pounds (£19,750) paid to the Lessor by the Tenant on or before the execution hereof (the receipt whereof the Lessor hereby acknowledges) and of the rents and covenants hereinafter reserved and contained and on the part of the Tenant to be paid observed and performed the Lessor hereby demises unto the Tenant ALL THAT the upper maisonette being 25 Anyroad Derrytown (hereinafter called "the maisonette") forming part of the said property known as Numbers 25 and 27 Anyroad Derrytown Plymouth aforesaid (hereinafter called "the building") including one half part in depth of the structure between the floors of the maisonette and ceilings of the lower maisonette and (subject to clause 7(1) hereof) the internal and external walls of the maisonette to the same level and the land and structure of the building above the maisonette including the roof space gutters downpipes windows and window frames TOGETHER WITH the front garden and a portion of the rear garden which is delineated on the plan annexed hereto and thereon edged in green AND TOGETHER ALSO with the pathway (including the gate and gateway) edged blue on the said plan AND TOGETHER ALSO with the easements rights and privileges mentioned in the second schedule hereto subject as therein mentioned but EXCEPTING AND RESERVING as mentioned in the third schedule hereto TO HOLD the maisonette hereby demised unto the Tenant from the first day of April One thousand nine hundred and eighty for the term of ninety nine years paying therefor yearly during the said term the rent of Thirty pounds (£30) by equal yearly payments (in advance) on the twenty fifth day of December in every year free of all deductions whatsoever the first payment thereof being a proportionate part of the said annual sum calculated from the date hereof to the twenty fifth day of December next to be paid upon the signing hereof

Panel 7 Use of capitals to break up text

'Herewith' and 'therein' are pure legalese. So is 'the same', a phrase for which lawyers have a fondness verging on the pathological. ('As regards' is not strictly legalese, since its use is not specific to the legal profession; it is merely ugly English.) The sentence could have been written more simply:

> We have seen our client about preliminary enquiries and so can return replies to them together with the enclosures referred to.

Even better would be:

> We return replies to your preliminary enquiries.

The concept of 'returning replies' reflects the English practice by which preliminary enquiries were usually made on a two-column form, with the left column for the enquiries and the right column for the replies. Even so, no misunderstanding would be caused by an even shorter version:

> We reply to your preliminary enquiries.

Of course, legalese is not confined to letters between solicitors. It spills over into documents and letters that lawyers draft for clients. It is also rife in standard forms printed by publishers for use in legal offices. Here is an extract from a standard form of executor's oath:

> To the best of my/our knowledge information and belief there was no land vested in the said deceased which was settled previously to his/her death and not by his/her Will and which remained settled land notwithstanding such death.

This bears many of the marks of legalese. 'Knowledge', 'information' and 'belief' are synonyms or near-synonyms. They could have been deleted and replaced with: 'so far as I/we know'. The double negative ('no land . . . not by his/her Will') occurs frequently in legal documents, despite being a hindrance to understanding. 'The said deceased' has an impersonal tone – a tone which is typical and seemingly inevitable in legal forms. 'Notwithstanding' is a word rarely seen in everyday communication between lay writers. The paragraph could have been written:

> So far as I/we know, the deceased owned no settled land which remained settled land after his or her death.

Allied to legalese is jargon, by which we mean language peculiar to a profession. The Oxford English Dictionary gives as its original meaning the 'inarticulate utterance of birds, or a vocal sound resembling it; twittering; chattering'. Jargon abounds in legal and quasi-legal documents. Jargon may be acceptable in a document that a lawyer drafts solely for another lawyer, but it is not acceptable in a document that a lawyer drafts for a client. Almost certainly the client will find the language stilted, and may well have difficulty understanding it. Rarely can there be any justification in drafting a document that the client finds difficult to understand.

To illustrate the use of jargon, consider the following clause in a will:

> I hereby revoke all Wills made by me at any time heretofore. I appoint my Wife, Jean Heath, and Robert High, of Denton Road, Wolverhampton, aforesaid, Plumber, to be my Executors, and direct that all my Debts and Funeral Expenses shall be paid as soon as conveniently may be after my decease.

'At any time heretofore' and 'aforesaid' are pure jargon; both are unnecessary. Also unnecessary is the description 'Plumber' – unless two persons called Robert High live at Denton Road, Wolverhampton.[39] Unnecessary, too, is 'hereby', of which we say more below. All these words and phrases give the clause a legal feel without serving any legal purpose. Legal feel is further heightened in this example by jargon-like techniques. There is an overuse of capitals, as though virtually every noun needed one. Also, the direction to pay debts and funeral expenses 'as soon as conveniently may be' employs quaint language but adds nothing, since personal representatives have a duty to pay debts and funeral expenses. It would have been simpler and clearer to write:

> I revoke all previous wills.[40] I appoint as my executors my wife Jean Heath, and Robert High of Denton Road, Wolverhampton.

[39] The legal profession's zeal for stating occupations may hark back to the *Statute of Additions* 1413, which required court writs to contain details of the defendant's place of abode and occupation ('mistere', translated as 'mystery', an obsolete word for trade or profession).

[40] Strictly, 'previous' is tautologous, since a person cannot revoke a will that is not yet made. But it probably helps to clarify meaning to a non-lawyer.

'Hereby'

'Hereby' deserves special mention. Drafters in the traditional style have a particular affinity with it. Nothing is ever simply done; it is 'hereby' done. Presumably, the drafters consider that 'hereby' adds precision. But this is not always the case – 'hereby' can in fact introduce ambiguity. For example, in a New Zealand case a section in a statute gave landowners the right to compensation for loss or damage suffered from 'the exercise of any of the powers *hereby* given'. Did *hereby* mean 'by this section', or 'by this Part of the Act', or 'by this Act'? It took an appeal to the New Zealand Court of Appeal to decide that it meant 'by this Act'.[41]

It is true that 'hereby' can give a particular emphasis to an action. But even then it is usually legal surplusage. For example, in an Australian case, a tenant purported to exercise an option to renew a lease by sending a letter which began, plainly enough: 'We would hereby like to exercise our option to re-new the lease'. Were these words sufficient to indicate an intention, then and there, to exercise the option, or were they merely an expression of intention to exercise the option formally on some later occasion? The judge held that they amounted to an intent to exercise the option then and there. In reaching this conclusion, the judge considered that the use of 'hereby' was relevant. It was 'a very strong indication' that the option was being exercised by the letter.[42] On closer examination, however, it is obvious that the uncertainty arose from the polite expression 'we would like to' – an expression displaying a diffidence of tone appropriate in conversation but not in the exercise of legal rights. The judge could have reached the same conclusion even without the presence of *hereby*. Similar wording – minus the 'hereby' – has been held sufficient to exercise an option. For example, in another Australian case, the words 'we intend to exercise the option to re-new the lease' were held to be sufficiently clear to amount to an operative act as opposed to a mere statement of future intention. They constituted 'a clear and unequivocal act to exercise the option'.[43]

[41] *Superior Lands Ltd v Wellington City Council* [1974] 2 NZLR 251.
[42] *Riltang Pty Ltd v L Pty Ltd* (2002) 11 BPR 20,281 at 20,286 (para [24]).
[43] *Young v Lamb* (2001) 10 BPR 18,553 at 18,557 (paras [28], [30]).

Terms of art

To be distinguished from the unthinking and unnecessary use of jargon is the appropriate use of technical terms – 'terms of art'. Like other professions, law contains an irreducible minimum of terms of art, that is, terms which have a peculiar and fixed technical meaning, unmodified by context, and which are difficult and sometimes impossible to express in any other way.[44] Examples are *bailment*, *hearsay, deed* (in contrast to an agreement not under seal), *delivery* (in the sense of the act which brings a deed into operation), and *certiorari* (as in an order of certiorari).

However, we should not exaggerate the problems that terms of art might be thought to pose for drafters who wish to use modern, standard English. The number of genuine legal terms of art (in this narrow sense) is small.[45] More often than not, supposed terms of art are mere jargon. One writer suggests that 'term of art' is merely lawyers' jargon for lawyers' jargon.[46]

Many familiar legal words and phrases which bear the illusion of terms of art would be better abandoned, for two chief reasons. First, the illusion would disappear. Second, other words and phrases are better suited to the task. To illustrate: is 'moiety' more certain than 'half', or 'dwelling-house' more certain than 'house' or 'dwelling'? Or is the following standard description

> 'ALL THAT piece or parcel of land together with the messuage or dwelling-house erected thereon or on some part thereof situate at and known as No 3 St Andrew Street'

any more precise than the simple description '3 St Andrew Street'?

[44] In *Skerrits of Nottingham Ltd v Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions* [2000] 3 WLR 511 at 518, Robert Walker LJ described a 'term of art' as 'an expression which is used by persons skilled in some particular profession, art or science, and which the practitioners clearly understand even if the uninitiated do not'. The court held that 'curtilage' (as in the curtilage of a building) is not a term of art.

[45] Research in the United States suggests that in property documents the proportion of judicially defined terms is less than 3 per cent: B. Barr, G. Hathaway, N. Omichinski and D. Pratt, 'Legalese and the Myth of Case Precedent' (1985) 64 *Michigan Bar Journal*, p. 1136.

[46] David S. Levine, in the chapter '"My Client Has Discussed Your Proposal to Fill the Drainage Ditch with his Partners": Legal Language', in *State of the Language*, ed. Leonard Michaels and Christopher Ricks (Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980), p. 403.

A typical example of jargon in the guise of term of art is the phrase 'without prejudice to'. The phrase is commonly used to preserve the force of one provision while at the same time expressing another contrasting or overlapping provision. Here is an example from a tenant's covenant in a lease:

> *Without prejudice to* sub-clause (c) hereof not to create any interest in the Premises or any part thereof derived out of the Term howsoever remote or inferior and in particular but *without prejudice to* the generality of the foregoing not to underlet the Premises or any part thereof.

In this context, 'without prejudice to' has no legal magic demanding its use. Where it first appears in this example, it can be replaced by a simple English word such as 'despite'; where it second appears, it can be replaced by a phrase such as 'without affecting' or 'without limiting'.

'Without prejudice' also has an entirely different usage – to introduce a letter written in an attempt to settle a dispute. In this context, its purpose is to claim a form of privilege, to ensure that the letter cannot be used as evidence in court if the attempted settlement fails. It is legal shorthand for 'without prejudice to the position of the writer of the letter if the negotiations . . . propose[d] are not accepted'.[47] But this usage, too, is jargon in the guise of term of art. It also confuses readers. An English survey shows that a large percentage of non-lawyers misunderstand the phrase and are liable to be misled about its intended effect.[48] Moreover, its use does not guarantee privilege for the letter. Privilege depends on the rules of evidence that apply to the letter in the context in which it was written, not on the knee-jerk addition of 'without prejudice'. And the relevant rule of evidence is not dependent on use of the phrase 'without prejudice'. If it is clear from the surrounding circumstances that the parties were seeking to compromise the court case, evidence of the content of their negotiations is, as a general rule, inadmissible at the trial.[49]

[47] *Walker v Wilsher* (1889) 23 QBD 335 at 337 (Lindley LJ). For a later application, see *Unilever plc v The Procter & Gamble Co*. [1999] 1 WLR 1630.

[48] Mark Adler, 'Bamboozling the Public' [1991] *New Law Journal*, p. 1032: only 10 out of 77 people with some experience of lawyers 'clearly understood' the meaning; and of those who did not understand, 33 (or 43%) 'were under a misapprehension which seriously threatened their rights'.

[49] *Rush & Tompkins Ltd v Greater London Council* [1989] AC 1280 at 1299 per Lord Griffiths.

Peculiar linguistic conventions

Legal writing exhibits lingustic quirks that set it apart from other kinds of writing. These quirks are easily recognisable, and are almost always unnecessary. To take a simple illustration, lawyers habitually use words that have long since disappeared from ordinary speech. Examples are: *hereby*, *herein*, *hereunder*, *hereinafter*, *heretofore*, *herewith*, *wherein*, *whereas* (but still standard English when used to introduce a contrast), *thereof*, *thereto*, *therein*, *therefor*, *thereunder*. These words – like other examples considered earlier in this chapter – give legal writing a distinctive voice, but are quite unnecessary for legal efficacy. Usually they can be discarded entirely, or at least replaced by more modern equivalents.

In addition, lawyers often adopt linguistic conventions that have no basis in law, logic or modern usage. Examples are:

- 'of even date herewith', instead of 'dated the same as this document'
- 'these presents', instead of 'this document'
- 'the date hereof', instead of 'today'
- 'situate at', instead of 'at' or 'in'
- 'the county of Devon', instead of 'Devon'
- 'my said mother', instead of 'my mother'
- 'for the purpose of identification only more particularly delineated',[50] instead of 'for identification only' or 'more particularly delineated'
- 'jointly and severally' (a phrase we consider further in Chapter 7), instead of 'separately and together'.

In all these examples, the modern idiomatic equivalent is just as legally effective as its quirky counterpart.

Sometimes more radical treatment is required than merely substituting a modern equivalent. Examples are the formula customarily used to begin and end the operative part of a deed: 'now this deed witnesseth'[51] and 'in witness whereof the parties hereto have hereunto set their hands and seals the day and year first hereinbefore written'. Both these formalisms

[50] A phrase which is self-contradictory and should not be used: *Neilson v Poole* (1969) 210 EG 113. See further discussion of the use of plans in Chapter 6.

[51] Verbs with *-th* endings remain prevalent in legal documents to this day, though the usage was regional even in Shakespeare's day: Robert McCrum and others, *The Story of English*, 3rd edn (London: Faber & Faber, 2002), p. 101.

can be discarded, without threat to the legal efficacy of the deed (see Chapter 6).

Another quirk is the insistence on spelling dates in words, rather than simply using figures: thus, 'two thousand and six', instead of '2006'. Yet another, doubtless retained out of a sense of excessive caution, is the insistence on using both words and figures when referring to sums of money, as in the following: 'in consideration of fifty thousand pounds (£50,000)'. This legal convention is unnecessary. Words alone, or figures alone, will suffice; and figures, being more instantly recognisable to the eye, should be preferred. The convention may also be counterproductive if there is a discrepancy between the words and figures. To some extent, the discrepancy may be resolved by the principle that where a commercial document displays a discrepancy between words and figures, the words are presumed (rebuttably) to prevail.[52] This principle may have its origins in the practical reality that it is harder to write words than figures, and so mistakes are more likely to occur in the figures than in the words.[53] However that may be, the principle always yields to context,[54] a sure invitation to litigation.

Linguists have long known of these and other oddities of legal language. Two leading linguists, David Crystal and Derek Davy, in their 1969 analysis *Investigating English Style*, were intrigued by the rarity in legal documents of substitute words like *he*, *she*, *they*, *this*, *that* and *it*.[55] (They might also have observed the corresponding rarity of the possessive forms of these words.) The most notable omission they found to be *it*: where used in phrases like 'It is agreed', *it* is the subject rather than a substitute for something mentioned before. Crystal and Davy also highlighted a number of other characteristics:

- Adverbs and adverbial phrases or clauses are placed next to the verbs they modify. This results in oddities such as 'a proposal to effect with the

[52] *Saunderson v Piper* (1839) 5 Bing (NC) 425; 132 ER 1163 (a case involving a discrepancy between words and figures in a bill of exchange but pre-dating the legislation by which words prevail over figures in negotiable instruments); *Re Hammond* [1938] 3 All ER 308; *Coote v Borland* (1904) 35 SCR (Can) 282 at 284.

[53] *Bankstown Airport Ltd v Noor Al Houda Islamic College Pty Ltd* (2003) NSW ConvR 56–038 at [27].

[54] *Re Hammond* [1938] 3 All ER 308 at 309.

[55] David Crystal and Derek Davy, *Investigating English Style* (London: Longmans, 1969), p. 202.

Society an assurance' (rather than 'a proposal to effect an assurance with the Society').

- Sentences are unduly long. Sequences of connected information are put into complex sentences capable of standing alone, instead of in short sentences with linking devices to show continuity.
- Postmodifying elements are inserted at those points in a group where they will most clearly give the required sense. Though the aim is precision, the practice produces oddities such as 'the payment to the owner of the total amount' (rather than 'the payment of the total amount to the owner') and 'any instalments then remaining unpaid of the rent' (instead of 'any instalments of the rent then remaining unpaid').[56]

Nouns instead of verbs

Another linguistic convention is the use of noun phrases instead of verbs – the practice of 'nominalisation'. This convention is not peculiar to legal writing; it also infects bureaucratic and official language. But in legal documents it is endemic. For example, parties to legal documents don't 'decide' to do something; instead, they 'make a decision'. They don't 'resolve', but 'pass a resolution'. They don't 'sever' a joint tenancy, but 'effect a severance'. This practice of nominalisation might be thought to achieve a certain formality of tone, but it is at the expense of effective communication. Verbs, especially strong verbs, communicate more effectively. They help make writing more direct.

Overuse of the passive

Traditional legal drafters slip easily into the passive, instinctively more at home with the indirect, formal style it exudes. Yet all writing texts – including legal writing texts – say that the active voice communicates more effectively. The active is more direct, driving home the message. The passive is less direct, muddying the message.

The passive can also obscure who is to do something, causing the drafter to overlook important matters. For example, the constitution of a company

[56] Ibid., pp. 204, 201, 213, 205 respectively.

may provide: 'A meeting of the Board *is to be called* each month.' Who is to call the meeting? If this clause had been drafted in the active voice, that question would have been obvious to the drafter. The active voice requires the drafter necessarily to identify the person with not only the power but also the *duty* to call the meeting. That could be important in deciding whether the meeting has been called validly – that is, by the right person.

Some texts imply that drafters should *never* use the passive, but that is going too far. On occasions the passive is convenient – for example, where the doer of an act is intentionally left unstated. Our point is that lawyers tend to write in the passive instinctively. It is better to avoid the passive, except where the drafter makes a reasoned decision to use it.

Deeming

'Deeming' is common in legal documents. It is generally used to create a legal fiction: a thing is deemed to be something else, or an event is deemed to have occurred, despite evidence to the contrary. To a non-lawyer, the device must seem contrived. To a lawyer, however, it is second nature. Indeed, the more openly fictional a statement, the more readily lawyers accept deeming. So a lawyer can draft, with hardly a second thought, 'In this contract, black is deemed to be white', even though in the real world the statement is patent nonsense. The deeming makes it acceptable.

The main problem with 'deeming' is the artificiality it produces.[57] This impairs comprehension. In words befitting a Lewis Carroll character, Cave J said in 1891:

> Generally speaking, when you talk of a thing being deemed to be something, you do not mean to say that it is that which it is to be deemed to be. It is rather an admission that it is not what it is to be deemed to be, and that, notwithstanding it is not that particular thing, nevertheless . . . it is to be deemed to be that thing.[58]

Lawyers also use 'deemed' to mean 'considered to be', or 'adjudged to be', or simply 'is'. Here the usage is not so much to create a legal fiction as to

[57] See *Burrell & Kinnaird v Attorney General* [1937] AC 286, HL.
[58] *R v Norfolk County Council* (1891) 60 LJ QB 379 at 380.

satisfy a state of fact. For example, a lease may provide that a tenant 'shall be deemed to be in default' if the rent is in arrears for seven days. What is meant is that the tenant *is* in default if the rent is in arrears for seven days. The 'deeming' could be discarded.[59]

Definitions

Stretched definitions

Often found with deeming provisions are stretched definitions. By 'stretched', we mean definitions that give a word a meaning beyond what the reader would expect. This unhelpful technique is particularly pernicious where the word has a well-understood lay meaning. Sometimes, the technique produces unintended humour, as in Australian statutes that define 'fish' to include beachworm and 'fingerprint' to include toeprint.[60]

The dangers of stretched definitions, whether or not in conjunction with 'deeming' provisions, are well-documented.[61] They can impair communication between drafter and reader. They can trap the drafter as well as the reader. And they are an easy source of ridicule, inviting caricature of lawyers' language.[62] Stanley Robinson and Reed Dickerson call stretched definitions 'Humpty Dumptyisms', echoing Humpty Dumpty's scornful assertion: 'When *I* use a word, it means just what I choose it to mean – neither more nor less.'[63]

Stretched definitions overlook the reality that language is a form of communication based on convention and habit. To succeed, communication must evoke a response in the person to whom it is addressed. That response

[59] See *Barclays Bank Ltd v Inland Revenue Commissioner* [1961] AC 509 at 541 (Lord Denning).

[60] *Fisheries Management Act* 1994 (NSW), s 5; *Crimes Act* 1958 (Vic), s 464.

[61] See E. L. Piesse, *Elements of Drafting*, 10th edn (eds J. K. Aitken and Peter Butt, Sydney: Lawbook Co., 2004), p. 49; Robinson, *Drafting*, p. 58; Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, 2nd edn (Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown and Co., 1986), p. 140.

[62] As in the spoof case of *R v Ojibway* (1965) 8 *Criminal Law Quarterly*, p. 137 (definition of 'small bird' stretched to include horse); *Nada Shah v Sleeman* (1917) 19 WALR 119 (definition of 'domestic animal' stretched to include camel).

[63] Lewis Carroll, *Through the Looking Glass* (Chicago: Wellington Publishing, 1989), p. 127. For a legal analysis of this passage, see Lord Hoffmann in *Investors Compensation Scheme Ltd v West Bromwich Building Society* [1998] 1 WLR 896 at 914, HL.

depends on the addressee's existing store of usage, and that store of usage varies from person to person. For as Richard Robinson pointed out in his book *Definition*,[64] a word is a human contrivance, and its meaning can only be what some person means by it. Words do not have an inherently correct meaning; there is no natural relationship between a word and what it refers to. To quote Justice Holmes's famous aphorism, 'a word is not a crystal, transparent and unchanged', but rather is 'the skin of a living thought and may vary greatly in color and content according to the circumstances and the time in which it is used'.[65] Nevertheless, most words in everyday usage convey a common core of understanding, and the reader's task is made more difficult when a word with an accepted core of meaning is stretched to mean the unexpected.

Over-defining

Over-defining bedevils modern legal documents. It is a comparatively recent phenomenon. Drafters feel compelled to define every term, even terms that are used once only or in one clause only. The result is page after page of definitions. The document becomes long and unwieldy. The reader is forced to keep jumping between substantive provisions and definitions.

A definition is unnecessary if the meaning of the word or phrase is clear or can be readily ascertained from the context. Also, a word or phrase need not be defined merely because it is technical or unusual. However, if a definition is genuinely required, it should not be shunned merely because the term is used only once or twice.[66] The practice has been condemned,[67] but by no means deserves the scorn poured on it.[68]

Sometimes definitions are used to define words or phrases that appear only in other definitions. This incestuous device eases the drafter's task, but at the cost of irritating the reader.

To help reduce dependence on definitions, more use could be made of the parliamentary drafter's device of describing rather than defining. To take an example from England and Wales, s 28 of the *Crime and Disorder Act* 1998 states:

[64] (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1950), p. 37.
[65] *Towne v Eisner* 245 US 418 at 425 (1918).
[66] See, e.g. *Fire and Rescue Services Act* 2004 (UK), ss 19, 20, 32, 33.
[67] See Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, p. 150.
[68] See Robinson, *Definition* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1950), p. 80.

An offence is racially aggravated if –

The private drafter would almost certainly be drawn in a dictionary-type definition, such as:

'Racially aggravated' means . . .

Some commonly encountered definitions are strictly redundant because they are supplied by statute. For example, most common law jurisdictions have statutory provisions along the following lines:

- *month* means calendar month
- *person* includes a corporation
- the masculine includes the feminine and vice versa
- the singular includes the plural and vice versa.[69]

Subject to a qualification mentioned below, to repeat the effect of these provisions is legally superfluous. And as we comment in our discussion of inclusive language in Chapter 6, in a specially drawn modern document the formula 'masculine includes feminine' should be unnecessary.

In like vein, most common law jurisdictions have statutory provisions to the effect that the benefit of a covenant made with more than one person is joint and several.[70] To state this in the document is also superfluous. In contrast, however, statute generally says nothing about the *burden* of a covenant made by more than one person. Hence it is common to see provisions spelling out the position for both the benefit and the burden. This achieves a nice symmetry, which can hardly be open to much criticism.

However, let us now add a qualification to this discussion. Sometimes it is desirable to indicate the intended meaning of words and phrases, even if they are enshrined in statute. Lay readers cannot be presumed to know the statutory provisions. A document ought to be as comprehensible as possible on its face, and as complete in itself as it can reasonably be. As so often, this calls for fine judgment by the drafter. Documents can be so cluttered with legally superfluous material that they verge on the absurd.

[69] In England and Wales, the provision is found in s 61 of the *Law of Property Act* 1925.

[70] In England and Wales, the provision is found in s 81 of the *Law of Property Act* 1925. For the meaning of 'joint and several', see Chapter 7.

Disguise of an operative element

A deviant form of definition is the 'stuffed' definition.[71] By stuffed, we mean a definition that carries some operative element. An example, taken from a contract for the sale of land, is:

> 'Completion date' means 30 June 2006, and on that date the purchaser must pay the purchase price and relieve the vendor of liability for all rates and taxes payable on the property.

This goes further than merely defining the term 'completion date'. In the guise of a definition, it imposes contractual obligations. The result is to hide operative obligations in a part of the document where the reader does not expect to find them. The technique does not render the document invalid, but it irritates the reader and hinders efficient understanding.

Again, consider the following definition from a trust deed:

> 'The specified period' means a period beginning at the date of execution of these presents and enduring for eighty years and the said number of years shall be the perpetuity period applicable hereto.

The purpose here is to define the perpetuity period applying to the document as the 'specified period'. It would be better to declare in a main clause simply that the 'specified period' is the perpetuity period, and then to define the specified period as '80 years beginning today'. Better still would be to remove the reference to 'specified period' altogether, and simply say:

> The perpetuity period applicable to this deed is 80 years beginning today.

Excessively detailed definitions

Not content merely with incorporating definitions of questionable necessity, many drafters attempt to extend them to cover every conceivable circumstance. This results in definitions of excessive length and detail.

Excessively long and detailed definitions can be counterproductive. In attempting to be all-inclusive, the drafter may unintentionally omit something which should have been included. The courts might then apply the maxim *expressio unius est exclusio alterius* (the expression of one thing excludes another; see Chapter 2) and treat the exclusion as deliberate. The

[71] A Reed Dickerson phrase: *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, p. 151.

drafter's excessive zeal has then served only to create loopholes. Lord Wilberforce alluded to this risk in *Seay v Eastwood*, a case dealing with legislation to control gambling. In the context of a statutory definition of 'bookmaker', he said that it was impossible to frame definitions to cover every variety of gambling activity: 'attempts to do so may indeed be counter-productive, since each added precision merely provides an incentive to devise a variant which eludes it'.[72]

'Unless the context requires otherwise'

Drafters conventionally include in their definition clause the cautionary rider 'unless the context requires otherwise', or 'where the context so admits', or the like. The purpose is clear enough: to prevent difficulties of interpretation if the drafter inadvertently uses a defined word in an undefined sense. Two quite different views may be put about this practice. The first view is based on the premise that careful drafters always use a defined term in its defined sense. Drafting lapses of this kind should not occur – particularly in an era of word processors with search facilities, where every occurrence of a word can be hunted down and checked for consistency of use. On this view, the rider should be unnecessary.[73] And, of course, its presence does not preclude litigation over meaning, because it leaves open the question whether the context in fact 'requires' or 'admits' a meaning different from the defined meaning.[74]

The second view is based on the premise that the meaning of a word or phrase always yields to its context. A judge can find that the same word or phrase is used in different senses in the one document. In particular, a judge can find that a defined word or phrase is used in a non-defined sense. So whether or not the rider is used, a judge is free to interpret the document as if it were used. So there can be little or no harm in including it.

[72] [1976] 1 WLR 1117 (HL) at 1121.

[73] See David Mellinkoff, *Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense* (St Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Co., 1982), p. 24: 'The formula abandons the client for whom the writing was prepared and the reader to whom it was addressed. It leaves them to the tender interpretation of strangers. If you define, you create an important part of the context. It is your responsibility to adjust your definition to fit your context, or your context to fit your definition, or to forget about definition as a route to precision.' For other objections, see Giles A. Morgan, 'Interpretation Clauses: a Cautionary Tale' (1996) 140 *Solicitors Journal*, p. 838 ('where the context otherwise requires').

[74] As in *Blue Metal Industries Ltd v Dilley* [1970] AC 827 (PC); *Floor v Davis* [1980] AC 695 (PC).

We return to the topic of definitions in Chapter 6, where we consider their proper use in modern documents.

Overuse of capitals

Overuse of capital letters is another mark of legal writing. The reason is primarily historical: see the ancient examples in Panel 8.

Today, initial capital letters are commonly used in legal documents to identify defined terms. This convention is so well-established that it may be difficult to discard, but care should be taken not to carry the practice to excess. We consider the convention further in Chapter 6.

There are two main objections to excessive use of capitals: the effect on the reader, and the influence on interpretation.

Effect on the reader

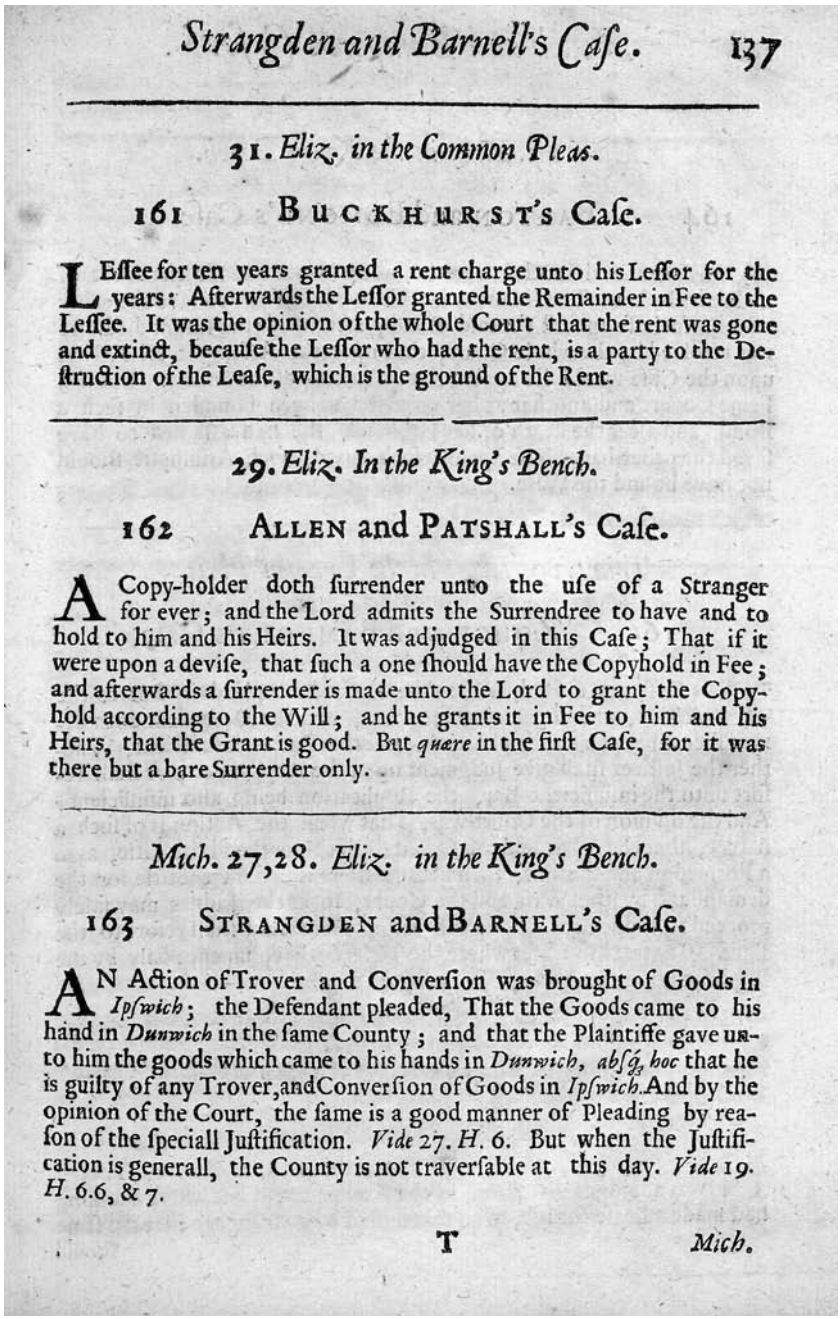
Psychologists do not agree on how the mind reads words. The prevailing view used to be that words are recognised as shapes.[75] Readers, it was said, absorb words because they have learned what words look like, in the same way that they recognise trees, cars, crockery and faces.[76] More recent evidence suggests that we use the letters of a word to recognise it, though the differing weight given to the importance of letter sequence ('serial letter recognition') or the whole word ('parallel letter recognition') makes analysis difficult.[77] In any event, modern readers, unused to the historical practice of frequent capitals, may find them irritating. Further, overuse of capitals offends the principle that legal writing is simply a version of ordinary writing; it should follow the rules and conventions of literate English.[78]

[75] Frank Smith, *Writing and the Writer* (London: Heinemann, 1982), p. 145.

[76] Frank Smith, *Reading*, 2nd edn (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1985), p. 107.

[77] See Kevin Larson, 'The Science of Word Recognition' (2004), at <www.microsoft.com/typography/ctfonts/WordRecognition.aspx>.

[78] David Mellinkoff, *Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense*, p. 44. See also Robert C. Dick, *Legal Drafting in Plain Language*, 3rd edn (Toronto: Thomson Canada, 1995), p. 112: 'Capital letters should be used only where necessary. In so many documents words such as Grantor, Grantee, Guarantor and Corporation are capitalized. Most of these capitalizations are completely unnecessary and are in fact visually disconcerting. In writing a letter to a friend, a lawyer would omit almost all capitals, except for words at the beginning of sentences. Much the same procedure should be followed in drafting.'



Strangden and Barnell's Caſe. 137

31. Eliz. in the Common Pleas.

161 BUCKHURST's Caſe.

LEſſee for ten years granted a rent charge unto his Leſſor for the years: Afterwards the Leſſor granted the Remainder in Fee to the Leſſee. It was the opinion of the whole Court that the rent was gone and extinct, becauſe the Leſſor who had the rent, is a party to the Deſtruction of the Leaſe, which is the ground of the Rent.

29. Eliz. In the King's Bench.

162 ALLEN and PATSHALL's Caſe.

A Copy-holder doth ſurrender unto the uſe of a Stranger for ever; and the Lord admits the Surrendree to have and to hold to him and his Heirs. It was adjudged in this Caſe; That if it were upon a deviſe, that ſuch a one ſhould have the Copyhold in Fee; and afterwards a ſurrender is made unto the Lord to grant the Copyhold according to the Will; and he grants it in Fee to him and his Heirs, that the Grant is good. But *quære* in the firſt Caſe, for it was there but a bare Surrender only.

Mich. 27,28. Eliz. in the King's Bench.

163 STRANGDEN and BARNELL's Caſe.

AN Action of Trover and Converſion was brought of Goods in *Ipſwich*; the Defendant pleaded, That the Goods came to his hand in *Dunwich* in the ſame County; and that the Plaintiffe gave unto him the goods which came to his hands in *Dunwich*, *abſq; hoc* that he is guilty of any Trover, and Converſion of Goods in *Ipſwich*. And by the opinion of the Court, the ſame is a good manner of Pleading by reaſon of the ſpeciall Juſtification. *Vide* 27. *H.* 6. But when the Juſtification is generall, the County is not traverſable at this day. *Vide* 19. *H.* 6.6, & 7.

T *Mich.*

Panel 8 Historic use of capitals

Reed Dickerson said that the legal drafter should use initial capital letters only where required by good usage, as for proper nouns.[79] Other writers, though, have advocated the (sparing) use of capitals. Piesse, for example, suggests that the technique may help the careful reader.[80] Thus, if a party to a document is a company, it can be referred to throughout as 'the Company', leaving 'company' without a capital for use if a company in general is meant. The device of using a capital letter might possibly be helpful when (as in that example) the descriptive word is likely to be used also in a different sense: the capital letter warns the reader that for the purpose of the document the word bears a particular meaning. A better practice, though, is to avoid the misunderstanding by calling the party something altogether different, such as 'the supplier'.

In traditionally drafted documents, as we have seen, capitals are sometimes used for complete words, to break up blocks of text: common examples are WHEREAS, TOGETHER WITH, PROVIDED THAT, ALL THAT, and the like. However, overuse of capitals in whole words or passages hinders fluent readers.[81] This is because the shape of a whole word in capitals is less distinctive than its counterpart in lower case.[82] There is no justification for continuing the practice in modern documents, particularly as other devices exist for breaking blocks of text into manageable chunks.

Influence on interpretation

For readers unused to the convention, to define a term and then to draw attention to it by initial capital letters when it is used in the text may downgrade other expressions that do not receive the same treatment. Conversely, to use capital letters for terms that have *not* been defined tends to elevate the terms to a status they do not merit. Consider this clause:

> This Mortgage incorporates the National and Provincial Building Society Mortgage Conditions 1983 Edition and the Rules and the Borrower (and the Guarantor (if any)) have received copies of the said Mortgage Conditions and the Rules.

[79] *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, p. 189.
[80] *Elements of Drafting*, p. 50.
[81] National Consumer Council, *Plain English for Lawyers* (London, 1984), p. 25.
[82] Martin Cutts and Chrissie Maher, *Writing Plain English* (Stockport: Plain English Campaign, 1980), p. 21.

In the building society mortgage from which this example was taken, the only defined terms were 'the Borrower', 'the Guarantor', and 'the Society'. Neither 'Mortgage' nor 'the Rules' was defined. (The word 'mortgage' also occurred later, in the phrase 'by way of legal mortgage'.) The indiscriminate capitalisation produces a clause which at best is hard to read, and at worst may prove difficult to interpret.

In short, excessive capitalisation creates a wholly artificial atmosphere in a document, without appreciably increasing the reader's understanding. Significantly, modern parliamentary drafters rarely if ever assign capital letters to defined words or phrases in statutes or regulations. Private legal drafters could do well to follow their lead.

Provisos

'Provisos' have a long legislative history. For centuries in England, the term *provided* or *provided that* was used to introduce substantive provisions in legislation, as a contraction of the enacting formula *it is provided [that]*. This use has long ceased, but the term *provided* or *provided that* has survived, unique to legal writing. It has degenerated to a 'legal incantation . . . an all-purpose conjunction, invented by lawyers but not known to or understood by grammarians'.[83]

When properly used in modern legal drafting, provisos limit or qualify what has gone before. For this purpose, no particular formula is needed. In practice, however, provisos are typically introduced by formalistic phrases such as *provided that*, or *provided however that*. No legal precision would be lost by replacing these phrases with simple English words, like *if* or *but* or *however*.

To illustrate, a will might say:

> I give my property to my children *provided that* they marry.

The drafter could dispense with *provided that* and use *if* or *when*. Indeed, it would be better to do so. As the will stands, it is unclear whether the proviso introduces a condition precedent or a condition subsequent. That is, it is unclear whether the gift is initially contingent, with marriage being

[83] E. Driedger, *The Composition of Legislation*, 2nd edn (Ottawa: 1976), ch. ix and p. 96.

a condition precedent to vesting, or initially vested but subject to divesting in the case of children who do not marry.[84] An alert drafter could have used *if* to introduce a contingent gift; or could have used *to be paid over when* to introduce a vested gift ('to be paid over to them when they marry').[85]

Provisos in practice

A true proviso, intended to qualify or limit what has gone before, has its place in modern documents. In practice, however, the technique is often abused. Rather than qualify or limit what has gone before, the self-styled 'proviso' in fact introduces information of equal force. It adds a parallel provision, inserting material that should have been drafted as a stand-alone clause. At best, this can cause difficulty of comprehension, for the reader is uncertain whether to assume that the proviso is intended to limit the preceding covenant (its proper function) or to introduce a separate covenant. At worst, it can lead to litigation.[86] Where the purpose is to introduce new material, the words introducing the proviso – *provided that*, or *provided however that* – should be struck out, and a new sentence begun.

A proviso can affect the burden of proof. A party wishing to bring itself within the ambit of a genuine proviso bears the onus of proof.[87] For example, a lease may require the tenant to repair damage to the premises, with a proviso (that is, an exemption) for damage caused by reasonable wear and tear. A landlord who wishes to enforce the repair obligation must prove that the premises are in disrepair; but a tenant who wishes to take advantage of the exemption then bears the onus of proving that the disrepair is the result of reasonable wear and tear.[88] However, this assumes that the proviso is a 'genuine' one. If, despite its 'form' as a proviso, the clause in substance is a stand-alone provision which introduces new material, the

[84] As in *Re Cohn* [1974] 3 All ER 928 (CA); *Nicholls v Public Trustee (South Australia)* (1945) 72 CLR 86.

[85] *Hume v Perpetual Trustees Executors and Agency Co. of Tasmania* (1939) 62 CLR 242. See F. V. Hawkins and E. C. Ryder, *The Construction of Wills* (London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1965), pp. 303–308; *Barclays Bank Trust Co. Ltd v McDougall* (2000) *Law Society's Gazette*, 3 August, p. 39 (also reported at [2001] WTLR 23 (Rimer J)).

[86] As in *Hely v Sterling* [1982] VR 246.

[87] *Vines v Djordjevitch* (1955) 91 CLR 512 at 520; *Minister for Immigration v Hughes* (1999) 86 FCR 567.

[88] *Haskell v Marlow* [1928] 2 KB 45 at 59; *Brown v Davies* [1958] 1 QB 117 at 127; *Wicks Farming Pty Ltd v Waraluck Mining Pty Ltd* [1996] 1Qd R 99 at 103.

court will treat it as that and there will be no occasion to shift the burden of proof.[89]

Provisos are frequently a product of the negotiation process. The document is drafted by A, the lawyer for one side in the transaction. The other side's lawyer, B, needs to make a substantive amendment but does not want to renumber all the existing clauses. So B inserts a 'proviso', which by its nature is tacked onto an existing clause. A feels constrained by professional comity to leave the amendment as a 'proviso'. Hence the text slips in as a proviso, when it should be put somewhere else.

To illustrate the points just discussed, consider the following clause from a lease of property in an earthquake zone:

> The tenant must repaint the premises *provided that* if there has been an earthquake the tenant must repair any structural damage.

Here the drafter has used the technique of proviso, not to qualify what has gone before, but to introduce an entirely new and stand-alone obligation. It would be better to delete the proviso and divide the clause into two independent parts:

1. The tenant must repaint the premises.
2. If there is an earthquake, the tenant must repair any structural damage.

Again, consider the following provision:

> All fixtures installed during the term of the lease by the tenant become the property of the landlord upon the expiry of the term PROVIDED THAT the tenant may remove its fixtures at the end of the term.[90]

The meaning, or the purpose, of this clause is almost impossible to discern. The first half (up to the proviso) seems merely to reflect the common law assumption that fixtures which a tenant affixes to the property are the landlord's property unless and until the tenant removes them,[91] and that a tenant who wishes to remove them must generally do so before the lease

[89] *Minister of State for the Army v Dalziel* (1944) 68 CLR 261 at 274–5; *Commissioner of Stamp Duties v Atwill* [1973] AC 558 at 561; *Datt v Law Society of New South Wales* (1981) 35 ALR 523 at 534.

[90] Adapted from Dick, *Legal Drafting*, p. 104.

[91] *Bain v Brand* (1876) 1 App Cas 762 at 770 (Lord Cairns).

expires, otherwise the fixtures remain the landlord's property. [92] The second half (the proviso) seems to give the tenant an unfettered right to remove fixtures at the end of the term: but this also merely reflects the common law right of tenants to remove their fixtures at or before the end of the lease.[93] Probably, the drafter intended the 'proviso' – despite being cast as a proviso – to be the main head of tenant's right, and the opening words to limit the time in which the tenant can exercise that right. If so, it would have been much better to avoid the use of a proviso altogether, and reverse the order of provisions, thus:

1. The tenant may remove its fixtures at the end of the term.
2. Any fixtures not so removed remain the landlord's property.

Conclusion

This chapter has highlighted some of the practices which modern drafters should shun. All the practices considered in the preceding pages have been developed and sustained over many generations, even centuries. They are stocked in plentiful supply in the arsenal of traditional legal drafters. But they are practices which non-lawyers find disconcerting, and which therefore hinder comprehension. They can be discarded without threat to precision or legal effect.

[92] It is otherwise where the tenant takes a renewed lease of the premises at the end of the current lease. In such a case, the tenant retains the right to remove until the expiry of the renewed lease: *New Zealand Government Property Corporation v HM & S Ltd* [1982] QB 1145.

[93] *Bain v Brand* (1876) 1 App Cas 762.

Chapter Six

HOW TO DRAFT MODERN DOCUMENTS

In the previous chapter we considered some of the techniques to avoid when drafting modern legal documents. The emphasis was on the negative – what *not* to do. Now we turn to the positive – what to *do*. That is, we consider some of the techniques to be adopted when drafting legal documents in the modern style.

Modern, standard English

We begin with a proposition that underlies all we have said so far in this book: legal documents should be written in modern, standard English – that is, in standard English as currently used and understood.[1] Identifying modern, standard English is not difficult. It can be found in articles in the more serious newspapers, in popular and academic books on many subjects, and in reports of governments and public authorities. Its hallmark is a style that is direct, informative and readable.

For many traditional lawyers, the move to modern, standard English is difficult. It forces them to rethink, and rethinking takes time. To begin with, they must switch from stilted, archaic constructions to modern, idiomatic equivalents. For example, instead of *such* or *the said*, they must write *the*;

[1] National Consumer Council, *Plain Words for Consumers* (London: 1984), p. 47; David Mellinkoff, *Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense* (St Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Co., 1982), p. 44.

instead of *in the event that*, they must write *if*; instead of *notwithstanding the fact that*, they must write *despite*.[2] But more is required than simply a process of translation. While merely updating terminology will help, a well-drawn document goes further. It takes into account matters of structure, layout, word order, and design. It also takes into account the issues of substantive law that will almost certainly arise.

To illustrate some of the difficulties inherent in this process, consider the following clause from a traditionally drafted sublease:

> Not to affix or exhibit or permit or suffer to be affixed or exhibited to or upon the external walls windows or other external parts of the demised premises any name flag placard sign poster signboard nameplate sunblind (for advertising purposes only) or other advertisement whatsoever without the prior consent in writing of the Landlord.

Before altering the wording, the modern drafter asks a number of questions. These include:

- What is the purpose of the clause?
- How can that purpose best be expressed?
- Is there a difference between *doing* something and *permitting* something?
- Is there a difference between *suffering* and *permitting*?
- What is the most effective word order?
- Can I be bold, or should I err on the side of caution?

The purpose of the clause seems to be to prevent advertising on the outside of the leased property. That can be expressed in direct, modern English, thus:

> Not to put any advertisement on the outside of the property or in the windows, except with the Landlord's written consent.

The original used the phrase 'not to permit or suffer to be affixed'. Usually, 'permit' and 'suffer' are synonyms. In most contexts 'permit' alone or 'suffer'

[2] *Despite* means the same as *notwithstanding the fact that*: *Attorney-General of the Commonwealth v Oates* (1999) 198 CLR 162; *Eddy Lau Constructions Pty Ltd v Transdevelopment Enterprise Pty Ltd* [2004] NSWSC 754.

alone would suffice.[3] And conceptually, of course, there is a distinction between doing something directly and allowing it to be done by someone else. In legal documents, however, the distinction (though often found) is frequently unimportant. Persons subject to a direct prohibition will usually be in breach if they allow another person to do the prohibited act, in the sense of directly or indirectly sanctioning it to be done.[4] In any case, disputes over possible differences between *permit* and *suffer* can be circumvented by using *allow*, for *allow* is at least as wide as *permit*, if not wider.[5] And if (despite these arguments) the drafter feels it necessary to preserve the distinction between direct and indirect breach, this can be achieved by a paragraph within the interpretation clause, such as:

> A prohibition on an activity includes a prohibition on allowing that activity.

This at least removes the need to repeat the distinction in each substantive provision.

As for the most effective word order: if an act is to be prohibited, but with qualifications, it is best to begin with the prohibition and then to add the qualifications afterwards. Legal documents often reverse this order, putting the qualifications first. But to start with a qualification – 'Except with the Landlord's prior written consent' – tends to obscure the clause's main purpose. Putting the prohibition first helps the reader assimilate the message.

To repeat these processes for each clause in a long lease might seem both time-consuming and difficult. At first it may be. But once the drafter becomes attuned to a new way of thinking, the process becomes much easier. Nor need the process be undertaken unaided. The lawyer drafting in modern, standard English may still use precedents as an *aide-mémoire* – not following them willy-nilly, but adapting them to the requirements of the particular transaction.

[3] However, in criminal law, there is said to be a difference in some contexts between 'permitting' an offence to occur and 'suffering' an offence to occur: *R v Jasper* (2003) 139 A Crim R 329 (NSW Court of Criminal Appeal).

[4] *Hardcastle v Bielby* [1892] 1 QB 709; *Massey v Morris* [1894] 1 QB 412; *Ferrier v Wilson* (1906) 4 CLR 785.

[5] See *Barton v Reed* [1932] 1 Ch 362 at 375 (Luxmoore J); *De Kupyer v Crafter* [1942] SASR 238 at 243–4.

Document structure

The contents of a legal document should be ordered logically, to enable the document to be read and used quickly and effectively. As we explain below, by 'logically' we mean logically from the reader's perspective. Each clause and paragraph should be presented in a way that is both sensible and comprehensible to the reader. Among other things, this requires that more important clauses should come before less important clauses. To illustrate, the general pattern of a contract might be:

- heading
- date
- parties
- definitions
- the heart of the deal
- things associated with the heart of the deal
- general housekeeping, such as
  - duration
  - assignment
  - effect of death or dissolution
- what happens if things go wrong, such as
  - bankruptcy or insolvency
  - termination for breach
  - liquidated damages
  - dispute resolution
- standard provisions ('boilerplate'), such as
  - effect of extraneous events ('force majeure')
  - service of notices
  - governing law.

Of course, these divisions are not hard and fast. For example, the definitions might be better located towards the end of the document (see below). What is crucial, though, is to identify the heart of the deal and things associated with the heart of the deal, and to place them up front. The clause containing the heart of the deal then acts as a kind of general purpose or object clause, governing the rest of the document. It should be ahead of and

separate from matters that are relevant to the transaction but are not at its heart.

When considering whether a document flows logically, the aim is an order that is logical for the reader, not necessarily logical for the drafter. The test is: 'what is comfortable for the client?' It is not: 'what is familiar to the lawyer?' Traditional documents are cast in a framework familiar to the lawyer. Yet legal efficacy does not require the lawyer's framework. There is no legal impediment to presenting a document in a way that reflects the client's thought processes about the deal. The drafter should try to anticipate those thought processes and build the document around them.

With the reader in mind, as a general rule each main clause should be limited to a single core concept. Combining two or more core concepts in a single main clause adds unnecessary complexity. For example, leases traditionally combined the demise (that is, the formal grant of the lease) and the reddendum (the obligation to pay rent), but the client would better understand the transaction if the grant of the lease and the rent obligations were in separate clauses. Similarly, it is helpful to separate concepts such as dispute resolution from notices relating to breach.

Examples

To illustrate issues of structure, consider a deed creating a partnership. The heart of the deal is the establishment of the partnership itself. Things associated with the heart of the deal are the nature of the business, the location of the activity, and the name of the firm. In a short document creating a straightforward relationship, the heart of the deal and things associated with it can be run together in one clause, thus:

> The partners will carry on business in partnership as solicitors under the name Castle & Co, at 113 High Street, Hurstpierpoint, West Sussex, beginning on 1 January 2006 and continuing until brought to an end in accordance with this deed.

General, but essential, housekeeping matters should follow straight afterwards – like sharing profits or losses, providing capital, and the accounting year. Less crucial (but still important) matters might appear next – keeping bank accounts, who can sign cheques, and what drawings can be made. Boilerplate comes last, for it may never have to be referred to if the agreement is performed in accordance with its terms. With a contract structure of this

kind, the parties can rapidly see what they are trying to achieve and how they are expected to achieve it.

Other types of document call for different provisions, but should be structured on the same principles. For example, a lease might take this form:

- the grant of the lease (the heart of the deal)
- rent and rent review (things associated with the heart of the deal)
- tenant's covenants
- landlord's covenants
- general housekeeping (for example, relating to services)
- early ending (for example, on damage or destruction)
- forfeiture for breach
- boilerplate, such as
  - service of notices
  - resolution of disputes
  - interest on late payments.

Wills, too, can be structured in a way that regulates administration and distribution in a natural sequence. The structure could be:

- revocation of earlier wills
- appointment of executors
- gifts of particular items
- gifts of money
- distribution of residue
- powers of executors
- charging clause.

Layout and design

The use of modern, standard English and a logical structure are complemented by user-friendly layout and design. As long ago as 1978, Alan Siegel said:

> Just as important as clear language is careful layout and design. If a document looks terrifying it does not matter how easy the words are: they will never be read. Good design sets the tone for the document. It communicates the

> document's intent as much as words do. It also makes the document more useful, by guiding the reader's eye to the information he or she wants to know.[6]

Layout and design are not merely cosmetic. They improve understanding by helping readers find their way around the document, aiding assimilation of the contents. They may also provide an incidental benefit for the drafter: readers presented with a document which looks good, reads logically, and encourages them to move forward, are less likely to want to amend the document than are readers disgruntled with the document's presentation.

There are many ways to improve the layout and design of traditional legal documents. Some are no more than common sense; others are the result of research into document design. But all help improve the accessibility of legal documents. Here are some suggestions:

White space

Use plenty of white space. This presents readers with an uncluttered page, encouraging progress through the document. In particular:

- Break up slabs of text.
- Use generous margins all round, including at the top and bottom of the page. In particular, have a generous margin on the left, to allow for notations at the draft stage.
- Double-space all text (or at least use 1.5 spacing). Single spacing is too crowded; it also makes it harder to mark amendments on drafts.
- Use generous spacing between clauses.

Headings

Use plenty of headings. They are useful signposts for the reader. In particular:

- Use a bold central heading at the beginning of the document to identify its nature (for example, 'Mortgage' or 'Transfer'), followed by bold headings (lower case and flush left) to introduce the various divisions of the document (see Panel 9, p. 174).
- Give each main clause a heading (bold, lower case). If possible, also give each subsidiary clause a heading (but in light italics, to distinguish from main clause headings).

[6] Conference of Experts in Clear Legal Drafting, National Center for Administrative Justice, Washington DC, 2 June 1978 (reproduced in Reed Dickerson, *Materials on Legal Drafting* (St Paul, Minnesota: West Publishing Co., 1981), p. 294).

DISTRIBUTION AGREEMENT

Date 2006

Parties

A. John Jones & Company Limited (company number 689534-7) whose registered office is at 3 Acacia Avenue, Anytown, Shropshire ("the manufacturer").

B. Jack Smith Limited (company number 1792392) whose registered office is at 96 High Street, Bockhampton, Dorset ("the distributor").

1. Background

(1) The manufacturer makes widgets and other products, and in relation to widgets has registered a patent and maintains all other intellectual property rights.

(2) The distributor is a distributor of goods from its principal base in Southampton.

(3) The parties have agreed that the distributor is to have the right to distribute and sell widgets throughout Hampshire, Dorset and the Isle of Wight.

Panel 9 Document layout

- Ensure that headings are not 'orphaned' at the bottom of a page, isolated from the words to which they relate.

Navigation and ease of reading

- If possible, use signposting techniques such as running headings (headers) on each page, lists of contents and indexes. These techniques are now beginning to appear in legislation.[7]

[7] For a study of their benefits in legislative design, see Centre for Plain Legal Language, *Discussion Paper: Review and Redesign of NSW Legislation* (1994). For applications, see

- Indent subsidiary paragraphs.[8] Use indents consistently, and ensure that all text within an indented passage is kept to the same indentation.
- Use a serif typeface. Studies generally show that a font with serifs is more readable than one without (sanserif).[9] For contrast, use sanserif for headings.[10]
- Use a generous type size. The literature on typography and design agrees that a type size of between 9 and 12 point is the most legible for general reading purposes.[11] While it is true that font sizes, of themselves, play no part in legal interpretation,[12] judges have condemned the use of too-small type sizes in legal documents.[13] And although a court is unlikely to absolve a contracting party from liability purely on the ground that the type was so small that it was practically illegible,[14] there are cases where judges have taken small font size into account in holding exemption clauses unenforceable.[15]

Retirement Villages Act 1999 (NSW); UK Revenue and Customs Tax Law Rewrite, *Report and Plans, 2005/06*, Appendix B, at <www.hmrc.gov.uk/rewrite>.

[8] In *Re Gulbenkian's Settlement* [1970] AC 508 at 526, Lord Donovan said that he had never understood why some conveyancers regarded it as beneath their dignity to use paragraphing techniques to make their meaning plain: had that been done on the facts of the case, 'much trouble and expense would have been avoided'.

[9] C. Wheildon, *Communicating: or Just Making Pretty Shapes* (1986; a study for the Newspaper Advertising Bureau of Australia Ltd), pp. 16, 17; Centre for Plain Legal Language, *Discussion Paper*, p. 14. However, some studies are less adamant about the advantages of serif over sanserif: for example, James Hartley, *Designing Instructional Text*, 3rd edn (London: Kogan Page, 1994), ch. 4. The apparent preference for serif may be simply due to familiarity, serif being the norm in newspapers.

[10] A technique recommended in the study by the Centre for Plain Legal Language, *Discussion Paper*, and now adopted in New South Wales legislation.

[11] Ibid., pp. 16–17; Hartley, *Designing Instructional Text*, pp. 23–24; Document Design Project, *Guidelines for Document Designers* (American Institutes for Research, 1981), pp. 77–78.

[12] *Yorkshire Insurance Co. Ltd v Campbell* [1917] AC 218 at 222.

[13] For example, *Goldsbrough v Ford Credit Aust Ltd* (1989) ASC 55–946 at 58,584; *George T. Collings (Aust) Pty Ltd v H. F. Stevenson* (1991) ASC 56–051.

[14] *Koskas v Standard Marine Insurance Co. Ltd* (1927) 27 Ll L Rep 59 at 62, where Scrutton LJ said: 'I am rather afraid of the doctrine that you can get out of clauses by saying that they are difficult to read. There may be extreme cases. I have in mind the bill of a well-known shipping line printed on red paper which was calculated to produce blindness in anyone reading it. I am not saying that in no case can you get out of it on the point of illegibility, but this case does not appear to me to be a case in which that doctrine should be applied.' See also *Lezam Pty Ltd v Seabridge Australia Pty Ltd* (1992) 35 FCR 535.

[15] Examples are the South African case of *Fourie v Hansen* [2000] JOL 5993 (W), and the Australian case of *Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v Henry Kaye* [2004] FCA 1363. And see Lord Denning's colourful statement in *J. Spurling Ltd v Bradshaw* [1956]

- Don't justify the right margin. Although readability seems generally unaffected by whether the right margin is justified or unjustified (ragged), an unjustified right margin gives a document a more relaxed feel.[16]
- Use a coversheet for a document of any length (say, more than five or six pages). Like the cover of a book, it can show the nature of the document at a glance. For a document that will be folded lengthwise, a backsheet can also be useful. But don't put too much information on the coversheet or backsheet, lest it be used to qualify the content of the body of the document.[17]

Numbering systems

Legal documents use a variety of numbering systems. Some examples are shown in Table 3. A variant is to use bullet points to enumerate items in a list.

Table 3 Numbering systems

Arabic/Roman	Decimal	Partial combination
1.	1.	1.
2.	2.	2.
3(1)	3.1	3.1
(2)	3.2	3.2
(3)(a)	3.3.1	3.3(a)
(b)	3.3.2	(b)
(c)(i)	3.3.3.1	(c)(i)
(ii)	3.3.3.2	(ii)
(iii)(A)	3.3.3.3.1	(iii)(A)
(B)	3.3.3.3.2	(B)
(C)	3.3.3.3.3	(C)

1 WLR 461 at 468: 'Some clauses which I have seen would need to be printed in red ink on the face of the document with a red hand pointing to it before the notice could be held to be sufficient.'

[16] Hartley, *Designing Instructional Text*, p. 37; Document Design Project, *Guidelines for Document Designers*, pp. 37, 38. Wheildon, *Communicating: or Just Making Pretty Shapes*, p. 35, concludes that justified text promotes readability more than unjustified. This book is justified – but that is Cambridge University Press's house style, over which we have no control.

[17] For a case where the judge took account of the contents of a backsheet, see *Meadfield Properties Ltd v Secretary of State for the Environment* [1995] 1 EGLR 39 at 41 (Warner J).

The choice of numbering system is a matter of personal preference. No one system is best, although the modern trend is towards the decimal system. Whichever system is chosen, however, three matters must be kept in mind. First, numbering systems become cumbersome when they descend to more than three levels. Drafters who find themselves subdividing further than this should reconsider the structure of their document. Second, consistency in numbering is crucial. Having chosen a system, the drafter should keep to it remorselessly. Third, the meaning should meticulously follow the layout and logic of the various levels, with main points and subsidiary points scrupulously differentiated.

To illustrate the third point, consider the layout of the following lease clause. Notice how each paragraph is a stand-alone sentence:

11 If during the term of the lease the premises are destroyed or damaged, then
   (a) Either the lessor or the lessee may terminate the lease without compensation to the other.
   (b) The termination will not affect the rights of either party in relation to earlier matters.
   (c) On the happening of the damage or destruction, the rent abates proportionately.
   (d) If the lessor wants to demolish or rebuild to the extent that (in the lessor's opinion) the lessee's right of quiet enjoyment is appreciably diminished, the lessor can give six months' notice to terminate the lease.

Can the lessor require the tenant to vacate under clause 11(d) even though the premises have not been 'destroyed or damaged'? This question of construction came before an Australian court, which held 'no'.[18] The lessor's power under clause 11(d) was to be read in the context of the opening words of clause 11. That is, the power existed only where the premises were destroyed or damaged. Para (d) was not a stand-alone right to require the tenant to vacate. Presumably, the result would have been different had the

[18] *Spathis v Hanave Investment Co. Pty Ltd* (2001) NSW ConvR 55–983.

drafter made para (d) an entirely independent clause, divorced from the opening words of clause 11.

Lists

Uses of lists

The modern reader expects legal material to be served up in an easily-digestible form. So the drafter uses lists to break up the elements of the sentence to make the meaning plainer. But fragmentation of sentences (or 'shredding', as it is sometimes called) can be overdone. In fact, there is a danger of over-reacting to the undesirable 'block text' characteristic of legal writing. Excessive 'listing' can make sentences even harder to understand because their constituent parts are over-shredded.

The lead-in

The words of each listed item must flow logically and grammatically from the lead-in. Often the drafter observes this principle for the first one or two items listed, but then forgets it for later items. The reader may be able to glean the sense, but the appearance is sloppy and ungainly.

The lead-in words should be chosen with care, both for comprehensibility and for maximum effect. Repetition of the same word or phrase at the beginning of each item is a good indication that the word or phrase could be transferred to the lead-in. But this is by no means an absolute rule. For example, it may be better to say:

> The purpose of this action is –
>
> (a) to inform . . .
> (b) to create . . .
> (c) to allow . . .

rather than

> The purpose of this action is to –
>
> (a) inform . . .
> (b) create . . .
> (c) allow . . .

Punctuation after the lead-in

Good practice is to:

- use an em dash immediately after the lead-in if the listed words flow immediately and naturally as part of the same sentence, and
- use a colon if the list is the product of the lead-in.

So for instance:

> The deputy may exercise all the powers of the principal while –
>
> (a) there is a vacancy in the office of the principal . . .

but

> The powers and duties of the principal are these:
>
> (a) to notify the board . . .

The distinction is not crucial, however. And sentences with a succession of dashes or colons are ungainly, regardless of whether they are presented as lists.

Punctuation within lists

Punctuation within lists is not easy. There is no universal practice or right way. In England it is customary (and seemingly entirely natural) to treat the lead-in and the list as part of the same sentence. Hence, each listed item starts with a lower case letter (unless of course the first word happens to be a proper noun), and there is just one full stop at the end of the list (assuming that the sentence does not carry on after the end of the list).

In constructing lists, two main problems arise. The first is what to do at the end of each listed item. The second is what to do when another sentence begins in the middle of a listed item.

As to the first problem, three punctuation options exist for the end of each item in a list:

(1) put nothing
(2) put something, depending on the circumstances, or
(3) have rules for putting the same thing in the same circumstances.

Sometimes it is sufficient to put a comma at the end of each part (paragraph) of the list. But if commas are used to separate items within subparts of the list, then a semi-colon will be preferable at the end of each paragraph. This creates a useful distinction. Thus –

(b) apples, pears, bananas and beans;
(c) root vegetables; and
(d) other perishable goods.

As to the second problem, where a new sentence begins in the middle of a listed item, logic often goes out of the window. Private drafters sometimes use a full stop and start a new sentence within the listed item, but they end that sentence with a semi-colon because the list then carries on to the next item. This makes no grammatical sense. And of course if the drafter's general policy is 'no punctuation in lists', that policy must be abandoned. The following possibilities present themselves:

- recast the list so that the new sentence becomes a separate item, or is eliminated in some other way;
- reshape the list into a different type, where each item becomes a stand-alone topic beginning with a new sentence, allowing new sentences within it; or
- put a comma, semi-colon or colon at the end of each item, but otherwise follow the same principles (e.g. each item begins as a follow-on from the lead-in, with a lower case first letter).

Conjunctions

Where items (paragraphs) in a list are to be read conjunctively or disjunctively, the convention is to insert the appropriate linking word ('and' or 'or') between only the second-last and last paragraphs in the list. Lawyers know that the same word is then to be implied between earlier items in the list. However, in more recent times some parliamentary drafting offices have inserted the linking word after every item in a list, unless there is good reason not to. There seem to be two justifications for this. One is that if a conjunction appears only after the penultimate paragraph in the list, readers might be prompted to apply the linking word only to the last two paragraphs and be puzzled about what is to happen with the earlier paragraphs in the list. The other is that

repeating 'and' or 'or' after each paragraph avoids the difficulty that may otherwise arise if a penultimate paragraph is revoked and the only 'and' or 'or' disappears.

This new practice is not followed by parliamentary drafters in all jurisdictions. Nor does it commend itself to the general writer of standard English. Its use can make the text appear rather fussy. The revocation point (which surely arises only rarely) can be overcome by carefully-drafted revocation provisions. In short, lists do not require every item to conclude with a conjunction, and the device would be better abandoned. The better practice is to draft the lead-in so as to avoid the need for conjunctions at all. Careful drafting can make it clear that the items in the list are to be read conjunctively or disjunctively (as the case may be), or a combination of the two. Here is an example:

> The order may prescribe all or any of the following matters:
>
> (a) the rate of the levy
> (b) the persons liable to pay the levy
> (c) penalties and interest for the late payment of levies
> (d) the taking of legal proceedings to recover any levy.

Short sense-bites

In Chapter 5 we discussed the excessive wordiness and the unduly long 'sense-bites' that characterise traditional legal drafting. These peculiarities modern drafters take care to avoid.

Modern drafters are often exhorted to write short sentences. But a better exhortation would be: write short sense-bites. Blind adherence to a policy of short sentences is not always appropriate. For example, sentences that list a series of obligations or events are inevitably long. Consider the tenant's covenants in a lease: they are usually structured in the form of a single sentence, introduced by such words as 'The tenant covenants with the landlord: . . .' Each covenant then appears as a separate sub-sentence, thus: 'to pay the rent', 'to pay outgoings', and the like. To insist that each covenant be a separate sentence beginning 'The tenant covenants with the landlord to . . .' would be irritating and silly. It is much better to use sub-paragraphs

and indentation to reduce each covenant to manageable sense-bites, so that the reader can quickly grasp the meaning.

Example

To illustrate the advantages of short sense-bites, here are two versions of an easement to drain water, taken from the New South Wales *Conveyancing Act* 1919. (For similar examples, see p. 100.) The first version is the traditionally drafted form of easement:

> Full and free right for the body in whose favour this easement is created, and every person authorised by it, from time to time and at all times to drain water (whether rain, storm, spring, soakage, or seepage water) in any quantities across and through the land herein indicated as the servient tenement, together with the right to use, for the purposes of the easement, any line of pipes already laid within the servient tenement for the purpose of draining water or any pipe or pipes in replacement or in substitution therefor and where no such line of pipes exists, to lay, place and maintain a line of pipes of sufficient internal diameter beneath or upon the surface of the servient tenement and together with the right for the body in whose favour this easement is created and every person authorised by it, with any tools, implements, or machinery, necessary for the purpose, to enter upon the servient tenement and to remain there for any reasonable time for the purpose of laying, inspecting, cleansing, repairing, maintaining, or renewing such pipe line or any part thereof and for any of the aforesaid purposes to open the soil of the servient tenement to such extent as may be necessary provided that the body in whose favour this easement is created and the persons authorised by it will take all reasonable precautions to ensure as little disturbance as possible to the surface of the servient tenement and will restore that surface as nearly as practicable to its original condition.

This is one single sentence of 256 words. Contrast the following version of the same easement, incorporated into the Act in 1995. As a matter of strict grammar, each clause is a single sentence. But each is broken down into smaller, more digestible, sense-bites:

1. The body having the benefit of this easement may:
   (a) drain water from any natural source through each lot burdened, but only within the site of this easement, and

(b) do anything reasonably necessary for that purpose, including:
- entering the lot burdened, and
- taking anything on to the lot burdened, and
- using any existing line of pipes, and
- carrying out work, such as constructing, placing, repairing or maintaining pipes, channels, ditches and equipment.

2. In exercising those powers, the body having the benefit of this easement must:
   (a) ensure all work is done properly, and
   (b) cause as little inconvenience as is practicable to the owner and any occupier of the lot burdened, and
   (c) cause as little damage as is practicable to the lot burdened and any improvement on it, and
   (d) restore the lot burdened as nearly as is practicable to its former condition, and
   (e) make good any collateral damage.

Punctuation

Traditional legal drafting uses punctuation sparingly. This has been the practice from the earliest times. As late as 1860, Davidson wrote in the introductory notes to his highly regarded *Precedents in Conveyancing*:

> The writing of a legal instrument is without punctuation; such stops and marks of parenthesis must be supplied by the reader as will give effect to the whole. Marks of parenthesis are, indeed, usually inserted, but it seems that they are to be regarded, in the construction of the deed, only when they are consonant with the sense, and required by the context. The Precedents in this and other collections are pointed by the printers, according to the usual practice; but no attention is to be paid to the punctuation.[19]

This approach probably reflects a belief among lawyers that early statutes were largely unpunctuated when they left the drafter, and that any punctuation later added was done at the behest of the printer, not the author.

[19] 3rd edn (London: William Maxwell, 1860), p. 30 (citations omitted).

This belief David Mellinkoff has convincingly shown to be misconceived.[20] It did lead, however, to the attitude, once prevalent judicially, that punctuation played little or no part in construing legal documents. For example, in *Sandford v Raikes*, Sir William Grant MR said that the sense of legal writing should be gathered from the words of the document and their context, rather than from punctuation.[21] Other judges have said the same thing.[22]

But that is no longer the prevalent view. The modern style of legal drafting uses punctuation for the same reason as any other careful prose uses punctuation – to give guidance about meaning. As Lord Shaw pointed out in *Houston v Burns*, punctuation is part of the composition of language, and is sometimes quite significant. He saw no reason to deprive legal documents of the significance attached to punctuation in other writings.[23]

So, for example, commas can be used in the same way as they are in ordinary prose – as an aid to understanding. Indeed, they *should* be used where necessary, to clarify meaning. For example, in an Australian case, a worker's insurance policy described the employer's business as 'Fuel Carrying and Repairing'. Did the policy cover an employee who was injured when driving the employer's vehicle carrying bricks? The New South Wales Court of Appeal held that it did, overruling the trial judge. The court interpreted the policy as if it read either 'Fuel, Carrying, and Repairing' or 'Fuel Carrying, and Repairing' (the first alternative being sufficient to cover the facts). The insertion of a comma would have avoided the need for litigation.[24]

Again, in an Ohio case a statute allowed a prosecutor to 'introduce the evaluation report or present other evidence at the hearing in accordance with the Rules of Evidence'. Did the introduction of an evaluation report have to comply with the rules of evidence? A comma between 'report' and 'or' would have given one meaning; but a comma between 'hearing' and 'in' would have given the opposite meaning. In the end, the court

[20] *The Language of the Law*, p. 152. See also V. Crabbe, 'Punctuation in Legislation' (1988) 9 *Statute Law Review*, p. 87; R. Wydick, 'Should Lawyers Punctuate?' (1990) 1 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 7.

[21] (1816) 1 Mer 646 at 651; 35 ER 808 at 810.

[22] For example, Lord Kenyon CJ in *Doe d Willis v Martin* (1790) 4 TR 39 at 65, 66; 100 ER 882 at 897.

[23] *Houston v Burns* [1918] AC 337 at 348, HL.

[24] *Manufacturers' Mutual Insurance Ltd v Withers* (1988) 5 ANZ Insurance Cases 60–853.

construed the provision as if there were a comma between 'report' and 'or', applying the somewhat arbitrary rule that a modifying phrase applies only to the words or phrase that immediately precede it ('the last antecedent' principle). Here too the presence of a comma in the legislation would have prevented litigation.[25] Yet again, under a Caribbean statute a person committed an offence if he [or she] 'in any public place conducts himself in a disorderly manner, or conducts himself in such a noisy manner as to disturb the neighbourhood'. The Court of Appeal of the Eastern Caribbean States held that the presence of the comma showed a legislative intent to create two offences, not one. The second offence (after the comma) required a finding of disturbing the neighbourhood, while the first offence (before the comma) did not.[26]

Other forms of punctuation can also be used in legal documents to improve comprehension. Thus, brackets can be used to mark off parenthetical material, in the same way as in normal prose. This technique is used widely in statutes,[27] and is equally applicable to private legal documents. The only disadvantage – practical, not legal – is that the reader may skip the material in parenthesis, considering it less significant than the surrounding material.[28]

Inverted commas can be used in the same way as in normal prose. Indeed, they are now common in definition clauses, often in combination with brackets. For example, a lease might set out the tenant's details, followed by the parenthetical phrase: ('the tenant').[29]

For the possessive, modern legal usage follows ordinary English usage. Common examples are: *landlord's fixtures, surveyor's fees, tenant's covenants, claimant's case* and *executor's oath*. On the other hand, if it seems more idiomatic in the context to say 'the fixtures of the landlord' or 'the fees of the surveyor', then that construction is adopted.

The dash is also now common in legal documents, though its usage differs. Parliamentary drafters typically use a dash (usually an em dash,

[25] *State of Ohio v Bowen* (Court of Appeals, First Appellate District of Ohio, 28 July 2000).
[26] *Douglas (Clayton) v The Police* (1992) 43 WIR 175.
[27] For example, *Retirement Villages Act* 1999 (NSW).
[28] As pointed out by Lord Lloyd of Berwick in *Investors Compensation Scheme Ltd v West Bromwich Building Society* [1998] 1 WLR 896 at 902–3, 904.
[29] Many modern drafters would now omit the inverted commas, so that the parenthetical phrase would read simply: (the tenant).

but sometimes an en dash) after a lead-in or introduction, to indicate that material is to follow, thus:

> In this Part of this Act –

Private drafters rarely use a dash for this purpose. They prefer the traditional but curious hybrid mark combining both colon and dash, thus:

> In this Lease, unless the context otherwise requires, the following expressions have the following meanings: –

The trend is towards replacing this hybrid mark with a simple colon. This conforms with current practice in ordinary narrative, where the colon has acquired the function of pointing to information that is to follow.[30]

Normal punctuation techniques, then, apply as much to legal drafting as they do to normal prose. Properly employed, they are useful aids to comprehension. However, their usefulness is subject to one overriding qualification: judges retain the right to ignore punctuation if they think that by doing so the parties' meaning is better deduced. For example, several leading Australian judges have said that a court is entitled to take notice of commas but is not to be controlled by them if the context requires otherwise.[31] In a Victorian (Australian) case, a judge disregarded a comma in a statute where it served no apparent purpose and the clause could be sensibly interpreted by ignoring it.[32] Indeed, courts not only disregard punctuation where they consider it appropriate to do so, but they also 'correct' punctuation if they consider that the change will better reflect the drafter's perceived intention. In one case, the Australian Full Federal Court held that a semicolon between two clauses (which grammatically suggested that the clauses were independent clauses) should be read as if it were a comma.[33] These and similar cases bear out the truth of Sir Robert Megarry's statement about punctuation generally:

[30] *Fowler's Modern English Usage*, revised 3rd edn, ed. R. W. Burchfield (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1998), p. 159; Pam Peters, *The Cambridge Guide to English Usage* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2004). Printers refer to the combination of colon and dash as 'a full set'.

[31] *Committee of Direction of Fruit Marketing v Collins* (1925) 36 CLR 410 at 421 (Isaacs J); *Chew v The Queen* (1992) 173 CLR 626 at 639 (Dawson J).

[32] *Transport Accident Commission v Hipwell* [1995] 1 VR 582 at 590.

[33] *Minister for Immigration and Multicultural Affairs v Savvin* (2000) 61 ALD 107.

> One must remember that punctuation is normally an aid, and no more than an aid, towards revealing the meaning of the phrases used, and the sense that they are to convey when put in their setting. Punctuation is the servant and not the master of substance and meaning.[34]

Perhaps for fear of judicial caprice, there survives a style of modern legal writing which rejects almost all punctuation, leaving much of the sense of a document to be gleaned from layout, particularly from spacing and indentation. This style of drafting offends the principle that legal documents should follow the rules of English composition.[35] Even so, it has received some qualified professional recognition.[36] There is, however, no logical need to deprive legal writing of the benefits of punctuation.

Definitions

In Chapter 5 we discussed aspects of the unsatisfactory use of definitions. But of course definitions have a proper role to play in legal documents. The main one is to give a precise meaning to words and phrases used in the document. Used this way, definitions provide a shorthand method of referring to a particular word or phrase that crops up repeatedly in the document. This can help reduce the length of a document. For example, here is a clause from a traditionally worded mortgage:

> The mortgagee, for himself, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, covenants with the mortgagor, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, that if the mortgagor, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, pays on time all instalments of interest and observes all the covenants to be performed by the mortgagor, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, then the mortgagee, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns* will not call up the principal sum until [*date*]; and it is also agreed that the mortgagor, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, will not call upon the mortgagee, *his heirs, executors, administrators and assigns*, to accept repayment of the principal sum until [*date*].

[34] *Marshall v Cottingham* [1982] 1 Ch 82 at 88.
[35] David Mellinkoff, *Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense*, p. 44.
[36] Piesse, *Elements of Drafting*, pp. 107–8.

The length of this clause could easily be reduced by appropriate definitions, thus:

- 'The mortgagor' includes the mortgagor's heirs, executors, administrators and assigns.
- 'The mortgagee' includes the mortgagee's heirs, executors, administrators and assigns.

Even without further revision (beneficial though it would be), the clause can now be shortened to:

> The mortgagee covenants with the mortgagor that if the mortgagor pays on time all instalments of interest and observes all the covenants to be performed by the mortgagor, then the mortgagee will not call up the principal sum until [*date*]; and it is also agreed that the mortgagor will not call upon the mortgagee to accept repayment of the principal sum until [*date*].

Location

Where should definitions appear in the document? The traditional technique is to put them at the start. There is, of course, some logic to this. The reader encounters the defined meanings early, before meeting the substantive provisions of the document, and so can proceed knowing that particular words and phrases are to be understood in a particular way. But the drawback – at least in a complex document – is that the reader must conquer (or so it seems) the daunting thicket of definitions before even beginning to wrestle with the substantive provisions. For the lay reader, the document then becomes unnecessarily intimidating. In contrast, the lawyer, familiar with this placement, is likely to proceed directly to the substantive provisions and then return to the definitions to fill out meaning where necessary.

Another technique, common in legislative drafting, is to place definitions at the end of the document. This too has some logic to it. The reader begins with the substantive provisions, coming to the definitions later, by which time some feeling has been obtained for the thrust of the document. But this technique is not entirely effective where the document appends schedules or annexures, for then the definitions are likely to be at neither the start nor the end of the document, but somewhere in the middle, making them difficult to find in a hurry.

A third technique, aiming to capture the best of both worlds, is to begin or end the document with an index of defined terms, at the same time explaining that they are defined at other (specified) points in the document. This technique sometimes appears in legislation.[37] It allows the reader to move fairly directly to the substantive provisions, forewarned that certain words and phrases have defined meanings but not yet burdened with the detail of those meanings.

A useful technique is to create a separate definitions clause for important inter-related matters. Assume that in a document dealing with the business of jet boats it proves necessary to state (or define) what is meant by 'boat', 'jet boat', 'adventure jet boat' and 'non-adventure jet boat'. If these are dealt with alphabetically, the reader perusing the definition of 'adventure jet boat' does not yet know what is meant by the basic term 'boat'. The problem is compounded if all definitions in the document are lumped together in one alphabetical list. The solution is to separate related definitions into a subgroup, moving from the general to the particular and to the more particular. So in our example, the heading might be 'Meaning of "boat" and related expressions', and the order in which the items are dealt with would be (1) boat (2) jet boat (3) adventure jet boat, and (4) non-adventure jet boat. Similar examples are legion: for instance, 'substance', 'noxious substance' and 'non-noxious substance'.

Sometimes, definitions are used only once, or only within a particular part of a document. These are best placed near where they occur, rather than in a list of general definitions. This helps the reader more efficiently find the place of definition, and more directly reminds the reader that the word or phrase is used in a special sense.

Highlighting defined terms

Most lawyers highlight each defined term wherever it appears in a document. Readers, alerted that the term is used in a special sense, can then check the definition. In traditional legal documents, the conventional way to highlight a defined term is to capitalise the initial letter of the word (or of each word, if the term comprises more than one word). However, this convention may well disconcert lay readers who are unfamiliar with it. It may also lead to some uncertainty where a defined word appears at the start

[37] For example, in the *Native Title Act* 1993 (Cth) and the *Inquiries Act* 2005 (UK).

of a sentence or at the start of a heading: since the first letter of words in these positions is always capitalised, is the word being used in its defined sense?[38] But as we mentioned in Chapter 5, the convention is so entrenched that it will be difficult to overturn. That, of course, is no justification for preserving it. Other methods of highlighting defined terms are available, and should be considered. One is to print defined terms in italics, a convention that some Australian parliamentary drafters now use. Another is to mark them with an asterisk, perhaps adding a running footer to the following effect: 'Asterisked terms have defined meanings, to be found in clause X.'

Whichever method is chosen, it should not unduly interrupt the reader's flow. Highlighting techniques draw attention to themselves, offending the principle that legal documents should follow the ordinary rules of composition. For this reason, the legislative drafting convention – still used in many countries, including England – of leaving defined terms unhighlighted, has much to commend it. In legal drafting, as in writing generally, lack of clutter is a desirable attribute.

Avoiding long alphabetical lists

Try to avoid using long alphabetical lists of defined terms. The longer they are, the more muddling they can become – particularly where terms related in sense become separated by many letters of the alphabet (see our discussion above about terms such as 'boat' and 'jet boat'). And if you choose to define a word or phrase, do your best to show (subtly and so as not to disturb the sense of the sentence) that it is used in a special sense.

Explanations or descriptions rather than definitions

The private drafter almost always resorts to 'dictionary-type' definitions. The public drafter is often more astute, relying where appropriate more on 'explanations' or 'descriptions' than on pure defining – even if that explanation or description is sometimes preceded by 'includes' rather than 'means' (the standard lead-in word for a definition) or 'is' (a non-standard but often useful variant). A good example of an 'explanation' is found in the admirably-drafted UK *Arbitration Act* 1996 s 5(2):

[38] See, e.g. *R A & K Becker Pty Ltd v Cariste Pty Ltd* [2001] NSWSC 663 (11 BPR 20,111), where a clause was headed 'Equipment' but the wording of the clause used the (lower case) 'equipment'. This, the judge said [at para 28], made it 'unclear whether the heading is intended to refer to equipment generally, or to "the Equipment" (the defined term)'.

There is an agreement in writing –

(a) if the agreement is made in writing (whether or not it is signed by the parties),
(b) if the agreement is made by exchange of communications in writing, or
(c) if the agreement is evidenced in writing.

Tables, plans and formulas

Modern legal documents exhibit a growing trend towards the use of tables, plans and formulas. In the hands of the adept drafter, these are indispensable tools for conveying information more efficiently than mere words ever can.

Tables

Tables and tabulation can be used to illustrate the order of steps in a transaction, or to set clauses side-by-side for easy comparison, or to show lists of figures. Their usefulness can be seen in Table 4, taken from an agreement to sell a piece of land and to build a house on it.

Table 4 Use of a table in a contract

Payment table
(a) The Purchaser will pay the Smiths:

Stage	Amount (£)	Triggering event	Date due in 2006
1	60,000	Completion of model transfer	3 July
2	30,000	At damp proof course	24 July
3	50,000	At wall plate level	1 September
4	50,000	When the roof of the dwelling is on and the dwelling is plastered out	30 September
5	60,000	On finish of the works	22 October

(b) The dates for stages 2, 3, 4 and 5 are estimates only, but the date at stage 1 is the contractual date for completion of the model transfer.

Plans

Plans can often convey information more effectively than words. They are traditionally used to identify land in conveyances,[39] leases, and transfers of

[39] A buyer cannot insist on a plan where the contract description is clear: *Re Sharman's Contract* [1936] Ch 755. However, the buyer can compel the seller to convey by reference to

part of the land in a registered title. But they are suitable for many kinds of legal documents, including pleadings (where they are used occasionally) and wills (where they are almost never used).

Of course, plans should be used only if they are accurate. Inaccurate plans are a fertile source of litigation. So too are plans that are accurate enough for some purposes, but insufficiently precise for the particular task in hand. Conveyancing plans in England and Wales are often insufficiently accurate to describe the property being conveyed.[40] The English Court of Appeal in *Scarfe v Adams* reminded conveyancers of the consequences of inadequate plans. After stating that a small-scale Ordnance Survey map would be wholly inadequate in ordinary conveyancing, Cumming-Bruce LJ warned:

> I hope that this judgment will be understood by every conveyancing solicitor in the land as giving them warning, loud and clear . . . [It] is absolutely essential that each parcel conveyed shall be described in the conveyance or transfer deed with such particularity and precision that there is no room for doubt about the boundaries of each, and for such purposes if a plan is intended to control the description, an Ordnance map on a scale of 1:2500 is worse than useless. The plan or other drawing bound up with the deed must be on such a large scale that it clearly shows with precision where each boundary runs. In my view the parties to this appeal are the victims of sloppy conveyancing for which the professional advisers of vendor and purchasers appear to bear the responsibility.[41]

Another source of difficulty in conveyancing transactions is discrepancy between the words used to describe a property and the plan used to describe the same property. Which prevails: the verbal description or the plan? Sometimes the answer can be gleaned from the document. Thus if the plan is said to be 'for the purposes of identification only' – a phrase we criticised in Chapter 5 – the verbal description prevails.[42] Conversely, if the verbal description proclaims that the property is more particularly described in

a plan where it is impossible to describe the property sufficiently without one: *Re Sparrow and James' Contract* [1910] 2 Ch 60.

[40] Theodore B. F. Ruoff and others (eds), *Ruoff and Roper on the Law and Practice of Registered Conveyancing* (looseleaf, London: Sweet & Maxwell, 1996), para 4–01.

[41] [1981] 1 All ER 843 at 845, CA.

[42] *Hopgood v Brown* [1955] 1 WLR 213, 228, CA; *Webb v Nightingale* (1957) 107 LJ 359; *Neilson v Poole* (1969) 20 P & CR 909; *Wigginton and Milner Ltd v Winster Engineering Ltd* [1978] 1 WLR 1462, CA; *Johnson v Shaw* [2004] 1 P & CR 10 at 133, 138 (CA).

the plan,[43] the plan prevails. But at other times the answer is far from clear, as where the following unhelpful (and all too common) phrases are used: 'for the purposes of identification only more particularly delineated'[44] or 'for identification more particularly described'.[45] In such cases, it becomes a question of construction of the instrument as a whole whether the plan prevails over the verbal description, or vice versa. In practice, where the answer is unclear the court will probably hold that the verbal description prevails.[46]

Judges take a realistic approach to the role of plans, particularly in conveyancing transactions. For instance, a plan has been held decisive in showing that a conveyance passed the entire building within the area delineated on the plan, even though that building included a room projecting from a neighbouring property.[47] On the other hand, where a plan in a conveyance of a 'dwelling-house' showed that a wall of the house abutted the boundary but did not show that the footings supporting the wall projected slightly beyond the coloured portion of the plan, the conveyance was held to include the footings. This was because a conveyance of a 'dwelling-house' means all the parts of the dwelling-house, including the eaves and the footings and any projections of the house.[48]

[43] *Eastwood v Ashton* [1915] AC 900 at 920, HL.

[44] See *Neilson v Poole* (1969) 20 P & CR 909 at 916, where Megarry J roundly condemned the phrase; *Alan Wibberley Building Ltd v Insley* [1999] 1 WLR 894 at 899, where Lord Hoffmann described the phrase as 'fairly inconclusive'.

[45] These phrases have echoes in 'as joint tenants in equal shares', another nonsense phrase which strings together two conflicting notions. See *Martin v Martin* (1987) 54 P & CR 238 ('as beneficial joint tenants in common in equal shares' held to create a tenancy in common); and *Re Barbour* [1967] Qd R 10 ('share and share alike as joint tenants' held to create joint tenancy). See also comments by J. E. Adams, 'What's Mine is Mine and What's Yours is Ours' [1987] Conv 405.

[46] *Druce v Druce* [2004] 1 P & CR 26 at 433 (CA).

[47] *Laybourn v Gridley* [1892] 2 Ch 53; *Grigsby v Melville* [1974] 1 WLR 80, CA.

[48] *Truckell v Stock* [1957] 1 WLR 161, CA. However, the conveyance does not necessarily include the column of air between the projecting eaves and the projecting footings (ibid. at 163, Lord Denning LJ), nor, presumably, the airspace above the projecting eaves or the ground below the projecting footings. In the nineteenth century and early twentieth century, it was common to describe land 'as the same is now in the occupation of [John Smith] as tenant thereof'. In *Corbett v Hill* (1870) 9 LR Eq 671 this type of wording was held to convey a projecting room but not the column of air above it. This form of description has now died out, a happy circumstance given its inadequate nature.

Graphs, flow charts and similar techniques

Graphs and similar techniques – flow charts, bar charts, pie charts, sketches – can be useful in presenting or interpreting legal ideas. They are already seen in some commercial documents as technical annexes or schedules, where specialists (such as structural engineers, scientists and architects) set out their own message in their own way. But they could be used much more in legal documents generally. Indeed, graphs and diagrams are sometimes the only way to give information with sufficient precision. For example, in the field of patents, they are considered essential. They are also particularly useful in road traffic regulations, as Panel 10 illustrates.[49]

Flow charts are particularly useful in complex commercial documents to show such matters as the steps to be taken in a transaction, or the structure of a partnership or joint venture. Flow charts are already common in legislation. An example is found in the Australian *Native Title Act* 1993, s 203AA(5) – see Panel 11 on p. 196. Drafters of legal documents could do well to follow this legislative lead.

Formulas

Properly used, mathematical formulas can replace words – reducing length, aiding comprehension, and preventing ambiguity.[50] The formulas themselves can be quite simple. Take this example from the English *Rent Act* 1977, designed to work out what part of a premium lawfully paid on the grant or assignment of a tenancy can be recovered on a later assignment:

> The fraction is $\frac{X}{Y}$ where –
> X is the residue of the term of the tenancy at the date of the assignment, and
> Y is the term for which the tenancy was granted.

[49] For good examples, see *Road Traffic Regulations* 1991 (Law Reform Commission of Victoria, Discussion Paper, 1991), and *Proposed Australian Road Rules* (National Road Transport Commission, 1995). Both combine plain English with coloured diagrams.

[50] For example, Casen and Steiner have shown that by use of the Heaviside unit step function (invented by Oliver Heaviside and used in engineering applications), potentially ambiguous words can be replaced by a precise mathematical formula which caters for varying conditions. The formula and its associated definitions ran to nearly three typed pages. See M. Casen and J. M. Steiner, 'Mathematical Functions and Legal Drafting' (1986) 102 *Law Quarterly Review*, p. 585.

Riding a bicycle in a bicycle lane

1406 If there is a bicycle lane on a *carriageway*+ you must ride in it if it is practicable to do so.

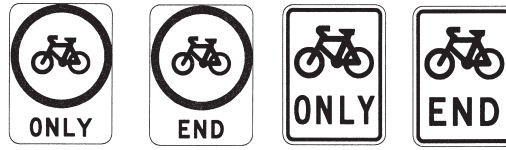


Fig.115 a,b,c,d.
Bicycle lane signs.

Penalty : 1 penalty unit

Riding a bicycle on a separated footpath

1407 If you are riding a bicycle on a *separated footpath*+, you must not ride it on the side of the *footpath*+ that is reserved for *pedestrians*+.

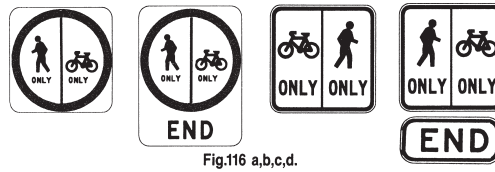


Fig.116 a,b,c,d.
Separated footpath signs.

Penalty : 1 penalty unit

Similarly, a pedestrian must not use a bicycle path or that part of a separated footpath that is reserved for bicycles (See Reg.1710).

Riding a bicycle on a shared footpath

1408 If you are riding a bicycle on a *shared footpath*+, you must *give way*+ to a pedestrian who is either on, or entering, the footpath.

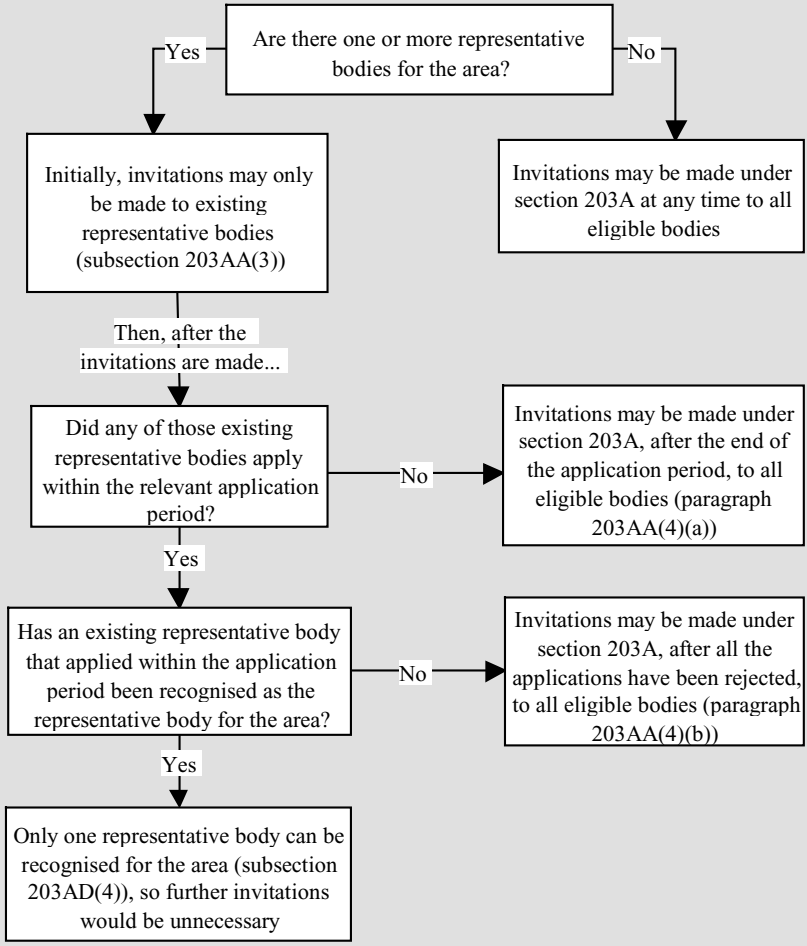
Fig.117 a,b,c,d.
Shared footpath signs.

Penalty : 1 penalty unit

Panel 10 Regulatory signs

Diagram of the rules for making invitations

5) This diagram shows when, under section 203A and this section, invitations can be made, during the transition period, for applications for recognition as the representative body for a particular area.



Note: These rules will not apply once the transition period has ended.

Panel 11 Example of flow chart from Australian *Native Title Act*

Another example might be the calculation of the price in an option to purchase land:

> The price is
> $[(A-B) \times 80\%] - OF$
> where
> - A = open market value
> - B = the costs
> - OF = the option fee

Sometimes, a mathematical formula can express a concept unambiguously where a verbal formula would be ambiguous. Thus, the relatively simple and unambiguous mathematical formula

$$\sqrt{\frac{250}{3}} + 7$$

can be expressed verbally as 'the square root of two hundred and fifty divided by three plus seven'.[51] But those words, used alone, are ambiguous, since they can mean

$$\frac{\sqrt{250}}{3 + 7}$$

or $\sqrt{200} + \frac{50}{3} + 7$

or $\sqrt{200} + \frac{50}{3+7}$

Drafters should not fear that judges are hostile to the use of mathematical formulas. Quite the contrary: judges have encouraged their appropriate use in legal documents. For example, in *London Regional Transport v Wimpey Group Services*, Hoffmann J concluded his judgment:

> Finally, I might be allowed to offer a word of advice to both surveyors and conveyancers. I doubt whether the mistakes which gave rise to this litigation would have happened if the surveyors' formula had been expressed algebraically instead of verbally, either in the original correspondence or the agreement.

[51] See David Crystal, *The Cambridge Encyclopedia of Language* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1987), p. 381.

> Rent formulae can often be expressed more simply and unambiguously in algebraic form and this case shows that a very modest degree of numeracy can save a great deal of money.[52]

Notes and examples

There is a growing trend in legislation to insert notes and examples to help readers understand the effect of provisions.[53] These devices can also be useful in private legal documents. Thus, notes may give a summary or overview of a particular provision. They may also provide useful navigational aids, helping the reader around the document by indicating other provisions to keep in mind when reading the particular provision. To illustrate: a clause in a mortgage may end with a 'Note' pointing readers to other clauses in the mortgage that deal with related material.

Examples may provide helpful illustrations of complex provisions. Thus, a rent review provision in a lease may contain a working example of the way in which the valuer is to take into account the various factors that are relevant to calculating the revised rent.

It is useful to indicate whether notes or examples form part of the document for the purposes of interpretation, or whether their purpose is to provide helpful hints to the reader without being part of the document for the purposes of interpretation. Otherwise, doubt (and litigation) may arise over their precise function and status.[54] Drafters who give thought to such matters commonly insert a double disclaimer to the following effect: (1) notes or examples are for information only, and are not intended to affect the construction of the document; and (2) if a note or example conflicts with the text to which it relates, the text prevails. While there are legislative precedents for disclaimers of this kind, they give the impression that the

[52] (1986) 280 EG 898. This case is discussed in Chapter 2.

[53] The devices are not new: examples can be found in the *Indian Evidence Act* of 1872, cited in Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Report No. 33: Access to the Law: The Structure and Format of Legislation* (1990), pp. 54–5.

[54] See, e.g. *Sklavenites v Phoenix Prudential Australia Ltd* (1986) 4 ANZ Insurance Cases 60-745, where the New South Wales Court of Appeal had to decide whether a statement introduced by 'Note:' was a 'condition' of the insurance policy; *One.Tel Ltd v Rich* (2005) 190 FLR 443, where the New South Wales Supreme Court had to decide whether a 'Note' in a statute was part of the statute for interpretation purposes.

drafter is insecure about the effect of the document. But in any case, the drafter should take care to ensure that the examples are correct, for nothing is more apt to confuse than an example in conflict with its accompanying text.[55]

We add three other cautions about the use of examples. First, examples should be used only to illustrate the operation of provisions that are complex or difficult. An example that states the obvious insults the reader's intelligence. Second, examples should not be used to introduce substantive material. The proper place for that material is in the substantive provisions themselves. Third (and related to the second caution), examples should not stretch the ambit of the text they are intended to illustrate; for this will inevitably give rise to argument whether an extension of meaning is a legitimate (and effective) purpose of an 'example'.[56]

Simplified outlines

Another trend in legislative drafting is the use of 'simplified outlines', or 'overviews'. They give the reader an overview of what is to follow, and may be outlines of the whole Act, or a part of the Act, or a specific section. An example is found in s 3 of the Australian *Members of Parliament (Life Gold Pass) Act* 2002:

3 Simplified outline

The following is a simplified outline of this Act:

- This Act sets out the entitlements of holders of a Life Gold Pass.
- The basic rules are as follows:
  - (a) a former Prime Minister is entitled to a maximum of 40 domestic return trips per year;
  - (b) other pass-holders are entitled to a maximum of 25 domestic return trips per year.

[55] As in *Whittaker v Comcare* (1998) 28 AAR 55.

[56] As occurred in *Campbells Cash and Carry Pty Ltd v National Union of Workers, New South Wales Branch (No 2)* (2001) 53 NSWLR 393.

- This Act also deals with travel by:
  (a) spouses of pass-holders; and
  (b) the widows and widowers of deceased pass-holders; and
  (c) the spouses of sitting members who have satisfied the qualifying period for the issue of a Life Gold Pass.
- If a superannuation order is made under the *Crimes (Superannuation Benefits) Act 1989* in relation to a person convicted of a corruption offence, the person is disqualified from Life Gold Pass travel and severance travel.

Drafters of private legal documents might usefully consider this technique, particularly for documents that are long or complex. The outline gives the reader a bird's-eye view of the document, introducing the main points and key concepts in summary form. The language may be colloquial, since the outline does not presume to include substantive provisions. Indeed, by 'boxing' the outline (as in the above example), the drafter clearly distinguishes the outline from the substantive provisions.

'Shall' and the modern document

In Chapter 5 we dealt with some of the interpretational difficulties caused by *shall*. We mentioned particularly the potential for imprecision the word raises in two contexts: the futurity/precondition division, and the obligation/direction division.

Some modern writers still feel that *shall* has a place in legal documents. They distinguish between provisions that express a *command* and provisions that are merely *directory*. By *directory* they mean provisions requiring a certain course to be taken but imposing no sanction for breach – provisions that deprive the subject of an opportunity or right, but whose breach gives rise to no legal consequences. In the view of these writers, *must* should be used for directory provisions but *shall* should be retained to impose a command (mandatory).[57]

[57] See Reed Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, 2nd edn (Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown and Co., 1986), p. 214; R. W. Ramage, 'Will or Shall?' (1970) 120 *New Law Journal*, p. 402; R. Dick, *Legal Drafting in Plain Language*, 3rd edn (Toronto: Thomson Canada, 1995), p. 93; Robinson, *Drafting*, p. 40.

This view seems to be based on the premise that to use *must* for obligation leaves nothing distinctive for direction. Yet to prescribe *shall* for obligation and *must* for direction seems unnecessarily pedantic and as a practical matter invites trouble.[58] It also overlooks the linguistic reality that in common speech *shall* is now used only rarely, and that where it is used it can have two quite different senses: to indicate compulsion ('You shall shut the door') or futurity ('Tomorrow I shall shut the door'). To use it in legal documents can give rise to the same ambiguity.

The modern trend is to eliminate *shall* altogether and replace it with something more appropriate – usually *must*. As long ago as 1985 the Attorney-General of Victoria, in a ministerial statement on legislative drafting, stipulated that in future legislation *must* was to replace *shall* wherever *shall* was used to impose an obligation.[59] The Law Reform Commission of Victoria recommended the same approach in its report on plain language.[60] These pioneering views received a degree of judicial criticism – especially when used in the negative form, *must not*[61] – and some professional resistance.[62] However, the move to *must* is now seen in the legislation of many jurisdictions, including most Australian states, New Zealand, and Canada.[63] *Must* is also now finding favour in the United Kingdom.[64] Lawyers who draft private legal documents could well follow this lead.

[58] Some exemplars of the modern style, such as Garner and Kimble, see some benefits in preserving this use of *shall*, although conceding as a practical matter that *must* is preferable: B. Garner, *Dictionary of Modern Legal Usage*, 2nd edn (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2001), pp. 939–42; J. Kimble, 'The Many Misuses of *Shall*' (1992) 3 *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing*, p. 61 (cf M. Asprey, '*Shall* Must Go', ibid., p. 79, and Kimble's rejoinder, ibid., p. 85).

[59] Victoria Parliament, *Plain English Legislation* [Melbourne, 1985], p. 6; also in *Victorian Parliamentary Debates*, vol. 377, pp. 432–7. See also Canada's *Uniform Interpretation Act* 1967–68, c 7, ss 10 and 28.

[60] *Report 9: Plain English and the Law* (1987), vol. 1, p. 61.

[61] *Halwood Corporation Ltd v Roads Corporation* [1998] 2 VR 439 at 445–6 (Tadgell JA).

[62] See correspondence in the *Australian Law Journal*: (1989) 63, pp. 75–8, 522–5, 726–728; (1990) 64 ALJ 168–9.

[63] See A. Watson-Brown, 'Shall Revisited' (1995) 25 *Queensland Law Society Journal* (June), p. 263; A. Watson-Brown, 'Do We Still Need "Shall"?' [1998] *Hong Kong Law Journal*, p. 29; New Zealand Law Commission, *Legislation Manual* (Wellington, 1996), paras 171–3. In Canada, some provinces use *must* to impose obligation; in British Columbia, for example, since 1992 the statutes of British Columbia use *must* for this purpose, bolstered by s 29 of the *Interpretation Act* (RSBC, 1996, Chapter 238) requiring courts to construe *must* as imperative.

[64] See *Human Rights Act* 1998, a quiet about-turn in English parliamentary drafting.

Of course, drafters must use *must* consistently. In careless hands, *must* can be as ambiguous as *shall*.[65] Judges have always felt free in appropriate circumstances to interpret *shall* as creating a mere direction or discretion – that is, to read *shall* as *may*.[66] So too they will feel free to construe *must* as *may* (and to construe *may* as *must*).[67] There is one difference, however: unlike *shall*, there is as yet no established line of authority to comfort a judge who is tempted to adopt such a flexible construction of *must*. Judicial statements to date all support the view that *must* is to be read as mandatory. For example, as long ago as 1979, the Ontario Divisional Court said that *must* has to be considered mandatory, and that it was not an equivocal word like *shall*, which courts had held could be either mandatory or directory.[68] More recently, a British Columbia judge (construing a statute which formerly provided that 'the Court *shall* make' an order restraining a person from disposing of matrimonial assets, but which had been amended to provide that 'the Court *must* make' the order) said that *must* entails a 'more mandatory obligation, admitting of less discretion in the Court'.[69] And Australian judges have expressly recognised that *must* is quite sufficient to impose an obligation.[70]

Some drafters shun *must* because they see it as too harsh or heavy-handed for the tone of their document. This attitude should not be dismissed out of hand as precious. The tone of a document may be important. For instance,

[65] John Lyons, *Introduction to Theoretical Linguistics* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1968), p. 309.

[66] See, for example, *Balabel v Mehmet* [1990] 1 EGLR 220 (CA), where a clause in a contract for purchase of a leasehold entitled the purchaser to go into possession before completion, but provided that if the landlord's consent to assignment was refused within a stated time, then 'the Purchaser shall vacate the premises'. In the context, it was held that 'shall' meant 'shall be entitled to', or 'may'. See also Chapter 5.

[67] As in *Samad v District Court of New South Wales* (2000) 50 NSWLR 270, where three appeal judges held that, in the particular context, a provision that an official *may* cancel a licence meant that the official *must* cancel the licence; reversed on appeal, (2002) 76 ALJR 871, where the High Court held that, in the particular context, *may* meant what it said – that is, it conferred on the official a discretion, not an obligation.

[68] *Re Agricultural Union v Massey-Ferguson Industries Ltd* (1979) 94 DLR (3d) 743. But see *Brygel v Stewart-Thornton* [1992] 2 VR 387 at 379–99 (followed in *Re Phillip Andrew Balyl* (1994) 75 A Crim R 575), holding that a statutory provision that a document 'must' contain specified material was satisfied if the document contained substantially that material.

[69] *Lovick v Brough* (1998) 36 RFL (4th) 458 at para 7.

[70] *South Australian Housing Trust v Development Assessment Commission* (1994) 63 SASR 35 at 38; *Surveyor-General v Seychell* (2002) 81 SASR 277 at 286 ('the word "must" denotes a mandatory obligation').

where parties have worked hard to develop a relationship of mutual co-operation and respect, an overuse of *must* in the document which regulates their relationship might be thought to introduce an unnecessarily adversarial attitude. In such a case, the drafter might try *is to*, an alternative now quite acceptable as a means of creating compulsion – for example: the tenant '*is to* keep the premises in repair' or the landlord '*is to* provide a set a keys'.[71] And despite the principle that drafters should be rigorously consistent in their use of terminology, in a lengthy document the drafter may well slip. Indeed, some variation of terminology may be appropriate in different parts of the document where a different tone is called for. Elegant variation is a literary device. To insist on precisely the same terminology and a uniform tone may make the document mind-numbingly boring. Thus, it may be appropriate to use both *must* and *is to* in the same document.[72] Variation can add interest, provided it does not introduce ambiguity or uncertainty.

Handling generality and vagueness

Sometimes, lawyers must draft in generalities. Detail may not be possible. An example is where the parties to a document have settled heads of agreement and wish to bind themselves contractually without waiting for fine detail to be worked through. Usually, this does not cause any problem. Generality is to be condemned only where it produces ambiguity – that is, something open to two or more different meanings.

Sometimes, too, lawyers must use expressions that are inherently vague, for nothing more precise is available. Examples are: *reasonable, as soon as possible, as soon as practicable, immediately, whenever, reputable, satisfactory, usual, material, fair, proper*. The import of these and similar words varies with the context. Here, too, condemnation is appropriate only where the vagueness leads to ambiguity.

[71] Examples are the English Standard Conditions of Sale of Land (see Richard Castle, 'Standard Conditions of Sale: a Milestone' (1990) 16 *Law Society Gazette*, p. 24), and the English Standard Commercial Property Conditions.

[72] For examples, see s 133D of the *Real Property Act* 1900 (NSW), where *is to* and *must* are used interchangeably in the one section; and s 83 of the *Retirement Villages Act* 1999 (NSW), where *will* and *must* are used interchangeably in the one sentence.

In some contexts, vagueness can be a benefit.[73] David Mellinkoff praises what he calls 'calculated' ambiguity, equating it with flexibility and the use of vague words like *necessary*, *reasonable*, *substantial*, *satisfactory* and *proper*.[74] Consider, for example, the following right of way, granted on the sale of a council house. It exhibits elements of vagueness, but it is not ambiguous:

> The right to pass and repass at all times with or without vehicles over that part of the vehicular access as is shown coloured brown on the plan annexed hereto subject to the payment to the Council . . . of a proportion of the cost of maintenance and upkeep thereof.

The precise 'proportion' to be paid is not specified (nor would the obligation be any more precise if the drafter had employed a more commonly used phrase: 'a proper proportion', 'a fair proportion', 'a proper proportion according to use', or the like). In reality, the parties will use their common sense to calculate a figure as the question arises from time to time. Specifying a more precise formula is not a central issue in the document, and the risk that the clause will be tested in court is so remote that it can be discounted. Provisions of this kind rarely prove a problem. They demonstrate the adage that drafters should ask themselves 'Will it work?' rather than 'What will a judge think of it?', which in turn reflects the late Professor J. E. Adams's distinction between 'planning for performance' and 'planning for risk'.[75]

Again, consider the following extract from a franchise agreement for a milk round:

> The Franchisor undertakes . . .:
>
> (a) To supply sufficient Liquid Milk and Milk Products . . . as the Franchise Operator may require to enable him to provide a regular and efficient service to retail customers in the Franchise Area.

The words 'sufficient', 'regular', and 'efficient', are incapable of precise definition. But the parties can see quite well what is meant, and given that each

[73] Reed Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, pp. 35, 39.

[74] *Language of the Law*, p. 450.

[75] J. E. Adams, Address to the Commerce and Industry Group of the Law Society of England and Wales, reported at (1982) 72 *Law Society Gazette*, p. 1582. Professor Adams was the precedents editor of the leading English journal, *The Conveyancer and Property Lawyer*.

side gains advantages from the contract, it works. The writing, though fuzzy, is adequate for the occasion.

Of course, some legal documents demand more precision than others. For example, in conveyances of land it is important to be precise in describing the property being conveyed (the 'parcels clause'). But even here some flexibility may be allowed. An example is the parcels clause from the conveyance set out below. Although hardly a model of sharp drafting, the description of the width had to be vague because the strips of land in question were hundreds of yards long:

> ALL THOSE four strips of land varying in width between one and two feet adjoining on the northern and southern side of the public highway, all which said strips of land form part of the holding known as Cowleaze Farm, . . . all which four lengths of such strips being identified on the plan marked A annexed hereto by red lines.

Undertakings, also, should set out clearly what is undertaken to be done. This is particularly the case with undertakings given by lawyers, for they must be susceptible to judicial enforcement as part of the courts' supervisory jurisdiction over their officers.[76] But with some other kinds of undertakings, a degree of woolliness may be excused. The following is a borrower's undertaking to a building society:

> I undertake that I will carry out the following work to the above property within six months of completion of your mortgage advance to me on the security of the above property, namely:-
>
> 1. Replace few roof slates (house and garage).
> 2. Repair gutter joints.
> 3. Repair plumbing joints at base of hot water cylinder.
> 4. Remedy dampness to chimney-breast in bedroom (boiler flue may need lining) – check damp roof timbers above.
> 5. Examine very slight woodworm attacks to floorboards in loft and under the staircase – treat if still active

Some of the borrower's obligations are expressed vaguely. Yet as long as both sides acknowledge the vagueness (which they can be taken to have done),

[76] *Re a Solicitor* [1966] 1 WLR 1604; *Wade v Licardy* (1993) 33 NSWLR 1 at 7–9; *Re C (a solicitor)* [1982] 1 NZLR 137.

no harm is caused. Undertakings like these rarely have to be enforced, for in all probability the borrower will make sure the work is done.

Generality and vagueness, then, have a place in legal documents. But they should be used sparingly, for excessive use of either can be counterproductive. Yet so too can excessive particularity. The problem lies in knowing on which side of the line to go.[77]

To illustrate the problems of excessive particularity, take the following example of a tenant's covenant in a commercial lease:

> Not at any time on or after [*date*] to bring keep store stack or lay out upon the land any materials equipment plant bins crates cartons boxes or any receptacle for waste or any other item which is or might become unsightly or in any way detrimental to the Premises or the area generally.

Does the covenant preclude the tenant from bringing onto the land any barrels or tins? On one view, no. The maxim *expressio unius est exclusio alterius* (the inclusion of one thing is the exclusion of the other; see Chapter 2) suggests that the omission of barrels and tins from the list of prohibited items is deliberate. But on another view, yes. The maxim *eiusdem generis* (where a list of two or more items belonging to the same category is followed by general words, the general words are construed as confined to the same category; see Chapter 2) suggests that barrels and tins are in the same category as the items prohibited in the list, and so are included under 'any other item'. Whatever the result, it may be capricious. The drafter's over-particularity has posed problems of interpretation.

The clause could be made clearer by substituting a general word or words for each list, along these lines:

- 'bring keep store stack or lay out': *allow*
- 'materials equipment plant bins crates cartons boxes receptacles for waste or any other item': *thing*
- 'is or might become': *is*
- 'unsightly or in anyway detrimental': *unsightly or detrimental*
- 'the Premises or the area generally': *the premises or the neighbourhood.*

[77] See *Lavery v Pursell* (1888) 39 Ch D 508 at 517 (Chitty J); *Hobbs v London & South Western Railway* (1875) LR 10 QB 111 at 121 (Blackburn J).

The clause could then be rewritten:

> On and after [*date*], not to allow on the land anything which is unsightly or detrimental to the premises or to the neighbourhood.

Syntactic ambiguity

In the previous section, we distinguished between vagueness and ambiguity. We were there dealing with vagueness and ambiguity inherent in some words and phrases. But there is another form of ambiguity which drafters should strive to avoid: syntactic ambiguity, or ambiguity arising from the location of words or phrases within a sentence.[78]

Consider, for example, the following provision from an English regulation:

> No person shall . . . remove . . . any fencing, gangway, gear, ladder, hatch-covering . . . or other thing whatsoever *required by these regulations to be provided*.

Do the italicised words qualify all the items in the list, or only the words 'other thing whatsoever'? In a case which considered that question, the trial judge (McNair J) held that the words qualified only 'other thing whatsoever'; but on appeal, the Court of Appeal held unanimously that the words qualified all of the items in the list.[79] Careful drafting would have avoided the need to litigate this point.

Again, consider the following provision from an Australian statute:

> A corporation shall not use . . . *undue* harassment or coercion in connection with . . . the supply . . . of goods or services . . .

Did the word *undue* qualify only 'harassment', or did it qualify 'coercion' also? In two cases, judges held that *undue* qualified both words;[80] but in

[78] P. Conway, 'Syntactic Ambiguity' (2002), posted at <http://www.lawfoundation.net.au/information/pll/syntactic.pdf>

[79] *Cockerill v William Cory & Son Ltd* [1959] 2 QB 194.

[80] *Campbell v Metway Leasing Ltd* [1998] ATPR 41-630 (McInerney J); *Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v McCaskey* (2000) 104 FCR 8.

another case, a judge held that it qualified only 'harassment'.[81] Again, careful drafting would have avoided the ambiguity.

We return to this matter later in this chapter, when we consider problems with *and* and *or*.

Pronouns

Legal documents drafted in the traditional style tend to avoid personal pronouns, such as *she*, *they*, *we*. More formal substitutes are used – 'the said', 'the aforesaid', and the like. This style, perhaps adopted in the mistaken notion that it promotes precision, makes legal documents impersonal and stuffy. In contrast, the modern style of drafting has no qualms about using personal pronouns in legal documents. As David Mellinkoff puts it:

> The 'plain language movement' has rediscovered the pronouns 'you' and 'I'. Some now hail these born again pronouns as the key to legal simplification. The pronouns are short, easy to read, and give an appearance of intimacy lacking in a third person label. Any normal person would rather be an 'I', or even a 'you', rather than a 'Party of the First Part'.[82]

The 'I', 'we', and 'you' style is now becoming common in modern legal drafting. Properly used, it can greatly improve the accessibility of legal documents.

Although we embrace this trend towards pronouns, we add two cautionary notes. First, the chatty style of 'you' and 'we' may be out of place in a document where one side wishes to impress the other with the formality of the obligations being undertaken and the potential seriousness of their breach. To quote Mellinkoff again:

> The 'You' and 'I' format also has an inherent frailty that dictates cautious use. The very virtue of conversational informality lends itself to conveying a sense of camaraderie that may be essentially inconsistent with the adversary relation of the parties. If pronouns get too friendly, they tend to induce an unwarranted relaxation of attention to detail.[83]

[81] *Australian Competition and Consumer Commission v Maritime Union of Australia* [2002] ATPR 41-849.

[82] *Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense*, p. 96. [83] Ibid., p. 98.

Second, used thoughtlessly, the style can produce drivel. Consider the following example, a clause forbidding certain actions by a party to the document:

> You will not become bankrupt, commit an act of bankruptcy, call a meeting with your creditors or reach any arrangement with them, or allow anyone to present a bankruptcy petition against you.

Some of these events are quite beyond the promisor's control – for example, the promise not to allow anyone to present a bankruptcy petition. Essentially, what the drafter intended was a promise not to trigger the prohibited events by getting into financial difficulties. It would have been better to draft those events as triggers for remedies enforceable by the other party to the document. To speak of bankruptcy as a breach of obligation is to stretch language unduly.[84]

As a practical matter, if pronouns are employed to create a personal and informal style, rarely should it be necessary to define formally for whom the pronouns stand. Yet provisions like this are sometimes seen:

> The words 'you' or 'your' mean Cardmember, that is, the person named on the enclosed Card. The words 'we', 'our' and 'us' refer to American Express Europe Limited or its successors.

Almost always, context makes these kinds of definitions tautologous.

Inclusive language

Allied to the topic of pronouns is the matter of gender-neutral, or inclusive, language.[85] The traditional style of legal drafting prefers the male pronoun. Sometimes the interpretative rider is added that 'male includes female', reflecting a common statutory provision to similar effect.[86] This is so even

[84] *Cadogan Estates Ltd v McMahon* [2000] 3 WLR 1555 at 1561 (Lord Hoffmann) and 1567 (Lord Millett).

[85] Helen Leskovac, 'Legal Writing and Plain English: Does Voice Matter?' (1987) 38 *Syracuse Law Review*, p. 1193; Sandra Petersson, 'Gender Neutral Drafting: Historical Perspective' (1998) 19 *Statute Law Review*, p. 93; Sandra Petersson, 'Gender-Neutral Drafting: Recent Commonwealth Developments' (1999) 20 *Statute Law Review*, p. 35.

[86] For examples, see s 61 of the *Law of Property Act* 1925 (England), s 181 of the *Conveyancing Act* 1919 (NSW).

where the document is a standard form, such as a mortgage or lease, designed for use by males and females alike.

The modern style of drafting – as with writing generally – avoids the exclusive use of the male pronoun and consciously adopts a gender-neutral approach. Some drafters achieve this result simply by replacing 'he' with 'he or she', with the occasional inversion 'she or he', as if to correct past infelicities by linguistic affirmative action. This can produce strained language. It is much better to redraft in a way that remains idiomatic.

The New Zealand Law Commission, in its 1996 *Legislation Manual*, suggests a number of techniques for avoiding the male pronoun.[87] So too does the British Columbia Law Institute, in its 1998 report *Gender-Free Legal Writing: Managing the Personal Pronouns*.[88] The New Zealand Commission takes as its example the clause 'A member of the Tribunal may resign his office', and suggests the following devices:

- Omit the pronoun: 'A member of the Tribunal may resign office.'
- Use both masculine and female pronouns: 'A member of the Tribunal may resign his or her office.'
- Repeat the noun: 'A member of the Tribunal may resign the office of member.'
- Use the plural: 'Members of the Tribunal may resign their offices.'

Other techniques may also be used:

- Convert a noun to a verb form (a practice to be encouraged in any case, as we mentioned in Chapter 5). Thus the clause 'The landlord shall give his consent to an application if he is satisfied . . .' can be recast as 'The landlord must consent to an application if satisfied . . .'.
- Use a relative clause. Thus, 'Where a landlord re-enters under the lease, he may . . .' becomes 'A landlord who re-enters under the lease may . . .'.
- Use *they* and its variants as a singular pronoun. Hence 'The landlord may revoke his consent if . . .' becomes 'The landlord may revoke their consent if . . .'. This technique is increasing in popularity. It is found in both private legal documents and in statutes.[89] The *Oxford English Dictionary* traces

[87] Report No. 35, *Legislation Manual – Structure and Style* (Wellington, 1996), p. 47.
[88] Available at <http://www.bcli.org.>
[89] J Burnside, 'She – He – They' (1999) 110 *Victorian Bar News* (Spring), p. 53, discusses private documents. Statute examples are the Australian *Corporations Law* and the Ontario

its ancestry to the *Rolls of Parliament* of 1464. However, some drafters still find that it jars.

Whichever technique is used, of course, the drafter must be careful to ensure precision and consistency. It is also preferable, stylistically, to adopt a technique that does not unnecessarily draw attention to itself. For example, if a document is intended for single parties, to draft in the plural will seem incongruous. Those matters apart, no legal requirement demands retention of the traditional 'male-only' style. That style can always be replaced by inclusive language, without loss of legal precision or effectiveness.

Problems with 'and', 'or'

Legal drafters often overlook the potential for ambiguity inherent in the simple words *and* and *or*. The most celebrated example in England is the case which has come to be known as *Re Diplock*.[90] The judges who considered the case as it progressed through the various levels of courts expended an estimated 70,000 words on whether the phrase 'charitable *or* benevolent' created a valid charitable trust in a will.[91] In the end, the House of Lords ruled that it did not.[92] The issue arose because of the principle that a gift does not create a charitable trust unless every object or purpose of the gift is exclusively charitable; and not every benevolent object is 'charitable', as the law understands that word. Clearly, 'charitable *and* benevolent' is preferable to 'charitable *or* benevolent', since *and* cuts down the type of organisation that can benefit.[93]

The potential for difficulty in the use of these simple words is heightened by cases which have held that *and* is not always conjunctive, and *or* is not always disjunctive. These cases show that context may require the words to be construed in ways contrary to their normal meaning.[94]

Tobacco Tax Act 1990 (which also uses 'themself' as a singular pronoun). For a more detailed examination, see Corporations Law Simplification Program, *Drafting issues: A singular use of THEY* (Simplification Task Force, Commonwealth Attorney-General's Department, September 1995).

[90] Ending in the House of Lords under the name *Ministry of Health v Simpson* [1951] AC 251.

[91] The estimate is from F. L. Lucas, *Style*, 2nd edn (London: Cassell, 1974), p. 18.

[92] In *Chichester Diocesan Fund and Board of Finance v Simpson* [1944] AC 341.

[93] *Re Sutton* (1885) 28 Ch D 464 ('charitable and deserving'); *Re Best* [1904] 2 Ch 354.

[94] See (1940) 56 LQR 451 (note by REM).

To illustrate: *and* was found to be disjunctive – effectively meaning *or* – in *Attorney-General of the Bahamas v Royal Trust Co*. There, the Privy Council was asked to interpret the following clause:

> To use the income therefrom and any part of the capital thereof for any purposes for and/or connected with the education *and* welfare of Bahamian children and young people.

Their Lordships held that, since education would normally be for the welfare of a child, some wider meaning had to be given to 'and welfare'. Further, if welfare was ancillary to education, a purpose 'connected with' welfare would necessarily be connected with education, so the reference to welfare would again be otiose. With such abstruse reasoning, *and* was held to be disjunctive. In the result, the gift was void because it was not wholly charitable.[95]

The Privy Council also treated *and* as disjunctive in the following clause:

> [The property] shall be held by my trustees in trust for such charitable benevolent religious *and* educational institutions societies associations *and* objects as they in their uncontrolled discretion shall select.

Lord Buckmaster said of the word *and* in this clause:

> It is, in their Lordships' opinion, impossible to use the word 'and' as a link intended to join all the words together and make the gift available only for such institutions or objects as satisfied each one of the conditions represented by each of the separate words. Apart from the fact that such a restriction would all but render the gift inoperative, it is plain from the use of the word 'and' in the phrase 'institutions societies associations and objects' which occurs twice in immediate succession to the words in question, that 'and' must be regarded as 'or'.

In the result, the trust failed because the clause allowed the trustees to choose a body that was not charitable in the legal sense.[96]

And was also found to be disjunctive in the following phrase, which formed part of the objects clause of a theatrical association: 'To present classical, artistic, cultural *and* educational dramatic works'.[97] The court held

[95] [1986] 1 WLR 1001, PC.
[96] *Attorney General for New Zealand v Brown* [1917] AC 393, PC, at 397.
[97] *Associated Artists Ltd v Inland Revenue Commissioners* [1956] 1 WLR 752.

that the plays authorised could be classical *or* artistic *or* cultural *or* educational, *or* any combination. To have found otherwise would have narrowed the repertoire to plays with *all* the named characteristics, which was clearly not intended.

Likewise, *and* was held to be disjunctive in a statutory provision authorising the court to make an order suppressing the publication of evidence – specifically, the publication of certain persons' names '*and* any other material tending to identify' those persons. This construction was held to better reflect a parliamentary intent that the court was to have flexibility in ordering the suppression of 'all or any' material that would identify the persons.[98] Considerations of parliamentary intent were also relevant in an Australian case where a statutory official authorised a bank *and* receivers of a company to apply to court for a court order in relation to a company's affairs. There was (the court considered) no practical reason under the legislation to require *both* the bank and the receivers to apply for an order, particularly as their interests were not entirely common; and so *and* was to be read as *or*, enabling either the bank or the receivers to apply for the order.[99]

Turning to cases considering the meaning of *or*: the House of Lords construed *or* conjunctively in the following statutory provision:

> If any oil to which this section applies is discharged from a British ship, the owner *or* master of the ship shall . . . be guilty of an offence under this section.

The House of Lords held that both the owner *and* the master could be guilty of an offence. Lord Wilberforce said that in logic there was no rule that *or* must always carry an exclusive force; whether it does so depends on the context.[100]

Similarly, the New South Wales Court of Appeal held that *and* was to be read disjunctively in the following legislative provision regulating compensation for victims of crime: 'Compensation is payable only if the symptoms *and* disability persist for more than 6 weeks.' It was enough that either the symptoms *or* disability persisted for more than six weeks.[101]

[98] *Herald & Weekly Times Ltd v Vlassakis* (2003) SASR 70 at 108–12.

[99] *Re Peat Resources of Australia Pty Ltd* (2004) 181 FLR 454.

[100] *Federal Steam Navigation Co. v Department of Trade* [1974] 2 All ER 97 at 110. The Act referred to is the *Oil in Navigable Waters Act* 1963.

[101] *Victims Compensation Fund v Brown* (2002) 54 NSWLR 668. Strictly, the court regarded the phrase 'symptoms and disability' as a composite phrase – a 'portmanteau' phrase

'And/or'

The contrived conjunction *and/or* is becoming common in legal drafting. Scrutton LJ once described its use in the document before him as so liberal that it gave the appearance of being sprinkled 'as if from a pepper-pot'.[102] In recent times it has even appeared in statutes.[103] All this is despite judicial strictures against its use. In the United States of America, judges have condemned it as an 'abominable invention . . . as devoid of meaning as it is incapable of classification by the rules of grammar and syntax'; and as 'that Janus-faced verbal monstrosity, neither word nor phrase, the child of the brain of someone too lazy or too dull to express his precise meaning, or too dull to know what he did mean'; and as one of those 'inexcusable barbarisms which was sired by indolence and damned by indifference'.[104] In England, Viscount Simon LC, when discussing confused pleadings before the court, spoke of 'the repeated use of the bastard conjunction "and/or" which has, I fear, become the commercial court's contribution to basic English'.[105] In Australia, a leading judge described the phrase as 'an elliptical and embarrassing expression which endangers accuracy for the sake of brevity';[106] another judge described 'the common and deplorable affection' for *and/or* (in a notice to quit) as 'inviting trouble';[107] and yet another declared invalid the purported exercise of an option 'by A and/or B'.[108]

Speaking in 1965, Lord Reid said that *and/or* was not yet part of the English language.[109] Now, 40 years on, perhaps it is. Occasionally even senior

– using two words where one would have sufficed, the drafter being motivated by 'the comforting feeling that a pair of terms somehow conveys more than the sum of its parts' (citing Bennion, *Statutory Interpretation: Supplement to 3rd edn*, 1999, S 63–4).

[102] *Gurney v Grimmer* (1932) 44 Lloyds L Rep 189.

[103] For example, the Australian *Trade Marks Act* 1995.

[104] *American General Insurance Co. v Webster* 118 SW 2d 1084 (Texas, 1938); *Employers' Mutual Liability Insurance Co. v Tollefsen* 263 NW 376 at 377 (1935); *Cochrane v Florida East Coast Ry Co*. 145 So 217 at 218 (1932).

[105] *Bonitto v Fuerst Bros & Co. Ltd* [1944] AC 75 at 82.

[106] *Fadden v Deputy Commissioner of Taxation* (1943) 68 CLR 76 at 82 (Williams J).

[107] *Millen v Grove* [1945] VLR 259 at 260.

[108] *Burwood Project Management Pty Ltd v Polar Technologies International Pty Ltd* (1999) 9 BPR 17,355.

[109] *John G Stein & Co. Ltd v O'Hanlon* [1965] AC 890 at 904.

judges condone its use.[110] In our view, however, legal drafters should avoid using it. No doubt its popularity springs from its usefulness in compressing sentences. Thus, the drafter writes in a lease 'The landlord shall provide electricity and/or gas'. But while brevity is generally to be commended, over-compression of expression tends to mislead. Here, the use of *and/or* obscures the reality that the landlord has an option, satisfied by providing *either* gas or electricity, with no obligation to provide both. The word *and* is superfluous, which is why its presence tends to confuse. The drafter should have written 'The landlord must provide electricity or gas, and may provide both'.

Perhaps in the example just considered there is no real room for misunderstanding. But the potential for misunderstanding multiplies exponentially when the drafter uses a string of *and/ors*. This occurred in an Australian case, where pleadings alleged a breach of duty by a large firm of solicitors. The pleadings based the alleged breach on knowledge said to have been gained by the firm's partners 'A and/or B and/or C and/or D and/or E'. The judge described this use of *and/or* as 'particularly unhappy', since a statement of claim should express precisely the foundation of the proceedings. He struck out the pleadings.[111]

Drafting in the present tense

The modern technique is to draft in the present tense. This contrasts with the more traditional style, which often adopts more complex tense constructions as if required for precision. However, documents generally speak in the present, and so it makes more sense to draft in the present tense. This makes for clearer, crisper drafting, and should never cause ambiguity. For example, traditional phrasing says:

- If the purchaser *shall fail* to pay, then . . .
- If the purchaser *should fail* to pay, then . . .
- If the purchaser *shall have failed* to pay, then . . .

[110] For example, Mason P in *Big River Timbers Pty Ltd v Stewart* (1999) 9 BPR 16,605 at 16,608 ('the meaning is clear'); and the same judge in *R v Jasper* (2003) 139 A Crim R 329 at [31] and [37].

[111] *Re Moage Ltd* (1998) 153 ALR 711.

But the modern drafter says:

- If the purchaser fails to pay, then . . .

The technique of drafting in the present tense is especially useful in simplifying the structure of definitions. For example, the traditional style says:

> In this agreement, residence *shall include* a house.

But the modern style prefers:

> In this agreement, residence *includes* a house.

To this exhortation to draft in the present tense we add a note of caution. Depending on context, the use of the present tense in relation to a specified act may indicate a requirement that the act should be continuing, with past acts being irrelevant. For example, a Victorian statute empowered a landlord to require a tenant to vacate the premises if the tenant 'endangers' (present tense) the safety of neighbours. The use of the present tense indicated that the landlord's power arose only where the tenant was presently endangering the safety of neighbours. The landlord could not exercise the power on the basis of past conduct, now ceased.[112]

Deeds

Many legal documents take the form of deeds. In some cases this is because the law requires a deed (as distinct from a simple agreement) – for example, to create a legal interest rather than an equitable interest.[113] In other cases, drafters adopt a deed because its formality helps to emphasise the solemnity of the transaction.[114] Whatever the reason for using a deed, some matters are relevant to drafting deeds in the modern style.

[112] *Director of Housing v Pavletic* (2003) V ConvR 54–668 ([2002] VSC 438).

[113] For example, *Law of Property Act* 1925 (England and Wales), s 52; *Conveyancing Act*, 1919 (NSW), s 23B.

[114] A deed is the most solemn form of document a person can make: *Manton v Parabolic* (1985) 2 NSWLR 361 at 367–9.

Formal parts of a deed

Some formal parts of a deed – such as the testatum ('Now this deed witnesses'), the habendum ('to hold unto'), and the testimonium ('In witness whereof the parties hereto') – are antique and can be discarded. In fact, the testatum and the habendum have all but disappeared already. The testimonium, though, has shown surprising resilience. Almost 400 years ago the eminent jurist Sir Edward Coke showed that the testimonium was unnecessary.[115] To jettison it now hardly seems radical.

Recitals

Recitals give the background to the document. They are easily identified, being traditionally heralded by the ubiquitous *Whereas*. Sometimes recitals are inserted out of habit, with no thought to whether they serve a purpose in the document. If they do not, they can be safely discarded.

In the hands of experienced drafters, however, recitals may serve a useful purpose. Sometimes, background information is useful in a document to show where the parties have come from and what they propose to do. In this way, recitals can be used to set the scene for the heart of the deal, serving as a statement of purpose and helping interpretation.

Recitals can also serve purposes more technical, but no less useful. For example, a recital can create an estoppel, precluding the party who made the statement from later denying the truth of the matter recited.[116] By a related doctrine, a recital can operate to pass title to land. This is the doctrine of 'feeding the estoppel'. It typically occurs where a vendor who has no title to land which he or she has purportedly conveyed under a deed of conveyance recites in the deed that he or she has the title. By the doctrine, if the vendor later acquires title to the land, then the title passes to the purchaser by virtue of the recital without the need for any further conveyance.[117] Again, recitals can ensure the benefit (in later years) of the common statutory

[115] Edward Coke, *The First Part of the Institutes of the Laws of England; or a Commentary on Littleton* (first published 1628), p. 7.

[116] *Bensley v Burdon* (1830) 8 LJ (OS) Ch 85; *Heath v Crealock* (1874) LR 10 Ch App 22; *Discount & Finance Ltd v Gehrig's Wines Ltd* (1940) 57 WN (NSW) 226; *Grant v John Grant & Sons Pty Ltd* (1954) 91 CLR 112.

[117] *Re Bridgewater's Settlement* [1910] 2 Ch 342. Cf *First National Bank Plc v Thompson* [1996] Ch 231 (CA): estoppel even without recital. A similar doctrine applies where a mortgagor recites in a deed of mortgage that he or she has title to the land; when the mortgagor later acquires title, it passes to the mortgagee without the need for a further deed of mortgage.

provision that recitals of facts in documents of a certain age are presumed to be correct.[118]

Under a long-settled principle of interpretation, recitals can play a useful (though limited) role in construing documents. Stated shortly, if the operative part of the deed is ambiguous and the recitals are clear, then the recitals govern the construction. However, the limited extent of this principle is apparent when set beside two subsidiary principles:

- If the recitals are ambiguous and the operative part is clear, the operative part prevails.
- If both the operative part and the recitals are clear but inconsistent with each other, the operative part prevails.[119]

Even where recitals are useful, however, there is no need to perpetuate a formalistic style. If recitals are thought useful, they can be grouped under a heading such as 'Background', rather than the more formal 'Recitals'; and *whereas* can be dispensed with entirely.

Amending documents formally

Modern drafters would do well to consider the ways in which they amend standard-form documents. One style is to adopt the traditional parliamentary convention. For example, at the end of standard-form contract provisions the drafter will add amendments along these lines:

- In clause 27, delete 'agent' and insert 'stakeholder'.
- In clause 35, delete 'rescission' and insert 'termination'.
- In clause 47, after 'notified' insert 'in writing', and delete 'not' where thirdly appearing.

Unless the number of amendments is few, this amending technique is cumbersome. It forces the reader to go backwards and forwards in the document, trying to garner meaning from fragmented information. It is better

[118] For example, *Law of Property Act* 1925 (England and Wales), ss 44, 45; *Conveyancing Act*, 1919 (NSW), s 53. Recitals of this kind can prove particularly useful in conveyancing documents, allowing later vendors and purchasers to rely on the matters recited.

[119] *Leggott v Barrett* (1880) 15 Ch D 306 at 311; *Ex parte Dawes* (1886) 17 QBD 275 at 286; *O'Loughlin v Mount* (1998) 71 SASR 206 at 217–18; *Chacmol Holdings Pty Ltd v Handberg* [2005] FCAFC 40 at [38]–[46].

to delete the clauses to be amended, and then include their full text as amended. Another option is to state the overall effect of the amendments, and then set out the detailed textual amendments in a schedule.

To illustrate the latter technique, imagine a large residential development where the freeholder has let the entire site on a long lease to a housing association. The lease identifies an area of the land for special-needs housing to be underlet to a mental health trust, which will manage the units in that area. The scheme is now to change in the following way: the land allocated for special-needs housing is to be altered, and the housing association itself is to manage the units with the help of specialist staff. To achieve these changes will require numerous amendments to various parts of a lengthy document. A deed of variation merely making textual amendments to the original documentation is likely to be incomprehensible. Far better to state the effect of the new arrangements boldly in the body of the deed, and then to put the textual amendments in a schedule.

Standard forms

We end this chapter with some comments on the use of standard forms in legal drafting. More and more in modern legal practice, information is conveyed by means of standard forms. Sometimes, the use of forms is prescribed by statute, leaving the drafter with little scope for presenting material more effectively. At other times, their use is optional.

Statutory forms

Model forms provided by statute have been widely available to the legal profession for many years. In England and Wales, for example, the *Settled Land Act* 1925 set out in its first schedule 'examples of instruments framed in accordance with the provisions of this Act'. Another Act, the *Law of Property Act* 1925, contained forms relating to mortgages and other matters. The purpose was to provide forms that would be treated as effective for the objective in mind. Thus the *Law of Property Act* provided that instruments 'in the like form or using expressions to the like effect, shall, in regard to form and expression be sufficient'. Many other jurisdictions have statutory provisions in the same vein. Generally speaking, however, the legal

profession has been reluctant to accept the statutory invitation to use forms of this kind. For whatever reason, lawyers have preferred to produce their own forms.

Forms used for land registration purposes are in a different category. Their use is generally mandatory, for the land registration system hinges on their use.[120] These forms generally abandon the mumbo jumbo that bedevils traditional conveyancing documents, being drafted on the premise that instruments (and entries in the register based on them) should be clear, simple and definite. They contain no formal commencement; recitals are discouraged; lengthy clauses transferring quasi-easements and other appurtenant rights are absent; and the testatum, habendum and testimonium (discussed above) are discarded. In short, they reflect an appreciation that both the form and language of traditional conveyancing documents are needlessly complex.

Even where the use of statutory forms is mandatory, some flexibility is generally allowed in their use. Statutes usually authorise the use of forms 'substantially to the same effect' as the prescribed forms. This permits forms to be modified to suit the particular transaction, but it can give rise to disputes over whether a form as varied is 'substantially' the same as the form as prescribed.[121]

Precedents

Of course, not all forms are generated in response to statutory prompting. Most legal firms have standard forms – generally called 'precedents' – from which they tailor documents for particular transactions. Sometimes these precedents are based on forms provided by publishers; sometimes they are drafted by the firm itself. Standard forms of this kind are a necessary part of the modern lawyer's practice, but they should be drafted in clear, modern English, in line with the principles advocated here.

[120] In England and Wales, the forms spring from the *Land Registration Act* 2002. In Australia, they are promulgated under the various Torrens title statutes, such as the *Real Property Act* 1900 (NSW).

[121] For Australian examples, see *Perpetual Executors and Trustees Association of Australia Ltd v Hosken* (1912) 14 CLR 286; *Crowley v Templeton* (1914) 17 CLR 457; *Gibb v Registrar of Titles* (1940) 63 CLR 503.

Conclusion

This chapter has reviewed some of the matters to be considered when drafting in standard, modern English. The list of techniques it discusses is not exhaustive. Some drafters use other techniques in their documents. However, the principles set out in the chapter will help drafters produce documents that are easy to understand and exhibit that level of precision which the traditional style of legal drafting so fervently praises but so often fails to achieve. But of course 'technique' alone does not ensure a sound legal document. The drafter must also know the law. Further, when drafting in modern, standard English – or 'plain English' – the drafter must be alert to context, since (as we pointed out in Chapter 2) context is crucial to the meaning of words. As Lord Wilberforce once famously commented, 'even plain English may contain a variety of shades of meaning'.[122]

[122] *Williams & Glyn's Bank Ltd v Boland* [1981] AC 487 at 504.

Chapter Seven

USING THE MODERN STYLE

In earlier chapters we have discussed the many benefits of drafting legal documents in modern, standard English. In this final chapter we give step-by-step examples of drafting in the modern style. We illustrate with clauses drawn from four types of private legal documents, all commonly encountered in legal practice: leases, company constitutions, wills and conveyances.

Lease: how to bring it to an end if the property is damaged

Original version

> If the whole or a substantial part of the Premises shall at any time during the Term be destroyed or damaged then the Landlord shall have the right at any time before rebuilding or reinstatement shall have commenced to give notice in writing to the Tenant to determine this Lease and at the expiry of one month from the service of such notice the Term shall cease and determine but without prejudice to any claim for any antecedent breach of the Tenant's covenants herein contained (and if the tenancy is one to which Part II of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954[1] applies then a statutory notice in the form required by that Act shall also operate as notice under this sub-clause).

[1] This Act applies in England and Wales only.

This clause exudes many characteristics of traditional legal writing:

- use of *shall*
- unusual tenses: 'shall have commenced'
- use of capital letters to indicate defined terms: 'the Term', 'this Lease'
- unnecessary doublets: 'destroyed or damaged', 'rebuilding or reinstatement', 'cease and determine'
- lack of punctuation
- 'such' used as an adjective
- unusual word order: 'herein contained'
- avoidance of pronouns
- pomposity: 'commenced', 'determine', 'antecedent'
- special meaning for words in ordinary use: 'determine'
- antique words no longer in ordinary use: 'herein'
- tautology: 'a statutory notice in the form required by that Act'
- legal jargon: 'without prejudice to'.

Plain version

The original version can be rewritten:

(a) If a substantial part of the premises becomes damaged, the Landlord may give the Tenant written notice to bring this lease to an end.
(b) The Landlord must serve the notice on the Tenant before the Landlord begins to reinstate the premises.
(c) The lease ends a month after service of the notice, but the Landlord may still pursue any claim against the Tenant for breaches occurring before the lease ends.

This version does not attempt to deal with the bracketed words in the original, because their meaning is not clear. If the drafter meant by them that the notice is to dovetail with the 1954 Act, then a further paragraph could be tried, along these lines:

(d) If the tenancy is one to which Part II of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 applies, a notice under that Act may also constitute a notice under this sub-clause and the date of termination specified is the date on which the lease ends.

Two chief points arise from an exercise such as this. First, the rewrite forces a fundamental reappraisal of the original: as Robert Eagleson has said, 'To write plainly means to return to the heart of the matter'.[2]

Second, difficulty in rewriting may indicate fundamental problems with the subject matter. Several such problems emerge here. One concerns the bracketed words in the original version. The review forces the conclusion that a notice under the 1954 Act serves one purpose, and a notice to bring the lease to an end following a disaster serves another. To elide the two types of notice, as though one notice can perform the two functions, confuses rather than helps. It would be best to omit the bracketed words and the new paragraph (d) altogether. The other problem concerns the terms '*give* a notice' and '*serve* a notice'. Para (a) of our rewrite entitles the landlord to 'give' a notice, while para (b) requires the landlord to 'serve' the notice. In using these terms we have preserved the terminology of the original. In legal theory, however, 'serving' a notice is not synonymous with 'giving' a notice; 'service' requires certain formalities that are not necessarily needed for a notice merely to be 'given'.[3] The drafter seems to have muddied the distinction. Here, context resolves any ambiguity: the notice is not 'given' unless it is 'served'. But to avoid any possible argument, the drafter could have used 'served' in para (a).

Company memorandum of association: subsidiary objects clause

Original version

> To improve, manage, construct, repair, develop, exchange, let on lease or otherwise, mortgage, charge, sell, dispose of, turn to account, grant licences, options, rights and privileges in respect of, or otherwise deal with all or any part of the property and rights of the Company.

This clause illustrates the lawyer's love for lists. Rather than choose one word that covers the field (but is no wider than necessary), the drafter compiles a list of near-synonyms in the hope of hitting the target. This

[2] Robert Eagleson, 'Plain English in the Statutes' (1985) 59 *Law Institute Journal*, p. 673.
[3] See *FAI General Insurance Co. Ltd v Parras* (2002) 55 NSWLR 498.

technique Rudolf Flesch called the shotgun principle of legal drafting.[4] Much to be preferred is Dickerson's 'lowest common denominator' approach,[5] under which the drafter tries to select a word or words to cover the particular group or activity intended but no more.

Plain version

Using the Dickerson approach, the original can be recast in ordinary English, thus:

> To deal with the company's property in any way.

The rewriting takes account of the following points:

- 'Deal with' adequately encompasses actions that relate to the physical nature of the property and its title. Thus, it covers improve, manage, construct, repair, develop, exchange, let (on lease or otherwise), mortgage, charge, sell, dispose of, turn to account, grant licences, grant options, grant rights and grant privileges.[6] Nor is 'deal with' too wide for the purposes of the clause.
- 'In respect of' is unnecessary
- 'The property', without further elaboration, implies all or any part of it.
- The company's rights are part of its property, so they need not be mentioned separately.

Will: attestation clause

Original version

> Signed by the above-named Sarah Smith as her last will in the presence of us present at the same time who at her request in her presence and in the presence of each other have hereunto subscribed our names as witnesses.

Attestation clauses in wills are designed to show that the statutory requirements for signing ('executing') wills have been satisfied. Most jurisdictions

[4] Rudolph Flesch, *How to Write Plain English* (New York: Barns & Noble Books, 1979), p. 41.
[5] Reed Dickerson, *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting*, 2nd edn (Boston and Toronto: Little, Brown & Co., 1986), p. 18.
[6] 'Deal with' is a term of wide import, and includes 'bargains or arrangements for mutual advantage': *GPT RE Ltd v Lend Lease Real Estate Investments Ltd* [2005] NSWSC 964 at [41].

impose statutory requirements on executing wills. In England and Wales, for example, the requirements are set out in s 9 of the *Wills Act* 1837 (replaced by s 17 of the *Administration of Justice Act* 1982, for wills taking effect after 1982). The section reads as follows:

> No will shall be valid unless –
>
> (a) it is in writing, and signed by the testator, or by some other person in his presence and by his direction; and
> (b) it appears that the testator intended by his signature to give effect to the will; and
> (c) the signature is made or acknowledged by the testator in the presence of two or more witnesses present at the same time; and
> (d) each witness either –
> (i) attests and signs the will; or
> (ii) acknowledges his signature,
> in the presence of the testator (but not necessarily in the presence of any other witness),
>
> but no form of attestation shall be necessary.[7]

Notice that, while various permutations of acknowledgement or signature are possible, the statute specifically provides that no form of attestation is necessary. Nonetheless, every professionally drawn will contains an attestation clause, because without one the probate authorities usually require an affidavit stating that the will has been executed in accordance with the statutory formalities.

Plain version

Here is a redraft of the original version:

> Signed by the testator in our presence and attested by us in the presence of her and of each other.

This was the form judicially approved in *Re Selby-Bigge*, the judge expressing the view that to save labour and for the sake of neatness, skilful practitioners desire to reduce words to the minimum.[8] In practice, probate

[7] The layout of the final line (taken back to the left margin) is nonsensical, but is precisely as appears in the *Law Reports (Statutes)* version. It is not a model to be followed.

[8] *Re Selby-Bigge* [1950] 1 All ER 1009 at 1010.

officials accept an even shorter form, enabling them to see at a glance that the statutory provisions have been satisfied:

> Signed by the testator in our presence and then by us in his.

Where the testator is female, the circumspect drafter may prefer *testatrix* to *testator*. But in modern English, *testator* has become gender-neutral, like *actor*, *juror*, *prosecutor*, *administrator* and *executor*. In any case, no judge would be perverse enough to rule a will invalid on the ground that a female deceased had executed her will as 'testator', especially in the face of the common statutory provision that in all documents the masculine includes the feminine and vice versa.[9]

Will: distribution in unequal shares

Original version

> In trust to divide the same into ten equal shares (and the words 'share' or 'shares' in this clause shall be always read as referring to such equal shares) and to hold one share in trust for my niece Doris Joffry and to hold one share in trust for my nephew Kenneth Hone and to hold one share in trust for my niece Meg Martini and to hold one share in trust for my niece Dora Wills and to hold one share in trust for my niece Phyllis Steiner and to hold one share in trust for my niece Ruth Ellis and to hold one share in trust for my nephew Raymond Hone and to hold the remaining three shares in trust for my niece Rose Hecker Provided that if any of the trusts declared by this clause shall fail then the share or shares as to which the said trusts shall so fail (including any share or shares accruing by virtue of this provision) shall accrue to and be added equally to the other shares hereby given and be held in trust accordingly.

The form of this clause – one long, unpunctuated sentence – makes it particularly difficult to read. Further, the proviso is obscure. One way of divining meaning is to attempt a redraft.

[9] In England, see s 61 of the *Law of Property Act* 1925. In New South Wales, see s 181 of the *Conveyancing Act* 1919. See also Robin Towns, 'Plain English' (1998) 142 *Solicitors' Journal*, p. 821. For gender-neutral drafting, see Chapter 6.

Plain version

To divide it as follows:

- one-tenth for my niece Doris Joffry
- one-tenth for my nephew Kenneth Hone
- one-tenth for my niece Meg Martini
- one-tenth for my niece Dora Wills
- one-tenth for my niece Phyllis Steiner
- one-tenth for my niece Ruth Ellis
- one-tenth for my nephew Raymond Hone
- three-tenths for my niece Rose Hecker.

If any of those beneficiaries dies before me, his or her share is to be added equally to that of the survivors.

The clause still poses some difficulties. Where Rose Hecker survives, but one or more of the others does not, the relationship between the shares changes. If one of the lesser beneficiaries dies, Rose Hecker's share becomes a little under three times what the others receive. If all but one of the other beneficiaries dies, three-tenths accrue to the lesser beneficiary and three-tenths to Rose Hecker. The lesser beneficiary then ends up with two-fifths and Rose Hecker with three-fifths. To preserve the original relationship between the shares, an entirely different wording would be needed for the closing sentence:

> If any of those beneficiaries dies before me, his or her share is to be added to those of the survivors in the same mathematical relationship that the specified shares of the survivors bear to each other.

To illustrate this redraft: if Rose Hecker survives with only one of the lesser beneficiaries, six-tenths are available to split between them in the ration of 1:3. Thus, three-twentieths go to the lesser beneficiary and nine-twentieths to Rose. Add those fractions to their direct fractions, and the lesser beneficiary gets five-twentieths (one-quarter) and Rose fifteen-twentieths (three-quarters). Assuming this is what the testator intended, a plainer wording might be:

> If any of those beneficiaries dies before me, the fund is to be divided between the survivors in the same ratio that their shares specified in this clause bear to each other.

Or even shorter:

> If any of those beneficiaries dies before me, the fund is to be divided between the survivors in the same ratio.

Or perhaps even better:

> If any of those beneficiaries dies before me, the fund is to be divided between the survivors proportionately.

New land obligations: buyer's restrictive covenant

Original version

> THE Purchaser to the intent and so as to bind the property hereby conveyed and each and every part thereof into whosesoever hands the same may come to protect such parts of the adjoining or neighbouring land and premises situate at Exon in the said County of Devon and forming part of the Vendor's Blueacre Estate as for the time being remains unsold or as shall be sold with the express benefit of this covenant as are capable of benefiting HEREBY JOINTLY AND SEVERALLY COVENANTS with the Vendor that the Purchaser and his successors in title will at all times hereafter observe and perform the following restrictions stipulations and conditions

Plain version

This example of legalese could be recast in ordinary English, as follows:

(a) To burden the property and to benefit the retained land, the buyers separately and together promise the seller that they will observe the stipulations which follow.
(b) 'The retained land' is every part of the seller's Blueacre Estate, Exon, Devon that is near the property and is capable of benefiting from this promise, and that either remains unsold or has been sold expressly with the benefit of this promise.

Two commonly used phrases in the original version merit detailed analysis: 'each and every', and 'jointly and severally'. Like other doublets, their use should always be questioned (see Chapter 1).

'Each and every'

This doublet appears often in traditional legal drafting. The two words are closely related: 'each' derives from the Old English *aelc*, and 'every' from the Old English *aefre aelc*. There could be no objection to using either 'each' or 'every' by itself. But is the doublet necessary? The drafter's particular concern seems to have been the consequences of later subdivision of the land. Is the covenant to burden the purchased land as a whole only, or is it to burden also any parcels into which it might later be subdivided? And is the covenant to benefit the 'adjoining or neighbouring' land as a whole only, or is it to also benefit that land if it is later subdivided? Under the present law, subdivision of the land burdened or of the land benefited does not, of itself, prevent the burden or benefit from passing on later transfer of the subdivided parts of those lands.[10] But the law in this area is complex, and the drafter does well to clarify the position and to set out the scheme as the client would like it to be. Nevertheless, the drafter's purpose could be achieved just as well by referring to 'each' part or to 'every' part, without recourse to the uncritical 'each and every'.

A related drafting point concerns the interpretation of 'any part' – as in a prohibition against dealing with 'any part' of premises. Drafters frequently expand the prohibition into one against dealing with 'the whole or any part' of the premises. But since the sum of the parts is the whole, a prohibition against dealing with any part of a property necessarily prohibits a dealing with all of it.[11] A drafter who wants to prohibit a dealing with part only should say so directly, by using such words as 'not to deal with part only of the premises'.

'Jointly and severally'

'Jointly and severally' is a phrase found rarely in ordinary English. Yet it features prominently in legal documents. An example is the following boilerplate from a lease:

[10] Burden, *Law of Property Act* 1925, s 79; benefit, s 78. See *Federated Homes Ltd v Mill Lodge Properties Ltd* [1980] 1 WLR 594, CA; *Roake v Chadha* [1984] 1 WLR 40; *Shropshire County Council v Edwards* (1983) 46 P & CR 270; *Gyarfas v Bray* (1990) NSW ConvR 55–519; P. Baker, 'The Benefit of Restrictive Covenants' (1968) 84 *Law Quarterly Review*, p. 22; D. Hayton, 'Restrictive Covenants as Property Interests' (1971) 87 *Law Quarterly Review*, p. 539.

[11] *Field v Barkworth* [1986] 1 WLR 137.

> Where two or more persons are included in the expression 'the Landlord' and 'the Tenant', covenants expressed to be made by the Landlord and the Tenant shall be deemed to be made by such persons jointly and severally.

'Jointly and severally' has no legal magic. It simply means 'together and separately'. Where more than one person is under an obligation 'jointly and severally', the obligation can be enforced against them all collectively or against any one of them individually; and a release of one joint obligor releases them all. Likewise, where more than one person is given a duty or a power 'jointly and severally', the duty or the power can be exercised by them all collectively or by any one of them individually.[12]

Drafters who persist in using 'jointly and severally' should realise that the phrase bears little meaning for the lay reader. They should also appreciate that it may create an ambiguity where an obligation is entered into 'jointly and severally' by or with more than two persons, say X, Y and Z. There can be no doubt that the obligation is by X, Y or Z separately, and X, Y and Z collectively. But what about X and Y together, or X and Z, or Y and Z? A court would probably hold that these combinations must submit to the obligation. Nevertheless, the matter is not free from doubt. The drafter could remove that doubt by substituting for 'jointly and severally' the phrase 'separately, together or in any combination'.

Conclusion

These and similar examples indicate the direction for legal drafters. They show that legal documents can be drafted in standard, modern English without loss of legal precision. The challenge to those who oppose modernising legal drafting is then apparent: why should the law use the language of yesterday? Why should legal language be subject to special rules, locked in a unique linguistic code accessible only to those with the key?

We have sought to explain why legal documents are drafted in a traditional style, and why moves to improve drafting techniques are so compelling. We have shown how the traditional style of drafting hinders understanding and

[12] Although context may require otherwise: see *Kendle v Melsom* (1998) 72 ALJR 560, where the Australian High Court held that receivers appointed 'jointly and severally' had to act together.

creates dangers for lawyers and clients alike. In contrast, modern, standard English helps improve understanding and remove the dangers. And importantly, modern, standard English can be as legally effective and linguistically precise as traditional legal language. Nothing in logic or law stands in the way of using modern, standard English in the legal documents of the twenty-first century. Using the techniques we have outlined, today's lawyer can produce documents that are clear, accessible and litigation-proof.

FURTHER READING

The following are some of the many books on legal drafting. We have listed only those that emphasise the benefits and techniques of drafting in standard, modern English – or 'plain English' as it is usually described. We list them alphabetically by author, allowing us to sidestep the invidious task of ranking them in order of merit.

Adler, M., *Clarity for Lawyers* (The Law Society of England and Wales, 1990; 2nd edn, 2006). A practical guide to clear drafting, written for practising solicitors by a practising solicitor and former chair of Clarity.

Asprey, M., *Plain Language for Lawyers* (3rd edn, Federation Press, 2003). The standard Australian text, combining theory with practical insights.

Child, B., *Drafting Legal Documents* (2nd edn, West, 1992). A student text, with many illustrations from case law and legal documents.

Dick, R., *Legal Drafting in Plain Language* (3rd edn, Thomson Canada, 1995). A practical guide for lawyers, written by one of Canada's best-known authors on the subject.

Dickerson, R., *Fundamentals of Legal Drafting* (2nd edn, Little, Brown and Co., 1986). A highly influential text, although encouraging a style which today might seem somewhat conservative.

Eagleson, R., *Writing in Plain English* (Australian Government Publishing Service, 1990). An excellent guide to plain writing, designed primarily for the Australian civil service but of universal application.

Garner, B., *The Winning Brief* (Oxford University Press, 1999). A practical discussion of 100 tips for persuasive briefs. Aimed chiefly at American advocates, but with many practical insights for lawyers generally.

A Dictionary of Modern Legal Usage (2nd edn, Oxford University Press, 2001). The classic American guide to legal usage, by an author with deep learning and a keen appreciation of the techniques of drafting in modern, standard English. A work of erudition and wit.

(ed.), *Scribes Journal of Legal Writing* (West Publishing). An occasional journal, with articles by leading lawyers with expertise in writing.

Good, C. E., *Mightier than the Sword* (Blue Jeans Press, 1989). A highly practical discussion of the principles of clear legal writing.

Kimble, J. *Lifting the Fog of Legalese: Essays on Plain Language* (Carolina Academic Press, 2006). A collection of essays by a leading exponent of plain language.

Law Reform Commission of Victoria, *Plain English and the Law* (Victorian Government Printer, 1987). An in-depth report on the use of plain language in law, which influenced the plain language movement in many parts of the world.

Macdonald, R. and Clark-Dickson D., *Clear and Precise Writing Skills for Today's Lawyer* (Queensland Law Society, CLE Department, 2000). A clear discussion of legal-writing skills for the modern lawyer.

Mellinkoff, D., *The Language of the Law* (Little, Brown and Co., 1963). A scholarly and highly-readable history of legal language, making a classic argument for plain language.

Legal Writing: Sense and Nonsense (West Publishing, 1982). More of a 'how to' than the same author's *Language of the Law*.

Piesse, E., *The Elements of Drafting* (10th edn, Lawbook Co., 2004, ed. Aitken, J. and Butt, P.). A practical introductory work, written for students but also useful for readers seeking an overview of legal drafting principles.

Ross, M., *Drafting and Negotiating Commercial Leases* (4th edn, Butterworths, 1994). A thorough, clause-by-clause review of the contents of a modern commercial lease, with plain language precedents developed by the author and Richard Castle.

Wydick, R., *Plain English for Lawyers* (5th edn, Carolina Academic Press, 2005). A step-by-step lawyer's guide to plain writing. Began life as a highly influential law review article, later expanded into this (short) book.

INDEX

'absolutely', 27
active voice, 153
accumulation of clauses, 103
'ad valorem', 35
Adams, John E., 193, 204
Adler, Mark, 86
'agreed and declared', 30
'agrees and warrants', 30
aircraft lease, 81
Alberta reforms, 108
Aldridge, Trevor, 123
algebra, use of, 44, 194
'allow', 169
ambiguity,
  avoidance, 22
  syntactic, 207
amendment of documents, 165, 218
'and', 211
'and/or', 214
'any part', 230
Anglo-French, 24
armchair principle, 70
Atkin, Lord, 109
attestation clause in will, 225
Australia
  consumer protection, 123
  plain English in, 93, 123
  statutory requirements, 123

background
  contract, to, 67
  deed, to, 218
bar charts, 194
Bentham, Jeremy, 2, 76
'best endeavours', 140
  in professional undertakings, 141
boilerplate, 170
bond, archaic, 45
brackets, 185
Bridgman, Orlando, 13
Brougham, Lord, 2, 34
'business commonsense', 63

Canada, plain English in, 106
capitals, 144, 145
  effect on reader, 160
  historic use, 144
  influence on interpretation, 162
  overuse, 147, 166
Carroll, Lewis, 155
cases,
  as aids to interpretation, 149
    dangers, 39, 73, 135
Caxton, William, 18
Central French, 24
Centre for Plain Legal Language, 96
certainty, 76
'charge', 31
'charitable or benevolent', 211
charts, 194
chattels, 28
Child, Barbara, 104
civil procedure rules, 92
  in US federal court, 106
Clarity (organisation), 85
Coke, Edward, 109, 217
colons, 186
commas, 184
'commercial' interpretation, 62

common law traditions, 9
company
  constitution, 224
  subsidiary objects clause, 224
  takeovers code, 95
computers, influence on drafting, 18
conservatism of legal profession, 9
construction of documents *see* interpretation
consumer movement, 78
consumer protection, 121
context, importance, 39, 61, 62, 64, 213, 221
contra proferentem rule, 58
contract, background to, 67
conventions, linguistic, 151
Coode, George, 76
cover sheets, 176
Crystal, David, 152
Cutts, Martin, 80, 82

dashes, 185
Davy, Derek, 152
'de bene esse', 142
deal, heart of the, 170, 217
'declaration', 30
deeds, 216
deeming, 154
defined terms, signalling, 189
definitions
  alphabetical lists, 189, 190
  examples and descriptions contrasted with, 190
  excessive detail, 158
  highlighting, 189
  influence on interpretation, 162
  location, 188
  one-off definitions, 156
  over-defining, 156
  'stretched', 155
  'stuffed', 158
  'unless the context otherwise requires', 159
  use, 187
Denning, Lord, 2, 10, 109
descriptions contrasted with definitions, 190
design, 172
diagrams, 194
Dickerson, Reed, 22, 48, 103, 225
dictating machines, effect on drafting, 20
'discharge', 31
document structure, 170
documents
  amendment to, 165, 218
  cover sheet, 176
  design, 45, 113, 172
  examples in, 198
  gender usage in, 209, 227
  headings, 173
  layout, 172, 174
  length, payment by, 31
  line spacing, 173
  means of production, 17
  navigation through, 174
  notes in, 198
  numbering systems, 176
  payment for, 31, 36
  present tense, use in, 215
  production, means of, 17
  read as whole, 51
  reading ease, 174
  'shall' in, 131, 200
  'singularly inelegant', 46
  structure, 170
  white space in, 173
  'dwelling-house',149, 163
  'each and every', 230

Eagleson, Robert, 93, 224
easement,
  drafting, 9
  examples, 100, 182
  meaning, 30
  right of way, drafting, 130
'easements, rights and privileges', 30
eiusdem generis rule, 52
'en ventre sa mere', 142
'enjoy',29, 80
equity, language of, 26
Evershed, Lord, 13
eviction notice, 99
examples, use in documents, 198
'excepting and reserving',7, 29

exception, nature of, 29
executor's oath, 146
explanations contrasted with definitions, 190
expressio unius rule, 56, 158, 206

'factual matrix',48, 63
fair trading, *see Office of Fair Trading*
Farrand Committee, 87
familiarity with legal documents, 7
'fee simple', 8
'feeding the estoppel', 217
Felsenfeld, Carl, 103
'fittings', 28
'fixtures and fittings', 28
fixtures, removal, 165
Flesch, Rudolf, 225
flow charts, 194, 196
folio, 33, 36
'for identification only', 138, 151, 192
'force majeure', 142, 170
foreign phrases, 141
forms
  land registration, 220
  precedents, 220
  standard, 72, 219
  statutory, 219
formulas, use of, 43, 194, 197
'forthwith', 141
'free and uninterrupted', 29
'freed and discharged', 31
'freehold', 8
French
  Central French, 24
  law French, 24
  use in documents, 23
'full and sufficient', 31
'full set', 186

Garner, Bryan, 106
gender, usage, 227
gender-neutral language, 209, 227
generality, 203
gobbledegook, 45
golden rules of interpretation, 61
Goode, Roy, 49
'goods and chattels', 28
Gowers, Ernest, 23, 87
graphs, 194
guarantee, gobbledegook, 45
Gulliver's Travels, 11

habendum, 217
habit, drafting by, 7
Hale, Matthew, 32
handwriting, documents produced by, 17
headings, 173
'heart of the deal',170, 217
'hereby', 148
Hoffmann, Lord, 7, 43, 63, 67, 109, 155, 197
'hold and enjoy', 29
Hoole, Arthur, 120
Humpty Dumpty, 155

implied terms, 48
'in fee simple', 8
Indian Penal Code, 77
inelegance, 46
infinitive splitting, 139
Inland Revenue, 90
insurance policy, 81
  cobbled together, 41
  criticism, 111
'inter alia', 142
'inter se', 142
'inter vivos', 142
international reforms, 78
interpretation
  capitals, influence of, 162
  cases, use in, 39, 73, 135, 149
  commercial or purposive, 62
  consistent terminology, 61
  contra proferentem rule, 58
  definitions and, 162
  eiusdem generis rule, 52
  expressio unius rule, 56, 158, 206
  golden rules, 61
  internal and external factors, 48
  noscitur a sociis rule, 57
  ordinary word sense, 61
  principles, 47, 51, 66
  wills, 135

'is to', 203
inverted commas, 185

jargon, 144, 147
'joint tenants in equal shares', 193
'jointly and severally", 230
judges, 40, 109
  criticisms by, 111

Kennan, J. H., 94
Kimble, Joseph, 106
'knowledge, information and belief', 146

land obligations, buyer's covenant, 229
language
  conventions, 131
  gender-neutral, 209, 227
  litigation about, 140
  obscure, 137
languages, mixture of, 23
Latin in documents, 23
layout, 172
  justification, 176
lease
  of aircraft, 81
  antique, 85
  commercial, 123
  fixtures removal under, 165
  licence contrasted, 50
  precedents for, 123
  structure, 172
  termination, 222
Legal Writing Institute, 105
legalese, 144
length, payment by, 31
letter, disastrous, 42
'liberty', 28
licence, lease contrasted, 50
lists, 178
  dangers, 57
litigation,
  environment of, 37, 140
  Woolf reforms, 92
  words and phrases, about, 140

Macaulay, Lord, 77
Macmillan, Lord, 61
Maher, Chrissie, 90
marketing, through plain English, 121
'matrix of fact',48, 67, 72
'may', 272
Megarry, Robert, 15, 186
Melinkoff, David, 12, 184, 204
modern English, 167
  defined, 112
'moiety', 149
mortgage in plain English, 79
'must', 201
  criticism, 111
'must not',111, 201
'mutatis mutandis', 142

National Consumer Council, 83, 113
negative, use of double, 146
negligence claims, 15
New York plain English law, 101, 102
New Zealand, 91
  legislation manual, 210
  tax reform, 98
nominalisation, 153
Norman French, 23
noscitur a sociis rule, 57
notes, use of, 198
notice,
  defying understanding, 42
  effect, 64
  giving and serving distinguished, 224
  eviction notice, 99
'null and void', 27
numbering systems, 176

obscure language, 137
'observe', 27
'observe and perform', 27
Office of Fair Trading, 122
'or', 211
'ordinary sense', 61
over-defining, 156
overviews, 199

paragraphing, 175
parcels clause, 205
Parker, Anthony, 78
particularity, excessive, 206
partnership deed, structure, 171
Pascal, Blaise, 21
passive voice, 173
patent applications, 71, 194
payment
  by length, 31
  by time, 36
perpetuity period, 158
'per stirpes', 142
'perform', 27
'permit', 168
pie charts, 194
plain English
  benefits, 114, 118, 119,121
  judicial criticism, 111
  as marketing tool, 121
  meaning, 112, 124
  risks, 73
  scope for, 125
Plain English Campaign, 80
Plain English Foundation, 97
Plain Language Commission, 82
plans, 191
  'for identification only',138, 151, 192
possessives, 185
precedents, 10
  dangers in, 73
  forms, 117, 220
  meaning, 11
precision, 76
present tense, 215
pressures, professional, 21
Preston, Richard, 14
printing press, influence, 18
'privilege', 30
'pro tanto', 142
professional image, 119
professional undertakings,
  'best endeavours', 140
pronouns, 208
'proper proportion', 204
provisos, 163
  burden of proof and, 164
  negotiation, in, 165
punctuation, 139
purposive interpretation, 62

Rayner, Derek, 87
reading,
  as whole, 51
  capitals and, 160
  ease, 160, 174
recitals, 33, 217
Reid, Lord, 40, 214
redundancy of words, 128
rent review,
  absurd, 44
  tortuous clause, 43
Renton Committee, 90
'repair', 130
'res ipsa loquitur', 142
reservation, nature of, 29
'reserving',8, 129
'reshippers', 104
restrictive covenant given by buyer of land, 229
'right', 28
'right and liberty', 28
right of way, drafting, 130
Robinson, Stanley, 13, 57

Scandinavian influence on legal language, 23
sense-bites, 142, 181
sentences, 142, 153, 181
'shall'
  direction or obligation, 136
  futurity or precondition, 133
  Hong Kong basic law, in, 132
  modern documents, in, 200
  overuse, 131
shotgun principle, 225
Siegel, Alan, 104, 172
signs, 194, 195
simplified outlines, 199
sketches, 194
spacing in documents, 173
Standard Conditions of Sale, 87, 123

standard English, 167
  meaning, 112
standard forms, 11, 72, 117, 146, 219, 220
stare decisis, 9
statutory requirements
  Australia, 123
  for plain English, 121
  United Kingdom, 121
  United States, 101
stretched definitions, 155
stuffed definitions, 158
style manual, New South Wales, 99
'suffer', 168
'sufficient', 31
Sullivan, Peter, 101
Swift, Jonathan, 11
Symonds, Arthur, 77
Symonds, Lord, 51

tables, 191
tautology, 23, 79, 128, 130
tax reforms, 83, 90, 98
technical terms, 149
'tenancy', 62
tense, present, 215
'term', 49
terminology, consistency, 61
terms of art, 149
testatum, 217
testimonium, 217
time, payment by, 36
'torrential 'style, 7
'toties quoties', 142
traditional drafting, reasons for, 6
traffic signs, 194, 195
TransAction scheme, 17, 87
trust deed, 'shall' in, 134
type size, 175
typeface, 175
typewriters, influence on drafting, 18

'ultra vires', 141
undertaking
  'best endeavours', 140
  to repair, 205
'uninterrupted', 30
United Kingdom government, plain English reforms, 87
United States, plain English in, 99, 104
'unless the context otherwise requires', 159
'use and enjoyment', 29

vagueness, 203, 204
verb,
  separation of parts of, 139
  use of, 153
Victoria,
  Law Reform Commission, 94, 95, 112, 116
  plain English in, 94
'void', 27

Walton, John, 86
'warrants', 30
'whereas',217, 218
white space in documents, 173
whole document must be read, 51, 57
Wilberforce, Lord, 48, 159, 221
'will', 135
Williams, Joshua, 33, 35
wills, 70
  attestation clause, 225
  distribution in unequal shares under, 227
  interpretation, 70
  provisos in, 163
  'shall' in, 134
  structure, 172
'without prejudice', 150
Wittgenstein, Ludwig, 4
Woolf reforms, 92
word order, 138, 152
word processors, use in drafting, 18
wordiness, 120
words
  consistency, 61
  foreign, 141
  interpretation, 61
  meaning, 10
  redundancy, 128